

The  
Sufi Brotherhoods  
in the Sudan

ALI SALIH KARRAR

الطرف  
الصوفية  
في السودان

الطبعة الأولى

# The Sufi Brotherhoods in the Sudan

## ALI SALIH KARRAR

*Foreword by R.S. O'Fahey*

*The Sufi Brotherhoods in the Sudan* presents a detailed account of the development of the mystical and religious Sufi orders in the Sudan from 1600 to 1900. It provides a thorough consideration of the impact of the brotherhoods on Sudanese history, and sheds new light on the understanding of Islam in Africa generally. Karrar takes issue with the interpretation of the standard text on the subject (Trimingham's *Islam in the Sudan*), and offers a new typology that divides that history of the Sufi orders into two rather than three stages: decentralised ("unaffiliated") and centralised ("affiliated"). The book also examines the shift from a "Sudanic belt" pattern of Islam dominated by individual holy men to a Middle Eastern pattern with organised Sufi brotherhoods, and analyses this transformation within its political and socio-economic context.

Karrar's work focuses on the Khatmiyya brotherhood in the Shayqiyya region. He bases his analysis on writings and personal materials from family archives, study of the brotherhoods' structure and ritual, and interviews that reveal contemporary perceptions of the groups' structure and practices. Karrar relates the development of the Sufi orders to social and political movements in the region, explains the process of legitimisation initiated by the brotherhoods, and describes the interrelation of Sufism and Islamic law. In his analysis of the co-optation of the Sudanese religious classes by the politically dominant classes, Karrar provides sharp insight into the history of the Shayqiyya region and points to concepts that provide a foundation for studies of other Islamic societies. Karrar has produced an

*[continued on back flap]*





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2022 with funding from  
Kahle/Austin Foundation

## THE SUFI BROTHERHOODS IN THE SUDAN

NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY PRESS  
SERIES IN ISLAM AND SOCIETY IN AFRICA

*General Editors*

John Hunwick  
Robert Launay

*Editorial Board*

Ralph Austen  
Carl Petry  
Lamin Sanneh  
Ivor Wilks.

*Editorial Advisory Committee*

Jamil Abun Nasr  
Mohamed Omer Beshir  
Rene Bravmann  
Louis Brenner  
Abdullah Bujra  
Allan Christelow  
Lansine Kaba  
Lidwien Kapteijns  
Murray Last  
Nehemia Levtzion  
David Robinson  
Enid Schildkrout  
Jay Spaulding  
Charles Stewart  
Jean-Louis Triaud

The  
Sufi Brotherhoods  
in the Sudan

ALI SALIH KARRAR

الطرف  
الصوفية  
في السودان

علي سالم

NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY PRESS  
EVANSTON, ILLINOIS

Northwestern University Press  
Evanston, Illinois 60201-2807

Copyright © 1992 by Ali Salih Karrar. Published 1992 by  
Northwestern University Press by arrangement with  
C. Hurst and Co. (Publishers) Ltd., London. All rights reserved.

Printed in Hong Kong

ISBN 0-8101-1045-8

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Karrar, Ali Salih.

The Sufi brotherhoods in the Sudan / by Ali Salih Karrar.

p. cm. — (Series in Islam and society in Africa)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-8101-1045-8 (cloth : alk. paper)

1. Sufism—Sudan—History. I. Title II. Series.

BP188.8.S8K36 1992

297'.65—dc20

91-41037

CIP

The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of  
American National Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of  
Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI Z39.48-1984.

*To My Daughters Fadwa and Marwa*



# CONTENTS

|  |         |
|--|---------|
| <i>Foreword by R.S. O'Fahey</i>                                | page ix |
| <i>Preface and Acknowledgements</i>                            | xi      |
| <i>Abbreviations and Short Titles</i>                          | xiv     |
| <i>A Note on Transliteration</i>                               | xvi     |
| <i>Chapters</i>  |         |
| 1. The Land, its History and the Coming of Islam               | 1       |
| 2. The Ancient Brotherhoods: the Qādiriyya and the Shādhiliyya | 20      |
| 3. The Centralized Brotherhoods: the First Phase               | 42      |
| 4. The Consolidation of the Khatmiyya                          | 73      |
| 5. The Centralized Brotherhoods: the Next Generation           | 103     |
| 6. Structure and Organization                                  | 125     |
| 7. Initiation and Ritual                                       | 151     |
| Conclusion   | 165     |
| <i>Appendices</i>  |         |
| A. Muḥammad al-Majdhūb, “The Younger”                          | 168     |
| B. A Khatmiyya <i>ijāza</i>                                    | 170     |
| <i>Glossary</i>  | 172     |
| <i>Sources and Bibliography</i>                                | 190     |
| <i>Index of Persons</i>  | 217     |
| <i>General Index</i>   | 229     |

## DIAGRAMS

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 1. The Qādiriyya and their Spiritual Affiliations | 23  |
| 2. Aḥmad al-Tayyib w. al-Bashīr                   | 49  |
| 3. The Mīrghānī Family: The Sudan Branch          | 74  |
| 4. The Family of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd                | 103 |
| 5. The Bīliyāb Family                             | 106 |
| 6. The Adārisa: The Sudan Branch                  | 117 |
| 7. The Naḍīfāb                                    | 146 |

# FOREWORD

by R.S. O'Fahey

Conventionally the modern history of the Sudan is considered to start with the Turco-Egyptian invasion of 1821. The new colonial power began a process of modernization that mirrored, however feebly, what Muḥammad ʻAlī Pasha and his successors were to attempt in Egypt; cash crops and taxation in money were introduced, a rudimentary but uniform system of administration was imposed, some schools were opened, maps were drawn and later telegraph lines were laid. Northern Sudanese society experienced a quasi-European form of colonialism.

An alternative view might suggest that the decision in 1815 by the Moroccan mystic, Ahmad ibn Idrīs, to allow his young student, Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, to undertake a missionary journey through the northern Sudan was as much a turning-point as the southward march of Muḥammad ʻAlī's army a few years later. If the latter were to bring the structures of a colonial state, al-Mīrghānī and others like him were to bring about profound changes in the spiritual life and loyalties of the northern Sudanese. The coming together of these two processes was to culminate in the Mahdist revolution (1881-5).

Dr. Karrar's study is an "insider's" account and analysis of the history of the Sufi brotherhoods in the northern Sudan generally, but with a particular focus on his own homeland, the Shāyqiyya country. The Sufi character of Sudanese Islam is a cliché in that country's historiography. Since the survey of J.S. Trimingham, *Islam in the Sudan* (London, 1949), much detailed research has been done, which Dr. Karrar has been able to build upon and to extend. The result is a comprehensive study based on internal written and oral sources.

The earliest Sufi affiliations in the Sudan, Qādīriyya and Shādhiliyya, were localized and lineage-based. The holy man, teacher, mediator, medical practitioner, lived in uneasy harmony with the local rulers. Son followed father or nephew succeeded uncle. Compromises with pre-Islamic customs were common and there was relatively little contact with the outside Islamic world.

For reasons that are still not completely clear, change came in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. As in Southeast Asia, India, North and West Africa, a new style of Sufi organization was brought to the Sudan between about 1780 and 1830 that marked a significant break with the past. The coming of the new orders,

Sammāniyya, Khatmiyya, Rashīdiyya and others, was to lead to profound changes in the lives of most Sudanese Muslims. The local holy families were incorporated into mass supra-tribal organizations that gave their allegiance to families, like the Mīrghānī and Idrīsī, whose links were pan-Islamic. Many more Sudanese lived and studied in Cairo or the holy cities; there was an upsurge in both popular devotional poetry and scholarly writing, which played their part in raising Sudanese Islamic consciousness. It is this process that Dr. Karrar documents in detail and where he provides a case study that will serve as a valuable contribution to future comparative studies.

These new Sufi orders have been frequently discussed under the rubric “neo-Sufism” with the suggestion that they brought with them new doctrines that were in part Wahhābī-inspired. More recent research suggests that such generalizations are premature if not inaccurate, that what was new, as Dr. Karrar makes clear, were organizational and devotional innovations.

Dr. Karrar concludes his study by emphasizing the continuity between the work of the new brotherhoods and the upsurge of the Mahdist revolution. Here he provides a new perspective on one of the great cataclysms in nineteenth-century Islam.

## PREFACE AND ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The present study attempts to trace the historical development and the impact of the Sufi brotherhoods on the Sudan until the end of the nineteenth century, with special reference to the Shāyqiyya region. For the sake of brevity and without intending any disrespect, honorific titles such as *shaykh*, *sayyid* and *ustādh* have been kept to a minimum.

As will be shown, during the period when the central Sudan was under the influence of the ancient brotherhoods, the Qādiriyya and Shādhiliyya, the Shāyqiyya region was dominated by a number of religious teachers who were either not Sufis or who adopted an unaffiliated form of Sufism. By the mid-seventeenth century, however, the Qādiriyya and Shādhiliyya began to infiltrate into the Shāyqiyya region, but it seems that these orders did not gain much ground.

By contrast, the nineteenth century saw the domination of the region by a number of centralized new brotherhoods, mainly connected with the school of Ahmad b. Idrīs, one of the key figures of Islam in that century.

The shift in the Shāyqiyya region from what may be termed a "Sudanic belt" pattern of Islam, dominated by individual holy men, to a Middle Eastern one with organized Sufi brotherhoods is discussed within its political and socio-economic context.

The present book is a revised version of my Ph.D. thesis, "The Sufi Brotherhoods in the Sudan until 1900, with special reference to the Shāyqiyya region", submitted to the Faculty of Arts, University of Bergen in 1985. I have benefited from the critical comments and valuable suggestions offered by my examiners: Professor J.O. Hunwick, Northwestern University, who acted as my First Opponent, Professor R.S. O'Fahey and Dr. Anders Bjørkelo, University of Bergen.

During my four years of research at the Department of History, University of Bergen, Norway, I have acquired debts of gratitude to many people and several institutions. Although it is impossible to list all of them here, mention should be made of some of them. First of all, thanks must go to the Sudan Government and the Norwegian Agency for International Development (NORAD) for providing the financial support which made this study possible. I am also indebted to my superior, Dr. M.I. Abu Salim, the Director of the National Records Office, Khartoum, for releasing me from my duties there for over four years. He, together with Professor Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan and Professor

Muhammed Omer Beshir of the University of Khartoum, has set me on the “path” of research. To all of them I am most grateful.

Thanks are also due to my old teachers at the University of Khartoum, namely Professor Tāj al-Sirr Ḥarrān, Professor Hasan Aḥmad Ibrāhīm, the late Dr. Aḥmad ʻUthmān Ibrāhīm and Dr. Bashīr Ibrāhīm Bashīr, for their valuable comments and encouragement. Mention should also be made of my friends, Drs. ʻAlī Osman Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ, Ibrāhīm Karsanī, ʻAlī al-Tijānī al-Māhī, Amin Ḥāmid Zein al-ʻĀbdīn, ʻAwād al-Ṣid Karsanī and Maḥmūd ʻAbdalla Ibrāhīm.

I owe a longstanding debt of gratitude to the members of the Adārisa family of Omdurman and Dongola with whom my ties of friendship go back nearly ten years. The same is true of the descendants of *sayyid* Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd and their senior representative, *khalīfa* Muḥammad al-Tuhāmī al-Ḥasan.

I would also like to express my deepest gratitude to all my informants from the various orders, whose names are given at the end of the book under “Sources and Bibliography”. Special mention, however, should be made of *khalīfa* Muḥammad ʻAbd al-Ḥamīd al-ʻIrāqī, *khalīfa* ʻAlī Muḥammad al-Shaykh Jiqaydī and *ustādh* Muḥammad Aḥmad ʻAbd al-Rahmān al-Nāṭiq.

I am grateful too to my colleagues in the National Records Office, Khartoum, and to my friends at the Sudan Library and Institute of the African and Asian Studies, both at the University of Khartoum, for being so helpful. To my friend and former colleague, ʻAbd al-ʻAl Aḥmad ʻUthmān, who acted as my research assistant in the Shāyqiyya region, I will always remain indebted. I wish also to thank my friends, *ustādha* Sawsan ʻAbd al-Ghanī and *ustādh* Hāshim of the Egyptian National Archives, Cairo, for their valuable help.

I would also like to express my thanks to Professor R.H. Pierce of the Classics Department, University of Bergen, for his constructive criticism and for giving me much of his time. I am indebted as well to Professor P.M. Holt, the “Shaykh” of the historians of the Sudan, for his valuable comments and suggestions and for providing me with copies of some of his articles and certain manuscripts.

My thanks are also owed to Professors J.N. Bell, J.O. Hunwick, F. de Jong and J.L. Spaulding, and to Drs. Lidwien Kapteijns, Anders Bjørkelo, Einar Thomassen, Aḥmad al-Shāhī, Neil McHugh, and to Knut S. Vikør, Albrecht Hofheinz, Leif Manger, Linda Sørbø, and Daniel Wolk.

I am indebted to the Department of History, University of Bergen, for creating very stimulating working conditions and for placing all their facilities at my disposal. I should thank too the staff of the University Library for the help that they have given.

To my Sudanese friends in Bergen, Sharīf Ḥarīr, Anwar M. Osman, <sup>‘</sup>Abd al-Ḥamīd M. Osman and Āmāl Abū <sup>‘</sup>Afān, I am also indebted in many ways. My Norwegian, African, Arab and Asian friends have made my stay with my little family in Norway very pleasant.

Special thanks are due to Sunniva Bjørkelo for her superb typing of this study. My deepest appreciation and gratitude go to my parents and members of my family in the Sudan for their support. This gratefulness, indeed, should be extended to my wife Zaynab and my daughter Fadwa who lived with me in Norway for three years. Their understanding and patience were an indispensable aid to me, especially in moments of frustration.

Last but not least, mention should be made of my painstaking supervisor, Professor R.S. O’Fahey. For his help and encouragement, without which the present study would have not reached its present form, I am most grateful.

## ABBREVIATIONS AND SHORT TITLES

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <i>Al-A<sup>c</sup>lām</i> | Khayr al-Dīn al-Ziriklī, <i>al-A<sup>c</sup>lām: qāmūs tarājim li-ashhar al-rijāl wa'l-nisā'</i> min al- <sup>c</sup> arab wa'l-musta <sup>c</sup> ribin wa'l-mustashriqīn, n.p. (Beirut?), n.d. (c. 1979)  |
| b.                         | <i>ibn</i> : "son"  |
| Bergen                     | Literary manuscripts and other documents in the Photographic Collection, Department of History, University of Bergen  |
| <i>BSOAS</i>               | Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies  |
| bt.                        | <i>bint</i> : "daughter".   |
| <i>EP</i>                  | <i>Encyclopaedia of Islam</i> , new edn., Leiden, 1969 (in progress)  |
| <i>ENA</i>                 | Egyptian National Archives, Cairo   |
| <i>ERE</i>                 | <i>Encyclopedia of Religion and Ethics</i>  |
| <i>GAL</i>                 | Carl Brockelmann, <i>Geschichte der arabischen Literatur</i> , 2nd. edn., 2 vols., Leiden, 1943-9   |
| <i>GAL S</i>               | <i>ibid.</i> , Supplementbanden, I-III, Leiden, 1937-42   |
| <i>k.</i>                  | <i>kitāb</i> : "book"   |
| <i>K. al-ibāna</i>         | Aḥmad b. Idrīs b. al-Naṣayḥ, <i>Kitāb al-ibāna al-nūriyya fī sha<sup>n</sup> ṣāḥib al-ṭarīqa al-Khatmiyya</i> , ms. (see Sources and Bibliography, B.2). Unless otherwise indicated, references are given to the Bergen photocopy, accession no. 240. |
| <i>IJAHS</i>               | <i>International Journal of African Historical Studies</i>  |
| <i>IJMES</i>               | <i>International Journal of Middle East Studies</i>   |
| <i>Makḥṭūṭa</i>            | <i>Makḥṭūṭa kātib al-shūna fī ta<sup>rīkh</sup> al-salṭana Sinnāriyya wa'l-idāra al-Miṣriyya</i> , ed. al-Shāṭir Buṣaylī <sup>c</sup> Abd al-Jalīl, Cairo 1963  |
| <i>MDS</i>                 | <i>Majallat al-dirāsāt al-Sūdāniyya</i> (Khartoum)  |
| <i>NRO</i>                 | National Records Office, Khartoum   |
| <i>r</i>                   | <i>Risāla</i> : "letter, treatise"  |

SAD

Sudan Archive, School of Oriental Studies,  
University of Durham

SNR

*Sudan Notes and Records*

## A NOTE ON TRANSLITERATION

Arabic personal names have generally been transliterated according to the system used by the *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, but with the omission of the subscript ligatures and the substitution of “j” for “dj” and “q” for “k”. In some instances, I have preferred “ð” to “ū”, e.g. Khōjalī for Khūjalī, and have written <sup>‘</sup>Abdullāhi and <sup>‘</sup>Abdallāhi instead of <sup>‘</sup>Abd Allāh, e.g. <sup>‘</sup>Abdullāhi al-Dufārī and <sup>‘</sup>Abdallāhi, the Khalīfa. Nor have I always been consistent in the grammatical form of ethnic names, e.g. Ja<sup>‘</sup>aliyyūn, but Halawīyyīn.

Most place names have been spelt as written, except for Khartoum (al-Khartoum), Omdurman (Ummdurmān) and Shendi (Shandī).

I have chosen to spell Shāyqiyya thus to avoid giving the impression that the name coming from our eponymous father, Shāyq, contains a medial *hamza*.

# 1

## THE LAND, ITS HISTORY AND THE COMING OF ISLAM

### *Introduction*

Trimingham traces the development of the Sufi orders in Islam through three stages: the *khānqāh* stage, the *ṭariqa* stage and the *ṭā'ifa* stage.<sup>1</sup> This threefold typology, however, is not applicable to the Sudan. The *khānaqāh*, which originated in Persia and gained popularity in Iraq, Syria and Egypt during the twelfth century, did not exist in the Sudan. As Professor De Jong notes, Trimingham uses the term *ṭā'ifa* inconsistently, replacing it in several passages with *ṭariqa*. Furthermore, the term *ṭā'ifa* is not used in Sudanese sources to denote *ṭariqa*.<sup>2</sup>

As is shown in the present study, Sufism was the most fundamental characteristic of Islam in the Sudan. Its development may be traced through two main stages, the pre-*ṭariqa* stage and the *ṭariqa* stage. The first stage was dominated by the activities of religious men who adopted an unaffiliated form of Sufism, that is a Sufism not bound to a particular organizational pattern. The second stage in its turn may be divided into two phases. The first began in the sixteenth century with the coming of the decentralized Sufi affiliations, namely the Qādiriyya and Shādhiliyya. This coincided with the foundation of the Funj Sultanate that ruled the country until it was destroyed by the Turco-Egyptian invasion in 1820-1. The second phase took place in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries when the country came to be dominated by a number of centralized or semi-centralized *ṭariqas*, namely the Sammāniyya, Tijāniyya, Khatmiyya and Idrīsiyya. With the exception of the Sammāniyya and Tijāniyya, all these orders derived ultimately from the teachings of the Moroccan Sufi and scholar Ahmad b. Idrīs (d. 1837).

1 J.S. Trimingham, *The Sufi Orders in Islam*, Oxford 1971, 1-104.

2 In a review of Trimingham, *Sufi Orders*, in *Journal of Semitic Studies*, 17/2, 1972, 279.

The Sufi “Way” is a long and arduous journey marked by a number of spiritual attainments (*maqāmāt*) that reflect the adherent’s progress. Through its chain of spiritual authority (*silsila*) deriving from the founder and, in several cases, from the Prophet and his cousin ‘Alī, a *ṭarīqa* gave its members a sense of legitimization. All *ṭarīqas* were agreed that an aspirant who desired a safe journey and arrival at his destination (i.e. perfect knowledge of God) should put himself under the guidance of a shaykh. One of the early Sufi teachers, Abū Yazīd al-Bistāmī (d. 260/874-5), is frequently quoted in this respect:

He who has no Shaykh, his Shaykh is Satan.

The Sufi orders in the Sudan, as in the rest of the Muslim world, never constituted a world of their own. In the view of most Sufi shaykhs and followers, Sufism and Sharia were entirely interlocking manifestations of faith. Muḥammad ‘Uthmān al-Mīrghānī, the founder of the Khatmiyya, confirmed this when he gave the metaphor:

The Sharia is a root, *ṭarīqa* is a branch and the *haqīqa* [“Reality” or “Truth”-metonymy for the Sufi way] is the fruit.<sup>3</sup>

There were, however, some religious figures who did not give equal weight to the exoteric sciences (represented by *fiqh* and Sharia) and esoteric (*taṣawwuf*). A *ṭarīqa* shaykh had absolute authority and expected the total submission of his followers. He was believed to be divinely-guided and incapable of sin. Whatever his actions, even if they were in open contravention of Sharia, they had to be understood within the context of his infallibility. Some Sufi shaykhs were not concerned to suppress local non-Islamic practices. This tolerance was presumably why some pious and learned figures were unwilling to join the *ṭarīqas*.

The Sufi orders in the Sudan, as elsewhere in the Muslim world, played significant social, economic, cultural and political roles. In these organizations the ties of brotherhood were to supersede the old bonds of kinship. The present book reveals the close connexion between the brotherhoods, trade and traders. This association was, indeed, not unique to the Sudan. In Northwest Africa, for example, the Kunta-Qādiriyya, Nāṣiriyya, Sanūsiyya and Tijāniyya played important roles in the trans-Saharan trade. Furthermore, the late nineteenth century saw the

3 Ahmād b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Raṭbī, *Minhāt al-ashāb li-man arāda sulūk ṭarīq al-ashfiyā’ wa ’l-ahbāb*, in, *al-Rasā’il al-Mīrghāniyya*, 99 and Ahmad al-Shahi, *Themes from Northern Sudan*, London 1986, 25.

economic activity of the Murīdiyya order founded by Ahmad Bamba in Senegal.<sup>4</sup>

There are several examples of Sufi orders throughout the Muslim world that transformed themselves into political forces. In Africa, for instance, the fifteenth century saw a *jihād* movement by the adherents of the Jazūliyya branch of the Shādhiliyya order in Morocco against the Portuguese who were establishing enclaves on the Atlantic coast. Further examples may be seen in the *jihād* of the Amīr ʻAbd al-Qādir against the French in western Algeria in the 1830s and 1840s and the movement of Muḥammad ʻAbd Allāh Ḥasan, the so-called "Mad Mullah", in Somalia against the British and Italians in the period 1899-1920. Finally, mention should be made of the *jihāds* of the Qādirī shaykh ʻUthmān b. Fūdī (Usman dan Fodio) in northwestern Nigeria and the Tijāniyya representative *al-ḥājj* ʻUmar Tall in Mali in the nineteenth century.<sup>5</sup> As Professor Hunwick has pointed out, in contrast to the former movements, these *jihāds* were waged against internal enemies.<sup>6</sup> The present book shows that a Sufi *ṭarīqa* may serve as a tool for foreign or local political authorities, or at least co-operate with them. In this sense the militancy of the Qādiriyya under ʻAbd al-Qādir in Algeria contrasts sharply with the Nāṣiriyya in Morocco, who capitulated without resistance to the French and co-operated with them.<sup>7</sup> Although the present book traces the evolution of the *ṭarīqas* in the Sudan in the approximate period from 1600 to 1900, it concentrates mainly on the period of colonial rule. The Turco-Egyptian invasion of 1820-1 led to major political, economic and religious changes. Despite the fact that the new regime established an official hierarchy of *ʻulamā'* on the Egyptian pattern and encouraged the Sudanese to study at al-Azhar, there is no evidence of a conscious religious policy, parallel to that adopted for Egypt, seeking to control the Sudanese religious institutions. At the local level, the religious life in the Sudan continued to be much the same as it had been during the Funj period. The religious teachers

4 R.G. Jenkins, "The evolution of religious brotherhoods in North and Northwest Africa, 1523-1900", in *Studies in West African Islamic History*, ed. J.R. Willis, i, London 1979, 61. On the Murīdiyya see D. Cruise O'Brien, *The Mourids of Senegal*, Oxford 1971.

5 Jenkins (1979), 62.

6 Personal communication.

7 Jenkins (1979), 62.

continued to play their traditional role and their centres of learning were subsidized by the government.

The present study, however, suggests that the relations between the invaders and the Sudanese religious class should be understood within the general framework of those who supported and those who opposed the regime.

As will be shown, in 1881 the Turco-Egyptian regime was overthrown by a religious revolution, the Mahdiyya. Muḥammad Aḥmad, the Mahdi, believed in the universality of his movement and thus sought to unify all Muslims. Muḥammad Aḥmad was a Sufi shaykh before manifesting himself as a Mahdi. He made use of the general Sufi atmosphere and networks in the Sudan to preach his cause. Thus his earliest contacts were with influential Sufi figures.

### *The Geographical Setting*

The name *Shāyqiyya*, describing one of the most prominent riverain ethnic groups of the northern Sudan, appears not to have existed before the penetration of the Arabs into the Sudan during the fourteenth to the sixteenth centuries.<sup>8</sup> However, the region which was later to become the *Shāyqiyya* homeland was, for example, the administrative and, by about the middle of the third century BC., the religious centre of the Kingdom of Kush (c. 750 BC. - 350 AD.), whose influence was felt as far as Asia Minor.<sup>9</sup> The region also saw the rise of the Christian Kingdom of Maqurra during the sixth century AD. After the coming of the Arabs the northern Sudan came to be divided into regions, each known as *dār* (pl. *diyār*, lit. "homeland"). Although each of these *dārs* was dominated by one descent group which had pre-eminent domain over the land, water and other resources, they were never exclusive and other ethnic groups were to be found in them.

According to Crawford, the *Shāyqiyya* region or *dār al-Shāyqiyya* extended from Bartī Island, ten miles above the Fourth Cataract, to Jabal

8 R.S. O'Fahey and J.L. Spaulding, *Kingdoms of the Sudan*, London 1974, 28, refer to an account by an Italian visitor to Upper Egypt in 1529, "Who was correctly informed that pyramids could be found south of Egypt in the land of the 'Xiogeia'".

9 W.Y. Adams, *Nubia. Corridor to Africa*, Princeton 1977, 245-93.

al-Ḍayqa, on the west bank of the Nile near Jabal ibn Ḍawf in the Arāk area.<sup>10</sup> Gleichen, however, says that the Shāyqiyya region extended from al-Dabba, forty-five miles west of Kūrtī at the southern end of the great bend of the Nile, upstream to Bartū.<sup>11</sup> An indecisive battle which took place in 1812 between the Mamluks who had escaped massacre in 1811 by Muḥammad ʻAlī Pasha, the ruler of Egypt, and established their camp at Dongola al-ʻUrdī (Dongola “the camp”), and the Shāyqiyya, resulted in a compromise (*ṣulh*) according to which the latter’s northern frontier was moved back to the village of al-Ghurayba, just south of Kūrtī, where it remained until the time of the Turco-Egyptian invasion in 1820.<sup>12</sup>

Giving precise geographical limits for the Shāyqiyya region is difficult. Hayder Ibrahim attributes this to the warlike and predatory nature of the Shāyqiyya, who continuously raided their neighbours, causing the territory under their control to fluctuate.<sup>13</sup>

### *The Land and the People*

The dominant ethnic group in *dār al-Shāyqiyya* was, of course, the Shāyqiyya. According to MacMichael, all those who claimed Arab descent in the Sudan may be divided into two groups: the Jaʻaliyyūn and the Juhayna, the latter being mainly nomads.<sup>14</sup> The term Jaʻaliyyūn in its wider sense denotes all the sedentary groups which claim descent from al-ʻAbbās, the Prophet’s uncle, through their eponymous founder Ibrāhīm Jaʻal. Two of the latter’s descendants, ʻArmān and Abū Kham-

10 O.G.S. Crawford, *The Fung Kingdom of Sennar*, Gloucester, 1951, 43.

11 See A.E.W., Gleichen, *The Anglo-Egyptian Sudan*, i, London 1905, 83.

12 Muḥammad ʻAbd al-Rahīm, *Al-Nidā’ fī daf’ al-iftirā’*, Cairo 1952, 27, and ʻAwāḍ ʻAbd al-Hādī al-Awāḍ, “al-Shāyqiyya ta’rīkhuhum wa-thaqāfatuhum ḥattā al-faṭḥ al-turkī”, *MDS*, 1971, 21.

13 Hayder Ibrahim, *The Shaiqiya. The cultural and social change of a Northern Sudanese riverain people*, Wiesbaden 1979, 10.

14 H.A. MacMichael, *A History of the Arabs in the Sudan*, Cambridge 1922, i, 197-306.

sīn, were the “founding fathers” of the *Ja‘aliyyūn* proper of the Shendi area.<sup>15</sup>

The Shāyqiyya, the descendants of Shāyq, like other northern riverain ethnic groups, claim *‘Abbāsid* ancestry.<sup>16</sup> This claim has been interpreted by several historians to mean that they are Arabized Nubians, the result of the Arabs intermarrying with the indigenous people, the Nubians.<sup>17</sup>

The origin of the Shāyqiyya, which is still a controversial issue in Sudanese history, lies beyond the scope of this study.<sup>18</sup>

Although the Shāyqiyya claim to descend from a common ancestor, they never formed a unified kingdom under one king or *malik*.<sup>19</sup> The Shāyqiyya consisted of numerous sub-divisions.<sup>20</sup>

At the time of the Turco-Egyptian invasion in November 1820, their region was divided into four separate kingdoms: the Ḥannikāb, which extended for sixteen miles between Jabal al-Ḍayqa and the village of al-Zūma<sup>21</sup> and was under the rule of *malik* Ṣubayr; the Kajabī, which was under *malik* Madanī; the *‘Adlānāb*, which was ruled from Marawī by *malik* Shāwīsh;<sup>22</sup> and finally, the *‘Umārāb*, which was under the rule of Hamad w. *‘Asalā*.<sup>23</sup>

Although relations between the Shāyqiyya kingdoms were often hostile, a common enemy always brought them together. Thus, when the Turco-Egyptians invaded in 1820, the four kingdoms united under the leadership of *malik* Shāwīsh to resist the invaders.<sup>24</sup> They, indeed, were

15 P.M. Holt, “Dja‘aliyyūn” in *EI* 2, ii, 351.

16 MacMichael (1922), ii, 337-8.

17 Holt, “Dja‘aliyyūn” in *EI* 2, ii, 351.

18 See MacMichael (1922), i, 213-4, and Ibrahim (1979), 8-15.

19 R. Hill, *On the Frontiers of Islam*, Oxford, 1970, 70, 73 and 74, and J.L. Spaulding, “Kings of Sun and Shadow: a History of the *‘Abdallāb* Provinces of the Northern Sinnār Sultanate, 1500-1800 A.D”, Ph.D. thesis, Columbia University 1971, 220. The Shāyqiyya were the only northern riverain group who did not adopt the title *makk* for their rulers. This has been explained by their desire to be distinct from others.

20 See W. Nicholls, *The Shaikia*, Dublin 1913, 46-51, and MacMichael (1922), ii, 339-40.

21 Crawford (1951), 46.

22 See G.B. English, *A Narrative of the Expedition to Dongola and Senaar*, London 1822, 82; Crawford (1951), 48, and MacMichael (1922), ii, 218.

23 Crawford (1951), 48.

24 English (1822), 82; see also Nicholls (1913), 8.

the only riverain group to resist the Turco-Egyptian expedition from the outset.

The Shāyqiyya possessed great wealth in corn and cattle, resulting from the fertility of their region. English, who visited the region in 1820, found its land better cultivated than any of the areas south of Egypt that he had so far seen:

the waterwheels [Ar. sing. *sāqiya*], so far as we have passed their country, being frequently within half a stone's throw of each other.<sup>25</sup>

Another writer has observed that the Nile:

has cut for itself a much broader trench, and fairly broad flanking terraces may be found on one side, though rarely on both.<sup>26</sup>

Rainfall alone in the area is insufficient to support either agriculture or nomadic life. The Shāyqiyya, like other northern riverain groups, are primarily sedentary farmers who cultivate by irrigation the narrow strip of land along the banks of the Nile as well as the islands formed by the river. To the Shāyqiyya, as for most Sudanese ethnic groups, land is not only the fundamental basis of their economy but also a symbol of social status and security against life's vicissitudes.

Before the Shāyqiyya revolt against the Funj kingdom at the end of the seventeenth century, their region was crossed by several trade-routes which followed the Nile to Upper Egypt. But as one consequence of the revolt, caravans tended to avoid Shāyqiyya raiding by travelling across the Bayūḍa desert in a northwesterly direction to meet the Nile at Kūrtī away from *dār Shāyqiyya*.<sup>27</sup>

The Shāyqiyya were already well-known as horse-traders in the seventeenth century.<sup>28</sup> Horses were always of great importance in Shāyqiyya society. According to Burckhardt,

25 English (1822), 64-5.

26 K.N. Barbour, *The Republic of the Sudan: A Regional Geography*, London 1961, 133.

27 P.M. Holt and M. Daly, *The History of the Sudan*, London 1979, 9.

28 Muḥammad al-Nūr b. Dayf Allāh, *K. al-ṭabaqāt fī khuṣūṣ al-awliyā'* wa 'l-ṣāliḥīn wa 'l-ṣulamā' wa 'l-shu'arā' fī 'l-Sūdān, ed. Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan, 2nd edn, Khartoum 1974, 228; see also MacMichael (1922), ii, 266.

They [the Shāyqiyya] all fight on horseback, in coats of mail which are sold to them by merchants from Suakin and Sennar. Fire-arms are not common among them, their only weapons being a lance, target and sabre.<sup>29</sup>

The Shāyqiyya region was, and still is, inhabited by people of diverse ethnic origin. Although most of these groups have been assimilated into the Shāyqiyya through intermarriage, they still claim, by virtue of patrilineal descent, a non-Shāyqī origin. Since it is not my intention to give here an historical ethnography of the region, I shall confine my account to those ethnic groups who have been influential in the religious life of the region.

The Shāyqiyya region was well-known for its religious schools which attracted students from both within and outside the Sudan.<sup>30</sup> In turn, the Shāyqiyya were known for their hospitality and the respect given to their learned men.<sup>31</sup> It was presumably because of this and the wealth of the region that holy men moved in to settle among the Shāyqiyya. Like most holy men in the Sudan and elsewhere in the Muslim world, these religious figures claimed Sharifian descent (i.e. descent from the Prophet), which was a way of legitimizing their religious role.<sup>32</sup>

One of the non-Shāyqī families who contributed to the religious life of the Shāyqiyya region during the Funj period was the Hamadtūiyāb (or Ḥamatūiyāb), who settled in the village of Nūrī. Their "founding father", Ḥamadtū al-Khaṭīb, is said to have been a member of the Bakriyya ethnic group of Upper Egypt, that is a descendant of Abū Bakr al-Ṣiddīq, the first Caliph after the Prophet.<sup>33</sup> He settled in the region during the fifteenth century and died and was buried in al-Arkī in the Jilās area.<sup>34</sup> It was, however, his son Ḩabd al-Rahmān, known as Abū

29 J.L. Burckhardt, *Travels in Nubia*, London 1822, 64.

30 See, for example, Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 224 and 359-60; see also Burckhardt (1822), 65.

31 Burckhardt (1822), 65.

32 P. M. Holt, *Studies in the History of the Near East*, London 1973b, 126.

33 *Nasab al-Hamadtūiyāb*, in the possession of Ṣiddīq Shaykh, a descendant of Ḩabd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū, Nūrī; see also MacMichael (1922), ii, 93, and al-Shahi (1986), 61.

34 Ahmad al-Shahi, "An Anthropological Study of a Sudanese Shaigiyya Village", Ph.D. thesis, Oxford University 1971, 303, and interview 19.

Shawārib, and his descendants who established the Ḥamadtūiyāb religious centre of Nūrī (see pp. 29-30).

Another non-Shāyqī religious clan is the *‘Irāqāb* (or *‘Urāqāb*) of Nūrī. Their ancestor, al-*‘Irāqī*, is said to have come from Iraq.<sup>35</sup> One of his descendants, *al-ḥājj Abū’l-Qāsim*, was the first member of the family to come in the seventeenth century and settle in the Shāyqiyya region. He lived and died on al-Gharīb Island in the Nūrī area. His sons were to play a significant religious and educational role in different parts of the Sudan.

Our concern here is mainly with his son, *‘Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Āḥmar*, the founder of the *‘Irāqāb* of Nūrī. He, like other holy men, received gifts of land and married into the Shāyqiyya.<sup>36</sup> His grandsons and their descendants were to become prominent religious teachers and among the senior local representatives of the Khatmiyya brotherhood.

A third religious family whose founder came from outside the Shāyqiyya region is the Kawārīr of Nūrī. Their pedigree shows that they are Jummūciyya and that they share a common ancestry with Ahmad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Bashīr, the founder of the Sammāniyya *tariqa* in the Sudan (see pp. 44-7).<sup>37</sup>

Mention should also be made of the Duwayhīyya, who belong to the Juhayna group. Although most of the Duwayhīyya were nomads living mainly in Kordofān, they also produced religious men who influenced the northern parts of the Sudan and the Blue Nile area.<sup>38</sup> Among those who influenced the Shāyqiyya region were *‘Abd al-Rahmān w. Hājj al-Duwayhī* and his grandson Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd (see below pp. 102-3). A descendant of *‘Abd al-Rahmān*, Warāq, also founded a religious sub-clan known as al-Warāriq.<sup>39</sup>

Members of the Rikābiyya holy clan, descendants of the famous religious teacher Ghulām Allāh b. *‘Ābid*, settled among the Shāyqiyya too. The Shāyqiyya region also saw the activities of some religious figures of Maħas and Ṣawārda origin. Finally, mention should be made of the Tirayfiyya, who influenced not only the religious but also the economic life of the region. The rise of the Shāyqiyya confederation in the seven-

35 MacMichael (1922), ii, 338.

36 Al-Shahi, thesis (1971), 301, and interview 18.

37 Interview 7, and al-Shahi (1986), 62.

38 Ibn Ɗayf Allāh (1974), 87, 205 and 286; see also MacMichael (1922), ii, 338.

39 Al-‘Awād (1971), 32.

teenth century forced many members of these groups to emigrate to Kordofan and Dār Fūr.<sup>40</sup>

### *A Brief Political History*

Politically, the Shāyqiyya region was part of Dongola province, which in turn was tributary to the 'Abdallāb, the governors of the north on behalf of the Funj, who ruled over most of the central and northern Sudan from about 1504 until 1821. At the end of the seventeenth century, the Shāyqiyya successfully revolted against Funj rule and thus became independent of the 'Abdallāb until 1821. Their period of independence saw their war against the fugitive Mamluks, who were supported by the King of Arqū.<sup>41</sup>

The Turco-Egyptian invasion of 1820, which was motivated by the desire of Muḥammad 'Alī Pasha, the Viceroy of Egypt, to seize control of the wealth of the Sudan,<sup>42</sup> led to major political, social, economic and religious change. It put an end to the declining Funj state and to the political autonomy of the local ethnic groups, bringing them under a highly centralized government.<sup>43</sup>

After the defeat of the Shāyqiyya by the invaders in November 1820, *malik* Shāwīsh fled to the Shendi area. Later, however, he submitted and was given a military title and his troops were enlisted as irregular cavalry (*bāshī-būzuq*).<sup>44</sup>

Although many people of Shāyqī origin co-operated with the new regime, serving it as soldiers and tax collectors, stigmatizing all the Shāyqiyya as collaborators is inaccurate. A fair appraisal of the attitude of the Shāyqiyya towards both the Turco-Egyptian regime and the Mahdiyya has to distinguish between those who did and those who did not support the regimes. Most of the Shāyqiyya who moved from their homeland after the defeat in 1820, and settled in the Shendi area, co-operated with the invaders and received privileges, including exemption

40 Holt, "Dja'aliyyūn" in *EI*<sup>2</sup>, ii, 351, and R.S. O'Fahey, *State and Society in Dār Fūr*, London 1980, 141.

41 Burckhardt (1822), 66-7.

42 See further, R. Hill, *Egypt in the Sudan*, London 1959, 7-8, and Hasan Ahmād Ibrāhīm, *Muhammad 'Alī fi'l-Sūdān*, Khartoum n.d., 23-40.

43 See Hill (1959), *passim*.

44 *Ibid.*, 10, and Holt and Daly (1979), 51.

from taxes. Thus Khūrshīd Pasha, Governor-general of the Sudan (1826-38), exempted those Shāyqiyya who collaborated from taxes and provided them with a free monthly ration for their horses.<sup>45</sup> By contrast, most of the Shāyqiyya who remained in their homeland paid taxes like the rest of the Sudanese.<sup>46</sup>

Relations between the Turco-Egyptian regime and its supporters, however, were not always easy. Aḥmad Pasha Abū Wīdān, Khūrshīd's successor as Governor-general of the Sudan, abolished the privileges of the Shāyqiyya and ordered them to pay taxes.<sup>47</sup>

Muhammad ʻAlī Pasha had sent three jurists, Aḥmad al-Salāwī al-Maghribī al-Mālikī, Aḥmad al-Baqlī al-Shāfiʻī and Muḥammad al-Asyūṭī al-Ḥanafī, with the invading army in 1820. Their duty was to convince the Sudanese that the invasion was being undertaken on behalf of the Ottoman Sultan in his capacity as "Commander of the Faithful", *amīr al-mu'minīn*.<sup>48</sup> The sending of these three *ʻulamā'* has been interpreted by some scholars as part of a plan by the Egyptian regime to encourage Islamic orthodoxy in the Sudan and thus to undermine the status of the Sudanese traditional religious leadership.<sup>49</sup> Although the new regime did establish an official hierarchy of *ʻulamā'* on the Egyptian pattern and encouraged the Sudanese to study at al-Azhar,<sup>50</sup> there is no evidence of a conscious religious policy seeking to undermine the Sudanese religious class. Again, the attitude of the invaders towards the holy men should be understood within the general framework of collaboration. As will be shown, those Sudanese holy men who were willing to collaborate enjoyed monthly subventions and their religious centres were subsidized.

The colonial regime also encouraged a number of Egyptian Sufi *ṭarīqas*, namely the Rifāʻiyya, Aḥmadiyya (Badawiyya), Bayyūmiyya

45 Hill (1970), 69.

46 A letter from the Turkiyya period; see NRO, Misc. 1/27/386.

47 Hill (1959), 70.

48 Naʻūm Shuqayr, *Taʼrīkh al-Sūdān al-qadīm wa'l-ḥadīth wa-jughrāfiyatuhu*, Cairo 1903, iii, 3-4.

49 See, for example, Hill (1959), 125-6; G. Warburg, "Religious policy in the northern Sudan: *ʻulamā'* and Ṣufism, 1899-1918", *Asian and African Studies* (Jerusalem), vii, 1971, 90, and Holt (1973b), 127 and 139-40.

50 Holt (1973b), 127.

and the Naqshbandiyya, to move into the Sudan.<sup>51</sup> Ahmad al-Salawi, who was appointed first as Mālikī *mufti* and later as the grand *qādī* of the Sudan (*qādī ʿumūm bilād al-Sūdān*),<sup>52</sup> was also a Sufi (see p. 46).

Although the Turco-Egyptian regime imposed heavy taxes upon the Sudanese and caused considerable disruption, it brought some elements of modernization. These came to include better communications, steamers on the Nile and an expanding telegraph network. Trade-routes and public security also improved considerably.<sup>53</sup> These facilities were to be used by the Sufi orders to centralize and administer their networks of local representatives (see Chapters Five and Six).

In 1881 the Turco-Egyptian regime was overthrown by a religious revolution, the Mahdiyya. The Mahdist state ruled the Sudan until it was in turn destroyed by an Anglo-Egyptian force in 1898. It is beyond the scope of this study to discuss the complex causes of the Sudanese Mahdiyya, but harsh economic measures and maladministration are among the main reasons for the revolt.<sup>54</sup> Although the Mahdi, who believed in the universality of his movement and thus sought to unify all Muslims, in theory abolished the *madhhabs* and *ṭariqas*, in practice his policy towards the latter was much more complex.

### *The Coming of Islam*

In the centuries known in Europe as Middle Ages the northern region of the present Republic of the Sudan was divided into three kingdoms; Maris or Nobatia, between the First and Third Nile Cataracts, Maqurra, above the Third Cataract (these two kingdoms were soon united into one kingdom called Nubia with its capital at Old Dongola on the Nile), and ʿAlwa or Alodia with its capital at Soba on the Blue Nile.

51 NRO, Intel. 2/32/270, p. 59, and J.S. Trimingham, *Islam in the Sudan*, London 1949, 241.

52 Hill (1959), 43, and R.S. O'Fahey, "A colonial servant. Al-Salawi and the Sudan", *Der Islam* (forthcoming).

53 *Ibid.*, 130-1, 157-60, and Holt (1973b), 139.

54 See P.M. Holt, *The Mahdist State in the Sudan, 1881-1898*, 2nd edn, Oxford 1970, 32-44.

By the middle of the sixth century, Christianity was firmly established as the state religion in all three kingdoms.<sup>55</sup> The Sudan enjoyed a period of cultural and economic prosperity.<sup>56</sup>

According to Muslim historians, the Nubians were Jacobites, that is Monophysites.<sup>57</sup> But, despite the active missionary campaigns in Nubia, Christianity remained the religion of the state and appears not to have gained much ground among the ordinary population.

The turning-point in the history of the northern part of the Sudan, and indeed in the Sudan as a whole, was the penetration of the Arabs, and thus the spread of Islam and Arab culture.

The Islamization of the Sudan, which was a result of cultural, political, socio-economic and military factors, was a gradual and continuing process. However, it may be divided roughly into two broad stages: superficial or primary Islamization which preceded the beginning of the sixteenth century, and real or secondary Islamization which began with the emergence of the Funj kingdom in about 1504.

During the first stage Islam was spread in two main ways; the first was through cultural influences coming in as a result of peaceful trade between Muslims and the local population. This phenomenon of combining trade with proselytization is a common theme in Islamic history. But the role of traders in Nubia was strengthened by the *Baqṭ* treaty resulting from the military campaign of the Arab governor of Upper Egypt, <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh b. Sa<sup>c</sup>d b. Abī Sarh, against Nubia in 651-2. The treaty also paved the way for Arab penetration in Nubia.<sup>58</sup>

By the middle of the tenth century the Rabī'a Arabs had already settled among the local people of eastern Sudan, the Beja. Eventually, intermarriage resulted in the emergence of the Arabized Nubian Kingdom of the Banū'l-Kanz near Aswan, which extended its authority over the northern parts of Sudanese Nubia. The chief of the Banū'l-Kanz was rewarded by the Fātimids, the rulers of Egypt, with the title of *Kanz al-Dawla* ("The treasure of the state") for his help in arresting an Arab rebel.<sup>59</sup>

55 Adams (1977), 443.

56 P.L. Shinnie, "The culture of medieval Nubia and its impact on Africa", in *Sudan in Africa*, ed. Hasan, Khartoum 1971, 42-50.

57 Yūsuf Fadl Hasan, *The Arabs and the Sudan*, Edinburgh 1967, 8.

58 *Ibid.*, 20-4.

59 *Ibid.*, 59.

The second wave of Islamization was due to the influx of Arab nomads, who had already been settled in Upper Egypt, during the period from the early fourteenth to the end of the fifteenth centuries, a period known as the Dark Ages of Sudanese history. The Nubian Kingdom of Maqurra was unable to withstand the continuous waves of Arab tribes. They thus tried to cultivate peaceful relations with them and allowed them to settle.

This influx from Upper Egypt was speeded up by the hostile policies of the successive rulers of Egypt, the Fāṭimids, Ayyūbids and Mamluks, towards the nomads. By contrast the Fāṭimids and Ayyūbids were on good terms with the Nubians, a policy that was to change drastically under the Mamluks (1250-1517). The latter set out first to interfere politically in Nubia and then to undertake military conquest.<sup>60</sup> This change in policy, together with a process of intermarriage and assimilation between Arabs and Nubians, resulted in the disintegration of Christian Nubia.<sup>61</sup> Ibn Khaldūn explains this process of disintegration paradigmatically:

Thus it was that their kingdom fell to pieces, for it passed to the sons of the Juhayna from their Nubian mothers ...<sup>62</sup>

With the fall of Christian Nubia, a powerful barrier in the way of the Arab tribes disappeared. Consequently new waves came to the Sudan; most were nomads driven by the search for pastures.<sup>63</sup> In short, regardless of the motives of these imperfectly Islamized nomads, they were initially responsible for the Islamization and Arabization of the Sudan.<sup>64</sup>

### *The First Holy Men*

The initial spread of Islamic teaching owed its impetus to holy men, often also adherents of Sufi orders, who came from the Islamic heartlands of Egypt, the Hijāz, the Yemen and, at a later stage, Morocco.

60 *Ibid.*, 47, 90-123.

61 Adams (1977), 525.

62 ʻAbd al-Rahmān b. Khaldūn, *al-ʻIbar wa-dīwān al-mubtadā wa’l-khabar*, Beirut 1958, v, 922-3.

63 B. Lewis, *The Arabs in History*, London 1960, 23.

64 Hasan (1967), 177.

Most of these holy men were to come after the rise of the Funj kingdom in about 1504.

The main difficulty in the study of the pre-Funj period is the lack of written sources. Oral traditions, however, mention the arrival of two holy men in the Sudan during the period from the early fourteenth to the beginning of the sixteenth centuries. The first was Ghulām Allāh b. ʻĀbid; his father came from the Yemen and he himself moved south with his sons, possibly in the second half of the fourteenth century, to Dongola, which he found:

In extreme perplexity and confusion for lack of learned men. When he settled there he built the mosques and taught the Qurān and religious sciences ...<sup>65</sup>

Ghulām Allāh is described as a ʻālim, that is a scholar primarily concerned with the Sharia, as well as the possessor of *baraka*.<sup>66</sup> His possession of *baraka* may, perhaps, be attributed to his claim to descend from the Prophet.

The second learned man was Ḥamad Abū Dunāna, who also claimed to descend from the Prophet. Abū Dunāna, unlike Ghulām Allāh, was primarily a Sufi who is said to have propagated the Shādhiliyya order in the Sudan.

The settlement of the Arabs and their intermarriage with the indigenous peoples led to the emergence of a quasi-tribal group known as the Jaʻaliyyūn inhabiting the region between the confluence of the Atbara and Sabalūqa Gorge. The territory further south around the confluence of the Blue and the White Niles was under the control of the ʻAbdallāb, who were themselves soon to be subjected to a new power, the Funj.

The Funj kingdom, also known as the Sinnār Sultanate after its capital Sinnār, was established by its first ruler, ʻAmāra Dunqas. The Funj were at some stage formally converted to Islam. Although, as elsewhere in the Sudanic belt, African rituals, especially at the installation of a new sultan, were maintained.<sup>67</sup> The Funj rulers, however, welcomed ʻulamā' and Sufi teachers to their country. These holy men were usually granted

65 Holt (1973b), 89; see also MacMichael (1922), ii, 35.

66 Holt (1973b), 89-90 and 122.

67 P.M. Holt, "Islamization of the Sudan", in M. Brett, ed., *Northern Africa: Islam and Modernization*, London 1973a, 15; see also M. Hiskett, "The Development of Islam in Hausaland", in *ibid.*, 59.

land and exemption from taxes and dues. The early Funj period saw a great increase in the number of these religious figures.<sup>68</sup>

When the Funj came to power in about 1504, there flourished in these lands neither schools of learning nor of the Quran; it is said that a man might divorce his wife and she be married by another the same day without any period of probation [*‘idda*], until *shaykh* Maḥmūd al-‘Arakī came from Egypt and taught the people to observe the laws of *‘idda*. He lived in the White Nile area where he built a *qaṣr* [lit. palace; stronghold] known now as Maḥmūd’s *qaṣr*. In the second half of the tenth [sixteenth AD.] century A.H. Sultan ‘Amāra Abū Sikaykīn [965/1557-976/1568-9] appointed *shaykh* ‘Ajīb al-Mānjilūk. Early in his rule, *shaykh* Ibrāhīm al-Būlād came from Egypt to the Shāyqiyya region where he taught *Khalīl* [i.e. the *Mukhtasar* of *Khalīl* b. Ishāq] and the *Risāla* [the *Risāla* of Ibn Abī Zayd al-Qayrawānī], from where knowledge of *fiqh* [jurisprudence] spread to the Gezira. Then, after a short time, *shaykh* Tāj al-Dīn al-Bahārī came from Baghdad and introduced the path of the Sufis [i.e. the Qādiriyya] into the Funj country.<sup>69</sup>

This picture of the state of Islam in the pre-Funj period is, however, disputed by the author of the Funj Chronicle on the grounds that several schools flourished in the pre-Funj period in, for example, Ḥalfāyat al-Mulūk and al-Ṣabābī, in the present-day area of Khartoum North. He adds that the author of the *Tabaqāt* must have meant the White Nile area in the central Sudan.<sup>70</sup>

The most eminent religious teachers in the Shāyqiyya region during the second half of the sixteenth century were the *Awlād Jābir*, the “sons of Jābir”, the descendants of the Ghulām Allāh b. ‘Ābid referred to above. Their respective qualities were described thus:

The four sons of Jābir were like the four elements; each one had his own virtue. The most learned of them was Ibrāhīm, the most worthy ‘Abd al-Rahmān, the most pious ‘Abd al-Rahīm, and their sister, Fāṭima, was their equal in learning and faith.<sup>71</sup>

The *Awlād Jābir*’s fame in the field of Islamic learning was due mainly to Ibrāhīm al-Būlād.<sup>72</sup> He was born on the island of Turunj near

68 *Makḥūṭa Kātib al-Shūna*, ed. al-Shāṭir Buṣaylī ‘Abd al-Jalīl, Cairo 1963, 4-6; Muṣṭafā Muṣṭad, “The Downfall of the Christian Nubian Kingdoms”, *SNR*, xl, 1959, 124-7.

69 Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 41.

70 *Makḥūṭa*, 124.

71 Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 47.

72 *Ibid.*

the present town of Karīma in the Shāyqiyya area and went to Cairo, where he studied law and grammar under a Mālikī jurist, Muḥammad al-Banūfārī (d. between 967/1559-60 and 1000/1591-2). He returned to his homeland in about 1570 and established a school at Turunj where he taught two standard textbooks of Mālikī law, the *Mukhtaṣar* of Khalīl b. Ishāq (known simply in the Sudan as *Khalīl*) and the *Risāla* of Ibn Abī Zayd al-Qayrawānī. Ibrāhīm was, according to Ibn Ḥayf Allāh, the first to teach *Khalīl* in Funj territory. He taught for only seven years, but nevertheless had numerous pupils.

The school continued under Ibrāhīm's brother, ʻAbd al-Rahmān,<sup>73</sup> who studied under Ibrāhīm and under al-Banūfārī in Egypt. He established two other mosque-schools in the Shāyqiyya region, at Kūrtū and al-Dufār, and divided the year among the three of them. ʻAbd al-Rahmān was the first in his family to combine *ʻilm* with Sufism. The two sides of his teaching are shown in that he wrote both a treatise on judicial opinions and rulings (*risāla fī l-fatāwī wa l-ahkām*) and a work on Sufism (*murshid al-murīdīn fī ʻilm al-taṣawwuf*).<sup>74</sup> After ʻAbd al-Rahmān's death, his schools passed to his third brother, Ismāʻīl, who had studied under both ʻAbd al-Rahmān and al-Banūfārī.<sup>75</sup>

The fourth son of Jābir, ʻAbd al-Rahīm, seems to have taken no part in the activities of his brothers.<sup>76</sup> Upon Ismāʻīl's death, his position passed to his nephew, Idrīs b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān. Idrīs, who was a famous scholar, consolidated his ties with the Shāyqiyya ruling class by marrying the queen of the Kingdom of Kajabī and moving his school to her residence. This, however, allegedly led to the school's decline since his students, who feared the corruption of their religion by the queen's beautiful serving women, abandoned him for the schools of ʻAbd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū and shaykh Ṣughayrūn.<sup>77</sup> After Idrīs, the importance of the male line of Jābir declined. Later generations descended through his daughter Fāṭima who married Sirhān b. Muḥammad b. Sirhān, known as Sirhān al-ʻUdī.<sup>78</sup>

The early phase of effective Islamization was dominated by foreign Sufi and other scholars who came from the old established Muslim

73 *Ibid.*, 252.

74 *Ibid.*

75 *Ibid.*, 47.

76 Holt (1973b), 92.

77 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 48-9.

78 *Ibid.*, 48.

countries. However, Sudanese who had studied abroad, mainly in the Hijāz and at al-Azhar, then began to dominate the scene. Among these, in addition to the Awlād Jābir, was ʻAbd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū, founder of the Ḥamadtūiyāb of Nūrī. He studied under Ismāʻil w. Jābir and then travelled with Șughayrūn to Cairo, where they were both taught by al-Banūfārī. Having completed their studies, they returned to the Sudan where ʻAbd al-Rahmān's fame as a jurist and *muftī* began to grow.<sup>79</sup> ʻAbd al-Rahmān mastered not only the Mālikī but also the Shāfiʻī *madhhab*, which he studied with Muḥammad b. ʻAlī Qaram al-Miṣrī, probably in Berber.<sup>80</sup>

ʻAbd al-Rahmān had three wives; the first was the mother of his sons Madanī al-Nāṭiq and al-Aṣar; the second, Umm Jiddayn, was the mother of Muḥammad and another Madanī (their descendants are known as the Awlād Umm Jidayn). The third wife was the mother of Mālik, who became influential in the Zawara area of the Manāṣir region, and Abū Dīqin.<sup>81</sup>

The schools of the Ḥamadtūiyāb in Nūrī, Umm Bakōl and al-Zawara attracted students from various parts of the Sudan. One of ʻAbd al-Rahmān's b. Ḥamadtū's sons, al-Aṣar, promised victory to ʻUthmān w. Ḥamad, a leader of the Shāyqiyya in the mid or late seventeenth century, in his revolt against the Funj. The fulfilment of al-Aṣar's prophecy and the liberation of the Shāyqiyya from the ʻAbdallāb strengthened his links with the Shāyqiyya leadership.<sup>82</sup>

The flourishing of the Shāyqiyya schools in the early Funj period may be attributed to the unity and political stability imposed by the early rulers of the Funj Sultanate. These schools, however, began to decline and to be overshadowed by schools in other areas such as Muqrāt, Berber, al-Dāmar, and al-Qōz and al-Fijayja south of Shendi.<sup>83</sup> But our

79 *Ibid.*, 257.

80 A manuscript of a work by al-Miṣrī on Shāfiʻī *fiqh* in the possession of the present shaykh of the Tijāniyya in the Sudan has recently been photographed by the NRO.

81 *Ibid.*

82 *Ibid.*, 228. See also O'Fahey and Spaulding (1974), 66-7.

83 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 358-9 for the schools of al-Ghubush in Berber; see also Burckhardt (1822), 209.

evidence is too scanty to trace the development of the schools of the Shāyqiyya region in any great detail.<sup>84</sup>

When the Arabs migrated to the Sudan, they brought with them the simple tenets of the Mālikī *madhhab* which was predominant in Upper Egypt.<sup>85</sup> With the emergence of the Funj Sultanate, a number of Egyptian scholars were attracted to the Sudan. They included a Mālikī teacher, Muḥammad al-Qināwī, who came in the first half of the sixteenth century.<sup>86</sup> The latter half of the same century also saw the introduction of the Shāfi‘ī *madhhab* by another Egyptian jurist, Muḥammad b. ‘Alī Qaram, referred to above; he taught a number of Sudanese, including ‘Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū, ‘Abd Allāh al-‘Arakī and *qādī* Dushayn. The latter two functioned as judges in the Funj state.<sup>87</sup> However, the Mālikī *madhhab* became predominant in the Shāyqiyya region and in the Sudan generally.

84 A real decline appears to have occurred immediately after the Turco-Egyptian invasion; G.A. Hoskins, *Travels in Ethiopia*, London 1835, 169, who visited the area in 1835 states, “But his account [i.e. Burckhardt (1822), 70, of the Shāyqiyya schools and learning] would scarcely be applicable to the Shaygeea of the present-day”.

85 P.M. Holt, *A Modern History of the Sudan*, 2nd edn, London 1963, 220-21, n. 17, and Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan (1971a), “External Islamic influences and the progress of Islamization in the Eastern Sudan between the fifteenth and the nineteenth centuries”, in Ḥasan, *Sudan in Africa*, Khartoum 1971, 78.

86 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 101-2.

87 *Ibid.*, 213 and 354-5.

## 2

# THE ANCIENT BROTHERHOODS: THE QĀDIRIYYA AND THE SHĀDHILIYYA

### *Introduction*

The previous chapter has established that the first phase of Islam in the Shāyqiyya region was dominated by the activities of individual *fuqarā'*. However, a gradual transition from what may be described as a "Sudanic belt" pattern of individualistic *fuqarā'* to a Middle Eastern and North African one with organized Sufi brotherhoods was beginning to take place.

The coming of the *ṭariqas* into the Shāyqiyya region may conveniently be divided into two stages. The first, which may be dated from about the mid-seventeenth century, began with the attachment of some *fuqarā'* to the decentralized "ancient" *ṭariqas*, the Qādiriyya and Shādhiliyya. The second stage saw the recruitment of a much greater number into the centralized "reformist" *ṭariqas* founded in the early nineteenth century.

Since the internal organization of the *ṭariqas* is discussed in Chapter Seven, it is sufficient here to note that the "ancient" *ṭariqas* were autonomous branches, each with its independent shaykh and its particular chain of spiritual authority, *silsila*. The meeting ground for these sometimes rival branches was the common respect they paid to the founder of the order. As is shown in Chapter Six, none of these geographically defined "units" seems to have established a proper hierarchy during the Funj period. By contrast, the centralized new *ṭariqas* each had a shaykh at the head of its hierarchy who enjoyed absolute authority and who was assisted by a number of *khulafā'*, "deputies", and local representatives. And in the new *ṭariqas*, in contrast to the decentralized ones, the members shared a common devotional life.

Although the main theme of this chapter is the introduction and the spread of the ancient *ṭariqas* in the Shāyqiyya region, this requires a survey of their introduction into the Sudan.

## The Qādiriyya

*The coming of the Qādiriyya.* This ṭariqa, known also as the Jilāniyya, was the most popular and widespread ṭariqa in the Muslim world. It is named after <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir al-Jilānī, who was born in Persia in 1077 and died and was buried at Baghdad in 1166.

<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir was an <sup>c</sup>ālim before becoming a Sufi. He began his career as a Ḥanbalī jurist and preacher. Nothing is known of the reasons that led him to attach himself to the Sufi way. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir studied Sufism with Abū'l-Khayr Muḥammad b. Muslim al-Dabbās (d. 521/1131). After he had demonstrated his seriousness he received the *khirqat al-ṭaṣawwuf*, the Sufi livery or dress, which was given to him by the *qādī* Abū Sa'ad Mubārak al-Mukharrimī, the head of a Ḥanbalī school in Baghdad which <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir appears to have attended. He then began his life as a public preacher, establishing a Ḥanbalī *madrasa* or school and a Sufi *ribāṭ* or devotional centre in Baghdad. His doctrine was strictly orthodox, being based solely on the Quran and the *sunna*. Large audiences attended his lessons on Sufism, in which he repeatedly emphasized the struggle against the self, *jihād al-nafs*, and the need for submission only to God and His will. Al-Jilānī exercised great spiritual influence, being considered one of the four *qutbs* (lit. “pole”, or head of the hierarchy of saints) of the Sufis. He was also known as the *sultān al-awliyā*, “the ruler of the saints”.

Although the Qādiriyya is always traced back to <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir al-Jilānī, there is no evidence that he himself founded a ṭariqa. His sons and his numerous pupils simply called themselves Qādiriyya in his memory.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir's teachings were propagated by his pupils in various parts of the Muslim world. It was through one of these missionaries, Tāj al-Dīn al-Bahārī, that the Qādiriyya came to the Sudan in the mid-sixteenth century. The *Ṭabaqāt* asserts that Tāj al-Dīn was a *khalīfa* of <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir al-Jilānī but does not give his *sanad*, or chain of spiritual authority.<sup>2</sup> While on the pilgrimage in Mecca, al-Bahārī was invited to

1 Trimingham (1971), 42 n. 3 and p. 43.

2 The primary references to al-Bahārī are Ibn Ḥayyān (1974), 4, 109-10 and 128-9, and *Makhtūṭa*, 5. Secondary references include Trimingham (1949), 115; Ḥasan Muḥammad al-Fātiḥ Qarīb Allāh, “al-Ṭaṣawwuf fī-Sūdān”

the Sudan by Dā'ūd b. 'Abd al-Jalīl, a Sudanese merchant from Arbajī. He married into the local people and resided with his host at Wādī Sha'īr in the Gezira for seven years. There is a popular story that describes how he chose those who were worthy of initiation. He hid some rams in a storeroom and then told those present that he was going to initiate, guide and slaughter them; they would thus die in the faith. The people were so frightened that all fled, except three who volunteered to be initiated. These were Muḥammad al-Hamīm, Bān al-Naqā al-Ḍarīr and 'Ajīb al-Manjilūk, the 'Abdallāb ruler. Al-Bahārī took them one by one into the storeroom, initiated them and slaughtered the rams. When those waiting saw the blood flowing from the storeroom, they thought he had indeed slaughtered his initiates.<sup>3</sup>

Al-Bahārī is said to have travelled to Taqalī in southern Kordofan where he initiated 'Abd Allāh al-Hammāl, the grandfather of Shaykh Hamad al-Nahlān b. Muḥammad al-Bidayrī, known as Wad al-Turābī. The *Tabaqāt* records that al-Bahārī said that he came from Baghdad because of Muḥammad al-Hamīm, to whom he taught the names and attributes of God, various spiritual exercises and how to enter into retreat.<sup>4</sup>

It was perhaps the severe requirements which al-Bahārī laid down and the harsh methods which he adopted in recruiting his followers that prevented him from winning a greater number of adherents. Thus the Qādirī branch of Muḥammad al-Hamīm, al-Bahārī's *khalīfa*, was not as popular as the other Qādirī branches, especially the one which was founded by 'Abd Allāh al-'Arakī.<sup>5</sup>

*The 'Arakiyyūn Tradition.* Al-Bahārī tried unsuccessfully to initiate 'Abd Allāh b. Daf' Allāh al-'Arakī, later appointed as *qādī* at the court of Shaykh 'Ajīb al-Manjilūk. He was a member of the 'Arakiyyūn holy family of al-Hillāliyya who later moved to Abū Ḥarāz in the Gezira. His father was Daf' Allāh b. Muqbil and his mother was Hadiyya bt. 'Āṭif,

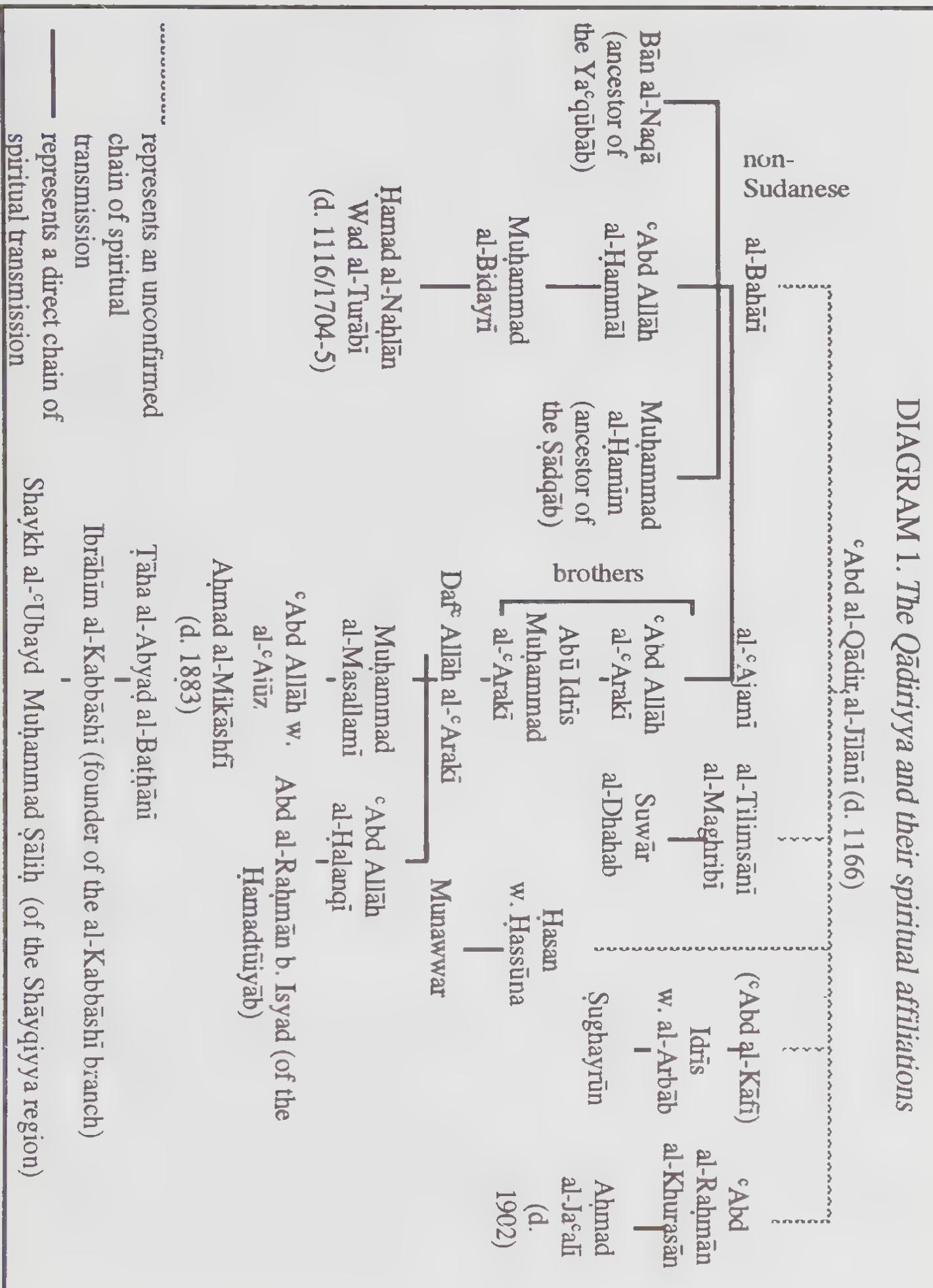
*ilā nihāyat 'aṣr al-Funj*", MA thesis, University of Khartoum 1965, 94; Ḥasan (1967), 180 and *idem* (1971a), 79, and Holt and Daly (1979), 34.

3 Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 109-10, 128, and 317-8.

4 *Ibid.*, 129. Trimingham (1949), 219, states that al-Bahārī came to the Sudan for the sake of 'Abd Allāh al-Hammāl. Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan, the editor of the *Tabaqāt* of Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), however, says that al-Bahārī came because of al-Hamīm. This disagreement is caused by the ambiguity of the language of the *Tabaqāt*.

5 On the Qādiriyya branches, see Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 131.

## DIAGRAM 1. *The Qadriyya and their spiritual affiliations*



from the Jimīcāb sub-section of the Ja‘aliyyūn. He was born at Abyad Dīrī, memorized the Quran with his father, and then travelled with ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Nuwayrī to the Shāyqiyya region where they spent seven years studying with ‘Abd al-Rahmān w. Jābir. It is said that al-‘Arakī was taught the *ism Allāh al-a‘zam*, “the most exalted name of God”, by his teacher, who also gave him four pupils to study under him.<sup>6</sup> Al-‘Arakī refused to join the Qādiriyya on the grounds that he did not wish to involve himself in anything other than the *‘ilm* that he had learnt.<sup>7</sup>

Al-‘Arakī later regretted his decision when he realized that his position as an *‘ālim* had been overshadowed by the Sufi *khalīfas* of al-Bahārī, who began to enjoy great social status and influence among both the Funj and the Arabs. He thus decided to go to Mecca to meet al-Bahārī; learning that the latter had died, he agreed to be initiated by his successor, Ḥabīb Allāh al-‘Ajamī.<sup>8</sup>

‘Abd Allāh al-‘Arakī was a frequent visitor to the Ḥijāz, making the pilgrimage twenty-four times. He was renowned for his knowledge even in the Ḥijāz, where he taught at the *maqām* (a small building near the Ka‘bah used for teaching) of the *imām* Mālik. In the Sudan, al-‘Arakī used the village of Abū Ḥarāz in the Gezira as the seat for his Qādirī branch and initiated a great number of followers. His branch was apparently more active than those of al-Bahārī’s direct pupils.<sup>9</sup>

The decentralized nature of the Qādiriyya may be seen in the fact that almost all of the original *khalīfas* founded independent holy dynasties that have survived until the present day.<sup>10</sup>

6 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 206 and 255-6. The *ism Allāh al-a‘zam* is generally considered to be known only to the Prophets. But such knowledge was also claimed by some Sufis.

7 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 253.

8 *Ibid.*, 254.

9 *Ibid.*, and N. McHugh, “Holymen of the Blue Nile: Religious leadership and the genes of an Arab Islamic society in the Nilotic Sudan, 1500-1850,” Ph.D. thesis, Northwestern University 1986 (publication forthcoming).

10 On these branches, see Trimingham (1949), 219, ‘Abd al-Qādir Maḥmūd, *al-Ṭawā’if al-ṣūfiyya fīl-Sūdān. Ansābuhum wa-uṣūl turāthihim wa-falsafatihim*, Khartoum 1971, 6; Holt (1973b), 121-2; Khadiga Karrar Osman, “Aspects of Sufism in the Sudan”, MA thesis, University of Durham 1975, 67 and Abdullahi Mohamed Osman, “The Mikashfiyya: a study of a Religious Ṭarīqa in the Sudan”, MSc. thesis, University of Khartoum 1978, 6-8.

*The Qādiriyya in the Shāyqiyya region.* The Shāyqiyya region was influenced by the teachings of al-<sup>c</sup>Arakī through al-Fijayja near Shendi at an early stage and at al-Kabbāshī village, north of Khartoum North, later. The teachings of al-<sup>c</sup>Arakī (a middle way between mysticism and *‘ilm*) appealed to a number of *fuqarā’* of the Shāyqiyya area.<sup>11</sup>

The Shāyqiyya region was also influenced by several Qādiriyya branches which emerged and flourished independently of al-Bahārī and his *khalifas*. The first of these was founded in Dongola during the seventeenth century by Muḥammad b. <sup>c</sup>Īsā b. Ṣalīḥ, known as *suwār al-dhahab* (lit., “the bracelet of gold”). Muḥammad came from the Bidayriyya and studied the *Mukhtaṣar* of Khalil b. Ishāq and part of the *Risāla* of al-Qayrawānī under his father. After the latter’s death he continued his studies under Muḥammad b. <sup>c</sup>Alī Qaram al-Miṣrī al-Shāfi‘ī, who had settled in Berber in the early period of the Funj rule. It is also said he was initiated by him into Sufism.<sup>12</sup> Muḥammad *Suwār al-Dhahab* also joined the “path” of the Sufis and learnt theology and the sciences of the Quran at the hands of a teacher known only as al-Tilimsānī al-Maghribī.<sup>13</sup> The *Tabaqāt* does not mention any specific *ṭariqa* with reference to either of his teachers, but some scholars suggest that al-Tilimsānī initiated him into the Qādiriyya.<sup>14</sup>

*Suwār al-Dhahab*’s centre of learning in Dongola played a considerable role in spreading the Qādiriyya throughout the area.<sup>15</sup> The *Suwār al-Dhahab* family was to become important in the Shāyqiyya region when it transferred its allegiance from the Qādiriyya to the Khatmiyya in the first half of the nineteenth century.

Another independent Qādirī branch was founded by Idrīs b. Muḥammad al-Arbāb, of Mahāsī origin. He was born, died and was buried at al-<sup>c</sup>Aylafūn, southeast of Khartoum, where his tomb is still a place of pilgrimage. Idrīs studied in two different religious schools, first at al-Ṣabābī (in Khartoum North) where he studied under Ḥamad w. Zarrūq, whom he greatly impressed; he was later taught by al-

11 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 253.

12 *Ibid.*, 348 and 354-5.

13 *Ibid.*, 42; see also MacMichael (1922), ii, 220.

14 R. Hill, *A Biographical Dictionary of the Sudan*, 2nd edn, London 1967, 259; Ḥasan (1971a), 80; Holt and Daly (1979), 34, and Abū Salīm, in NRO, 7/1/10 *Majmū‘at Abī Salīm*, p. 2.

15 *Ibid.*

Bandārī at Ḥalfāyat al-Mulūk.<sup>16</sup> Gradually, Idrīs' reputation began to grow. He is said to have cured the mother of Sultan ʻAmāra b. Nāyil, known as Abū Sikaykīn (965/1557-8 to 976/1568-9), after the famous shaykh Bān al-Naqā al-Ḍarīr had failed to do so. This incident undoubtedly enhanced his fame as a holy man.<sup>17</sup>

The *Tabaqāt* gives several versions as to the source of Idrīs' spiritual authority and knowledge; the most exalted are that it came directly from God, *al-ʻilm al-rabbānī*,<sup>18</sup> that it was revealed to him by the Prophet,<sup>19</sup> or that a mysterious stranger from the West (*al-maghrib*), ʻAbd al-Kāfi, came to him *bi'l-khaṭwa*, "by the step", and initiated him.<sup>20</sup> According to Khōjalī b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān, Idrīs was "The first to light the fire of ʻAbd al-Qādir al-Jīlānī" in the Sudan, i.e. propagate the Qādiriyya.<sup>21</sup>

Idrīs possessed considerable political influence and throughout his life was consulted by various Funj sultans and ʻAbdallāb rulers.<sup>22</sup> He was famous for his role as a mediator in a number of political disputes; for example, he mediated between the Funj Sultan, ʻAdlān b. Ūnsā (deposed 1020/1611-2), and the sons of ʻAjīb the Great after the latter's defeat by the Funj in 1607-8 at Karkōj. ʻAjīb's sons fled and took refuge in Dongola and it was Shaykh Idrīs who persuaded them to come back.<sup>23</sup> This successful mediation may be attributed to the learning and charisma of Shaykh Idrīs as well as to the attachment of members of the Funj ruling class to his branch of the Qādiriyya; one example was Sultan Bādī b. Rubāṭ, who died in 1680.<sup>24</sup>

16 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 51; see also Trimingham (1949), 220.

17 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 41 and 51.

18 *Ibid.*, 52.

19 *Ibid.*

20 *Ibid.*, 42; see n. 20, where the editor interprets *al-khaṭwa* as the ability of a holy man to cover vast distances in the twinkling of an eye. Trimingham (1949), 220, simply translates it as "saintship".

21 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 57; see also Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan, *Muqaddima fī ta'rīkh al-mamālik al-Islāmiyya fī'l-Sūdān al-sharqī 1450-1821*, Cairo 1971b, 133 and *idem*, *Dirāsāt fī ta'rīkh al-Sūdān*, vol. i, Khartoum 1975, 76.

22 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 51-2 and 61; see also H.C. Jackson, "The Mahas of 'Eilafun", *SNR*, 1919, ii, 288, and R.A. Lobban, "Social Networks in the Urban Sudan", Ph.D. thesis, Northwestern University 1973, 43.

23 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 65; see also O'Fahey and Spaulding (1974), 37-8.

24 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 65.

There was another Qādīrī centre which influenced the whole Dongola Reach, that of Shaykh Ḥasan w. Ḥassūna (d. 1975/1664-5), the grandson of a Maghribī immigrant, probably from Tunisia.<sup>25</sup> Ḥasan established the village known as Wad Ḥassūna, twenty-seven miles west of Abū Dilayq, from which he propagated his own branch of the Qādīrīyya.<sup>26</sup> Like Idrīs w. al-Arbāb, Ḥasan was regarded as a saint without a shaykhly intermediary. His sainthood was manifested shortly after that of Shaykh Idrīs. The *Tabaqāt* reports that he was instructed in the Qādīrīyya by the Prophet himself.<sup>27</sup>

Ḥasan w. Ḥassūna initiated a number of *fuqarā'* from Dongola, among them Munawwar, who was a holy man of Mirayfābī origin. His father, Idrīs b. Muḥammad nicknamed Mirayf, is said to have settled in the sixteenth century at Karabah village, west of Arqū. He married a local woman by whom he had Munawwar. Munawwar's mother was famous for her learning and piety; she died and was buried at Karabah, where a domed tomb (*qubba*) was erected over her grave.<sup>28</sup> Munawwar was not only a Sufi but also an *‘ālim* who studied in the *masīd* (religious school) of Wad ʻIsā on the Blue Nile.<sup>29</sup> After returning home, he established his own centre on Bilnārtī Island near Arqū, taught many persons *‘ilm* and initiated them into the Qādīrīyya.<sup>30</sup>

The *Tabaqāt* shows that the *tariqas*, especially the Qādīrīyya, began to gain ground in the Shāyqiyya region even among the *‘ulamā’*. For example, Muḥammad b. Sirhān al-‘Awī, commonly known by his nickname Șughayrūn, the eldest son of Fāṭima bt. Jābir, followed the Qādīrī Shaykh Idrīs w. al-Arbāb. Șughayrūn, the most famous teacher in the generation that followed his maternal uncles, the *Awlād Jābir*,

25 See *ibid.*, 65, for his biography. See also Holt (1973b), 124.

26 Ḥasan (1975), 76. Abū Dilayq, the centre of the Baṭāḥīn, lies about 90 miles east of Khartoum, halfway between the capital and the River Atbara.

27 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 42 and 135.

28 *Ibid.*, 143, and Muḥammad Sa‘īd Aḥmad ‘Abd Allāh, “*Min ta‘rīkh manṭaqā Dundulā*”, mimeograph, Khartoum 1978, 86. On the Mirayfāb, see MacMichael (1922), i, 209-11.

29 ʻIzz al-Dīn al-Amīn, *Qariyat Kutrānj wa-atharuhā al-‘ilmī fī'l-Sūdān*, Khartoum 1395/1975, 21; al-Amīn's work is a study of the *masīd* of the Āl ʻIsā at Kutrānj, halfway between al-Kāmlīn and al-‘Aylafūn on the Blue Nile. See also ‘Abd al-‘Azīz Amin ‘Abd al-Majīd, *al-Tarbiyya fī'l-Sūdān wa'l-usus al-nafsiyya wa'l-ijsimā'iyya allatī qāmat ‘alayhā min awwal al-qarn al-sādis ‘ashar ilā nihāyat al-qarn al-thāmin ‘ashar*, Cairo 1949, iii, 18-9.

30 ‘Abd Allāh (1978), 87.

was born on Turunj Island in the Shāyqiyya area. He studied the *Mukhtaṣar* with Muḥammad al-Banūfārī in Cairo, who was impressed with his learning and predicted that he would become a successful teacher.<sup>31</sup>

Upon his return, Șughayrūn, who combined “*cilm*, *cāmal* [lit. practice], *fiqh* and Sufism”, taught in the school of his maternal uncles, the Awlād Jābir. But he suffered from the envy of his maternal cousins; so at the invitation of the Funj Sultan Bādī I (1020/1611-2 to 1025/1616-7), Șughayrūn, together with his family, left the Shāyqiyya region for Dār al-Abwāb near Shendi. After hours of disagreement between his pupils as to where to settle, he was said to have been guided by al-Khaḍīr (see p. 50, n. 31) to settle in Qōz al-Muṭraq, south of Shendi, which was then an area of bush. Settling there, he made a small clearing (Sudanese Ar. *fijayja*) and prophesied that al-Fijayja would one day be the residence of the brothers of ‘Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū. Sultan Bādī I confirmed the grant of land, upon which he established his school which “succeeded that of the sons of Jābir as a principal centre of religious and legal education in the northern Funj territories”.<sup>32</sup>

Şughayrūn travelled with some of his pupils from the Dār al-Abwāb to the Gezira. They found the people divided between supporters and opponents of the teachings of Idrīs w. al-Arbāb and decided to visit him. Șughayrūn and his pupils are said to have put seventeen complicated questions on various religious matters to Idrīs, intending to test his learning. Șughayrūn and his pupils were so impressed with his answers that they decided that his learning came directly from God, from *al-lawh al-mahfūz*, that is “The Guarded Tablet” preserved in Heaven, and thus agreed to be initiated by him into the Qādiriyya.<sup>33</sup>

Şughayrūn became a Qādīrī missionary as well as a Quran and *fiqh* teacher. After his death, the school continued under his son al-Zayn, who taught there for about fifty years. At al-Zayn’s death in 1086/1675-6, his pupils were said to number about a thousand, most of whom became jurists and judges over a vast area that extended as far as Wadai (Dār Șulayḥ) in modern Chad.<sup>34</sup> Al-Zayn was succeeded by his son

31 The following is based on his biography in Ibn Ḍayf Allāh (1974), 235-8.

32 Holt (1973b), 94.

33 Ibn Ḍayf Allāh (1974), 56.

34 *Ibid.*, 74-5.

Muhammad al-Azraq, who ran the school until his death in 1108/1696-7).<sup>35</sup>

In 1107/1695 <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Isayd of the Ḥamadtūiyāb holy family, together with his maternal uncles, the Awlād Umm Jidayn, moved to al-Fijayja.<sup>36</sup> Isayd memorized the Quran under a shaykh from Arbajī and was taught the *Mukhtaṣar* by his maternal uncle, Muḥammad b. Madanī w. Umm Jidayn. He studied the rules of Quranic recitation (*tajwīd*) under <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān al-Aghbash in Berber.<sup>37</sup> It was through these links and contacts between the descendants of Șughayrūn and the Awlād Umm Jidayn section of the Ḥamadtūiyāb family that the Qādiriyya began to penetrate into the Shāyqiyya region.

An oral tradition among some of the Ḥamadtūiyāb family of Nūrī records that their ancestor <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥamadtū al-Khaṭīb, known as Abū Shawārib, was initiated into the Qādiriyya by <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Jābir.<sup>38</sup> But examining the *Tabaqāt* and other sources, one may dispute the Ḥamadtūiyāb claim on three grounds. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Jābir, although he was influenced by Sufism in general, was not associated with any particular *tariqa*.<sup>39</sup> Furthermore, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū was not taught by <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Jābir, but by his brother and successor, Ismā‘īl.<sup>40</sup> Finally, there is no record that <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū was initiated by any of the Awlād Jābir into the Qādiriyya or any other *tariqa*.<sup>41</sup>

The school of the Awlād Umm Jidayn in al-Fijayja began to flourish under Muhammad b. Madanī w. Umm Jidayn bt. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū.<sup>42</sup> His brother, Madanī, continued it after his death entrusting, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Isayd with teaching the *Mukhtaṣar*. Ibn Isayd also began to teach the Quran and a range of other subjects.

Ibn Isayd was to play an important role in propagating the Qādiriyya in the Shāyqiyya region in the eighteenth century. According to the

35 *Ibid.*, 357-8.

36 *Ibid.*, 282-5.

37 *Ibid.*, 353-4; MacMichael (1922), ii, 225.

38 Interviews 19 and 23.

39 *Ibd* Ɗayf Allāh (1974), 252. See also <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Majīd (1949), i, 66; Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 56-8, and Sirr al-Khatim <sup>c</sup>Uthmān, *Awlād Jābir*, Khartoum 1975, 16-17.

40 *Ibn* Ɗayf Allāh (1974), 47 and 257, and <sup>c</sup>Uthmān (1975), 18.

41 *Ibn* Ɗayf Allāh (1974), 257, and Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 56.

42 *Ibn* Ɗayf Allāh (1974), 353-4.

*Tabaqāt*, he travelled south to Abū Ḥarāz in the Gezira to be initiated by *al-ḥājj* <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Halanqī, from a section of the Beja people of the eastern Sudan. He was born at al-Tāka, near Kasala and memorized the Quran at Islānj Island, north of Omdurman. He studied *fiqh* and *tawḥīd* under Daf<sup>c</sup> Allāh b. Muhammad al-<sup>c</sup>Arakī, who also initiated him into the Qādiriyya and authorized him to initiate others.<sup>43</sup> Ibn Isayd returned to his home in Nūrī where he continued his career as a religious teacher and Qādirī preacher. Among those he taught were Sa<sup>c</sup>d al-Karsanī and <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Hājj al-Duwayhī, both of whom were to play important roles in the religious life of the Shāyqiyya.<sup>44</sup>

Upon Ibn Isayd's death in 1715, his Quranic school in Nūrī passed to his favourite pupil, Sa<sup>c</sup>d al-Karsanī, who was of Shāyqī origin. His reputation as a successful religious teacher, especially in the Quranic sciences and recitation, attracted pupils from Dār al-Abwāb, Dongola and the Shāyqiyya region.<sup>45</sup>

*The Kabbāshī Tradition.* One of the most important Qādirī centres to influence the Shāyqiyya region in the nineteenth century lay outside it, namely al-Kabbāshī, just north of Khartoum North. Its founder was Ibrāhīm al-Amin b. <sup>c</sup>Alī al-Kabbāshī; although known by his nickname al-Kabbāshī, he was not from the Kabābīsh people, but probably from the <sup>c</sup>Arakiyyūn holy clan of the Gezira. Ibrāhīm was probably nicknamed al-Kabbāshī because his family lived in the Gezira among a Kabābīsh clan known as al-Tamāsiḥ (lit., "the crocodiles"). Perhaps this explains his popularity among the Kabābīsh tribesmen to the present day. But like most holy men in the Sudan and elsewhere, al-Kabbāshī himself claimed Sharīfian descent.<sup>46</sup>

43 *Ibid.*, 210-12, 226, 236, 282 and 353; see also MacMichael (1922), i, 254.

44 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 224-5 and 283; MacMichael (1922), ii, 224 and 264, and interview 19.

45 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 224 and 266. An oral tradition confirms that al-Karsanī was affiliated to the Qādiriyya, probably through Ibn Isayd; interview 19.

46 Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī, *Inshiqāq al-qamar li'l-rasūl sayyid al-bashar*, ed. al-Mikāshfī Tāha al-Shaykh Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Alī, Khartoum 1971, 11; his pedigree is traced back to al-Ḥusayn b. <sup>c</sup>Alī, the grandson of the Prophet. Other sources disagree as to his "Sudanese" descent; Hill (1967), 173, calls him a Maḥasī, while al-Fakī al-Ṭāhir al-Fahlī, *Taṭrīkh wa-uṣūl al-<sup>c</sup>Arab bi'l-Sūdān*, Khartoum n.d., 106, calls him a Ja<sup>c</sup>alī.

Al-Kabbāshī was born in 1201/1786-7 in a small village called Abū Qamīṣ near al-Manāqil in the Gezira and died and was buried at al-Kabbāshī in 1286/1869-70. His mother was Umm al-Husayn bt. Muḥammad ʻAlī b. Maḥmūd, from the Nifīcāb clan of the Jaʻaliyyūn.<sup>47</sup>

Ibrāhīm studied the Quran under ʻAlī w. al-Fādnī at the village of Wad al-Fādnī, southeast of al-Ḥaṣahayṣa. He then moved to Ṭayyiba, an ʻArakiyyūn centre in the Gezira, where he perfected his knowledge of the Quran and mastered the various forms of recitation under Shaykh Kalī. He studied *fiqh*, *tawḥīd* and other Islamic sciences under Ibrāhīm b. Ahmad ʻIsā at the famous *masīd* of Wad ʻIsā at Kutrānj.<sup>48</sup> Having studied *fiqh*, al-Kabbāshī felt the need to combine it with Sufism; he was initiated into the Qādiriyya by Ṭāha al-Abyad al-Baṭḥānī.<sup>49</sup> Al-Baṭḥānī had taken the Qādiriyya from Aḥmad al-Mikāshfī (d. 1883), a holy man of the Kawāhla and a descendant of ʻAbd al-Bāqī al-Nayyal.<sup>50</sup> Al-Mikāshfī himself was initiated into the ʻArakiyyūn branch of the Qādiriyya by ʻAbd Allāh w. al-ʻAjūz,<sup>51</sup> a pupil of Muḥammad ʻAlī al-

47 Al-Kabbāshī (1971), 11 and 13. Al-Kabbāshī's mother was a cousin of the famous Mahdist *amīr*, ʻAbd al-Rahmān w. al-Nujūmī.

48 *Ibid.*, 13-4. Nothing is known of the life of shaykh Kalī.

49 *Ibid.*, 14. Little is recorded of Ṭāha al-Abyad's life; he was said to be from the Baṭḥānī, who live as nomads around Abū Dilayq, the centre of the descendants of Ḥasan w. Ḥassūna. To the Baṭḥānī also belonged Farāḥ w. Taktūk who was famous for his gift of prophecy; see Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 313; S. Hillelson, *Sudan Arabic Texts*, Cambridge 1935, 156-71, and al-Ṭayyib Muḥammad al-Ṭayyib, *Farāḥ wad Taktūk*, Khartoum 1977, 41-50.

50 Al-Mikāshfī claimed Sharifian descent. He was one of the earliest Mahdist leaders in the Gezira; see Holt (1970), 66; Hill (1967), 35 and *idem* ed., *The Sudan Memoirs of Carl Christian Giegler Pasha, 1873-83*, London 1984, 188. His grandfather, ʻAbd al-Bāqī al-Nayyal (died c. 1750) was from the Kawāhla (or Banū Kāhil), who claim descent from al-Zubayr b. al-ʻAwwām, a companion of the Prophet. The Kawāhla emigrated from Egypt during the fourteenth century, settling among the Beja; some clans later moved to the Buṭāna, Gezira and Kordofān; see Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 116; H.A. MacMichael, *The Tribes of Northein and Central Kordofan*, Cambridge 1912, 199-205, and Ḥasan (1967), 140 and 162.

51 Al-ʻAjūz was a Jaʻalī by origin. He died and was buried at Jabal Saqadī, west of Sinnār. He was a contemporary of a number of leading holy men, among them Badr al-Dīn Umm Bārak (Ibn Ḏayf Allāh [1974], 113-14); Muḥammad b. ʻAbd Allāh b. al-Ṭirayfī (*ibid.*, 337-9) and Khōjalī b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān (d. 1155/1743-4; *ibid.*, 191-202). Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 271-2, com-

Masallamī w. Abī Winaysa.<sup>52</sup> The *sanad* of this branch of the Qādiriyya (see Diagram 1) shows that Muḥammad al-Masallamī was initiated by Daf<sup>c</sup> Allāh al-<sup>c</sup>Arakī (d. 1094/1682-3), who had been initiated by his father Shaykh Abū Idrīs, the brother and student of Shaykh <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-<sup>c</sup>Arakī.<sup>53</sup>

Al-Kabbāshī established his own independent Qādiri branch (*far*) and travelled widely in the Gezira instructing people in both *fiqh* and Sufism. He is said to have reached as far north as Qarī, the former capital of the <sup>c</sup>Abdallāb, where he settled in a large area of wasteland (*ghāba*). The bush was teeming with wild animals which attacked the <sup>c</sup>Abdallāb livestock; they requested him to pray to God to drive them off. In return for his prayers, al-Kabbāshī was granted the area which came to be known as *al-Far*<sup>c</sup> (lit., “the branch”).<sup>54</sup>

The bush was cleared and the land cultivated by al-Kabbāshī and his followers. He founded a large *masīd*, which served as both a school and as the seat of his branch of the *ṭariqa*. Al-Kabbāshī's reputation for sanctity and miracle-working attracted great numbers of people; his village, which became known as al-Kabbāshī, began to expand both in size and importance.<sup>55</sup>

Shaykh al-Kabbāshī was the contemporary of a number of prominent holy men; among them were al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī, a close friend, Aḥmad al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī and al-Shaykh al-<sup>c</sup>Ubayd w. Badr. Al-Kabbāshī was openly hostile to the rule of the Turks in the Sudan (1821-85). He urged his followers to resist the Turks and not to pay the heavy taxes imposed upon them by the invaders. While on a visit to Khartoum, he upbraided the Governor, Mūsā Pasha Ḥamdī (1862-5): “Your rule is oppression and injustice.” Al-Kabbāshī's words infuriated the Pasha, who decided to imprison him. But al-Kabbāshī is said, by a *karāma*, to have caused the Pasha to faint and change his mind.<sup>56</sup>

---

ments that following the deaths of his generation of holy men the Qādiriyya began to decline.

52 Al-Masallamī studied under <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Jābir, being one of the forty students of the latter who attained the mystical rank of *qutbiyya*; see Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 79-80.

53 For the biography of Daf<sup>c</sup> Allāh b. Muḥammad al-<sup>c</sup>Arakī, see Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 206-10; for that of his father, *ibid.*, 66-70.

54 Al-Kabbāshī (1971), 14, and interview 12.

55 Al-Kabbāshī (1971), 14. After his death, the village became known as al-Qubba after his domed tomb.

56 *Ibid.*, 15-6. Al-Kabbāshī made the pilgrimage in 1283/1866-7.

Al-Kabbāshī left twenty-two sons and twenty-one daughters, one of whom married the Mahdist *amīr* ‘Abd al-Rahmān w. al-Nujūmī. All were to become devoted supporters of the Mahdist cause. His son al-Miṣbāḥ joined the Mahdist army and was killed in a battle at Jabal al-Dāyir in Kordofan in 1884. Three other sons, Muḥammad, Muḥammad Aḥmad and ‘Abd al-Rahmān, joined al-Nujūmī’s expedition to Egypt. The first died on the way to Egypt and was buried in Dongola. The others were killed with Wad al-Nujūmī in the battle of Tushkī on 3 August 1889.<sup>57</sup> The devotion of al-Kabbāshī’s family to the Mahdist cause was probably due to three reasons. First, they inherited their father’s tradition of opposition to the colonial regime. Secondly, al-Kabbāshī had through his writings played a role in preparing his followers’ minds to accept the idea of the expected Mahdī.<sup>58</sup> Finally, they were related by kin and marriage to Wad al-Nujūmī.

Al-Kabbāshī initiated a number of persons into the Qādiriyya including al-‘Ubayd Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Nāṣirābī, who spread the Qādiriyya in the Shāyqiyya region.<sup>59</sup> Shaykh al-‘Ubayd was of Shāyqī origin and was born on the island of Umm Daraq near Marawī. After he had memorized the Quran in a local *khalwa*, he decided to travel, earning his living by building mud houses in the central Sudan. On his way to the Gezira, he heard of the fame of Shaykh al-Kabbāshī and decided to settle at his village. Al-‘Ubayd studied under al-Kabbāshī, who initiated him into the Qādiriyya. He became known as one of the sixteen superior followers of al-Kabbāshī called *abkār al-Kabbāshī*.<sup>60</sup>

Shaykh al-‘Ubayd is said to have wandered over the open country of the Gezira (*sāḥa fi’l-kalā’*) for about four years before settling at al-Nūba village between Khartoum and Madanī, where he married and founded a *khalwa*. Another tradition says that he left al-Nūba village for Umm Daraq, his birthplace, where he settled, married for the second time and fathered a son, named Ḥabīb Allāh. It was from Umm Daraq that the Kabbāshī-‘Arakī offshoot of the Qādiriyya began to infiltrate into the Shāyqiyya region. His followers were found mainly, apart from Umm Daraq, in Jilās, in al-Bār on the west bank of the Nile just opposite to Kurtī, and in al-Shaqā’iq near Jabal al-Barkal.

57 *Ibid.*, 15-6.

58 One of his works now with his family is, *al-Mahdī al-muntazar*.

59 The following is based on interview 20 and ‘Abd Allāh al-Bashīr, ed., *Dīwān al-shā’ir al-ṣūfī*, *Wad Nafīsa*, Khartoum 1976, 3-8.

60 The term *abkār* was later used by the Mahdi for his earliest followers: Holt (1970), 133.

Al-<sup>c</sup>Ubayd remained loyal to his teacher, whom he used to visit frequently; he visited his shaykh before the latter's departure for the Hijāz in 1283/1866-7 and after his return, and he was present at his death in 1286/1869-70. Al-<sup>c</sup>Ubayd's loyalty to al-Kabbāshī's family continued into the next generation, to Shaykh Tāha, son and successor of Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī. Al-<sup>c</sup>Ubayd continued his practice of visiting al-Kabbāshī for the various Islamic festivals. It was during one of these visits that he died early in the twentieth century and was buried beside his master's tomb.

*The Tradition of Aḥmad al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī.* Another Qādirī centre which influenced the Shāyqiyya area was Kadabās, on the west bank of the Nile near Berber. This centre was established by Shaykh Aḥmad al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī, a holy man from the Ḥasaballāb section of the Sirayhāb branch of the Ja<sup>c</sup>aliyyūn.<sup>61</sup> Aḥmad al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī was born at al-Mikhayrif (the present-day Berber) in 1818. As a youth, he travelled to Nūrī where he memorized the Quran under Muḥammad Aḥmad al-Kārūrī of the Kawārīr holy family and was taught *cilm* and the *Mukhtaṣar* by Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-<sup>c</sup>Irāqī.

After he had finished his studies in the Shāyqiyya region, Aḥmad returned to Berber and lived there for some years mainly as a trader. Upon his father's death, he moved from Berber to the west bank of the Nile where he established the village of Kadabās. He was said to have made the minor pilgrimage (Ar. *cumra*) to Mecca, during which he was ordered by the "Prophet" al-Khadir in a vision to detach himself from worldly matters (*al-umūr al-dunyāwiyya*) and devote his time to the worship of God. On his return he entered a retreat (*khalwa*) for seven years in a grotto (*ghār*) which he built for that purpose at Kadabās.

When he emerged from his retreat, he is said to have written to some of the prominent holy men of his day, al-Ḥasan al-Mirghānī, al-Shaykh al-<sup>c</sup>Ubayd w. Badr and Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī, asking them to initiate him into their respective *ṭarīqās*. They are alleged to have replied that they were not authorized to initiate him and that the one who was would come to al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī in his home area. Soon afterwards, al-

61 On al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī, see *Manāqib al-shaykh Aḥmad al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī*, ms in the possession of his family at Kadabās, and *Sudanow* (March 1982). See also al-Fahī (n.d.), 62, and MacMichael (1922), i, 200 and ii, 340 (on the Sirayhāb). Al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī's origin, like that of the Ya<sup>c</sup>qūbāb, can be traced back to the Ja<sup>c</sup>alī section, Umm Sālim, who became assimilated into the Shāyqiyya.

Ja<sup>c</sup>alī was recruited into the Qādiriyya by a Persian mystic, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān al-Khurāsānī, who visited Berber in about 1865-70. It was believed among the people of Berber that al-Khurāsānī was divinely guided to the Sudan to initiate al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī.<sup>62</sup> After the capture of Berber by the Mahdists in 1884, al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī was summoned to Omdurman by the Khalifa <sup>c</sup>Abdallāhi; he was kept under surveillance until 1898. Al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī then returned to his village, where he died and was buried in 1902.

The Qādīrī branch of Shaykh al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī gained many adherents throughout the Sudan, but its followers in the Shāyqiyya region were confined to the area of Amrī on the Shāyqiyya-Manāṣir border.<sup>63</sup> Al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī's teachings undoubtedly found their way into the Shāyqiyya region from his *khalīfas* at al-Zawara in the Manāṣir region. There have always been close links between the Shāyqiyya and Manāṣir; for example, in the mid-seventeenth century, Mālik b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū settled in al-Zawara and built a mosque in which he taught the *Mukthaṣar*.<sup>64</sup> Mālik married into the Manāṣir, and his descendants, who live there at the present day (1982), have maintained relations with their relatives among the Shāyqiyya.<sup>65</sup>

In the other direction, the Manāṣir were accustomed to travel through the Shāyqiyya region working as hired labourers during the date-harvesting season; some of these migrant workers probably propagated Qādiriyya teachings among the Shāyqiyya.<sup>66</sup>

## *Shādhiliyya*

*Introduction.* The Shādhiliyya, whose foundation is ascribed to the blind Shaykh Abū'l-Ḥasan al-Shādhilī (1196-1258) may be described as a Sufi affiliation rather than a formal *ṭariqa*, since al-Shādhilī did not initiate his followers into any formal set of rules or rituals.<sup>67</sup> The lack of an organized *ṭariqa* resulted in the growth of various Shādhilī-in-

62 *Manāqib ... al-Ja<sup>c</sup>alī*, and Hill (1967), 17 and 34.

63 NRO, Intel. 2/32/266.

64 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 351-2.

65 Interview 19.

66 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 352, n. 7.

67 Trimingham (1971), 48-51 and *passim*.

spired branches among his followers. This why the Shādhiliyya is found in most of the Muslim world as localized orders.<sup>68</sup>

The Shādhiliyya seems to have appeared in some parts of the Sudan before the Qādiriyya. Its diffusion in the Sudan was the work of a number of independent individuals and its teachings were to become more widespread than those of the Qādiriyya. The Shādhiliyya, like the Qādiriyya, was represented in the Sudan by a number of independent branches, each with its distinctive *sanad* and *silsila* and with little connection with each other. According to the *Tabaqāt*, it was the first *tariqa* to enter the Sudan, being introduced by a Sharīf called Ḥamad Abū Dunāna, who settled in Saqādī Gharb, west of the present-day Mahmīyya, in 1445.<sup>69</sup> Abū Dunāna is described as the son-in-law of Abū <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Muḥammad b. Sulaymān al-Jazūlī, the propagator of the Jazūliyya Shādhiliyya in Morocco.<sup>70</sup> One of Abū Dunāna's daughters is said to have married Muḥammad w. al-Arbāb and been the mother of Idrīs w. al-Arbāb; another daughter married <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Jammā<sup>c</sup> and became the mother of <sup>c</sup>Ajīb al-Mānjilūk. According to a tradition of the <sup>c</sup>Arakiyyūn clan, their ancestors, before the initiation of <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-<sup>c</sup>Arakī into the Qādiriyya, were adherents of the Shādhiliyya.<sup>71</sup>

Despite the absence of written evidence to support the traditions summarized above, it seems reasonable to suggest that before the introduction of the Qādiriyya during the sixteenth century the northern Sudan may have already been familiar with the doctrine of the Shādhiliyya. This suggestion may be supported by an earlier written tradition which asserts that Abū'l-Ḥasan al-Shādhilī died and was buried at Ḥummaythrā near <sup>c</sup>Aydhāb, about twelve miles north of Ḥalayb in the

<sup>68</sup> See further, E. Montet, "Religious orders (Muslim)", *ERE*, x, 1967, 724-5; Muḥammad b. <sup>c</sup>Ali al-Sanūsī, *al-Manhal al-rā'iq fī asānīd al-<sup>c</sup>ulūm wa-<sup>c</sup>uṣūl al-<sup>c</sup>tarā'iq*, n.p. 1968, 83; Trimingham (1971), 276-9, and Jenkins in Willis (1979), i, 44.

<sup>69</sup> Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 4 and 9; see also <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Majīd <sup>c</sup>Ābdīn, *Ta'rikh al-thaqāfa al-<sup>c</sup>arabiyya fī'l-Sūdān*, 2nd edn, Beirut 1967, 64, and Holt and Daly (1979), 28.

<sup>70</sup> Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 10; on al-Jazūlī see Khayr al-Dīn al-Ziriklī, *al-<sup>c</sup>lām. Qāmūs tarājim li-ashhar al-rijāl wa'l-nisā' min al-<sup>c</sup>arab wa'l-mustāribīn wa'l-mustashriqīn*, n.p. (Beirut) n.d. (c. 1979), vii, 22.

<sup>71</sup> Muḥammad al-<sup>c</sup>Fātiḥ Maḥmūd al-Maghribī, "Ta'rikh al-<sup>c</sup>turuq al-<sup>c</sup>Sūfiyya fī'l-Sūdān. Al-<sup>c</sup>tariqa al-Qādiriyya", *Majallat al-<sup>c</sup>taṣawwuf al-<sup>c</sup>Islāmī*, Cairo 1982, 57.

eastern Sudan.<sup>72</sup> <sup>c</sup>Aydhāb was in its heyday one of the most important ports of the Middle East; from the beginning of the twelfth century it was not only an important trading port, but also the main pilgrimage port of Africa. In part this was caused by the Crusades, which threatened the route via Sinai. Consequently, the pilgrim traffic to the Ḥijāz from Egypt and West Africa tended to shift to <sup>c</sup>Aydhāb. <sup>c</sup>Aydhāb continued to flourish until it was destroyed during the reign of the Mamluk Sultan Barsbay (1422-38) and its place taken by Sawākin.<sup>73</sup> <sup>c</sup>Aydhāb apparently served in the pilgrimage season as a centre for public lectures in religion. Abū'l-Hasan al-Shādhilī, who made the pilgrimage to Mecca annually, gave public lectures in <sup>c</sup>Aydhāb<sup>74</sup> and these, one may hypothesize, may well have been attended by pilgrims from the future Shāyqiyya region, who in their turn propagated his ideas and teachings among their kin.

*Shaykh Khōjalī*. One of the first to propagate the Shādhiliyya in the Funj period was Khōjalī <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Ibrāhīm (d. 1155/1743). He was of Maḥasī origin, his mother being Ɗawwa bt. Khōjalī and his father <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān, who was from the Kabānī Maḥas.<sup>75</sup> Khōjalī's grandfather, Ibrāhīm, had studied in the Shāyqiyya region under Ibrāhīm al-Būlād of the Awlād Jābir. Khōjalī was born on Tūtī Island at the confluence of the Blue and White Niles near Khartoum. He began his education at the Quranic school of <sup>c</sup>Ā'isha al-faqīra bt. Qaddāl and studied theology and Sufism under Arbāb b. <sup>c</sup>Alī (d. 1102/1690-1). He then moved to al-Qōz, near Shendi, to study the *Mukhtaṣar* under al-Zayn w. Șughayrūn.

72 Abū <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Muḥammad b. Baṭṭūṭa, *Tuhfat al-nuzzār fī gharā'ib al-amṣār wa-<sup>c</sup>ajā'ib al-aṣfār*, Cairo n.d., i, 30.

73 On <sup>c</sup>Aydhāb, see A. Paul, "Aidhab: A Medieval Red Sea Port", *SNR*, xxxvi/1 (1955), 64-5; Muhammad Muṣṭafā Muṣṭad, *al-Maktaba al-<sup>c</sup>Arabiyya al-Sūdāniyya*, Cairo 1972, 15-6; Bashīr Ibrāhīm Bashīr, "<sup>c</sup>Aydhāb, ḥayātuhā al-dīniyya wa'l-adabiyya", *MDS*, 1979, 53-84 and H.A.R. Gibb, "<sup>c</sup>Aydhāb", *EI*², i, 782.

74 Ibn Baṭṭūṭa (n.d.), i, 30; Jamāl al-Dīn al-Shayyāl, *A<sup>c</sup>lām al-Iskandariyya fi'l-<sup>c</sup>asr al-Islāmī*, Cairo 1965, 189; Bashīr (1979), 67.

75 What follows is based on Ibn Ḱayf Allāh (1974), 80-4, 100-1, 191 and 196, and interview 3. Khōjalī's pedigree is usually traced back to Muḥammad Kabānī, ancestor of the Maḥas, but al-Fahl (n.d.), 32, claims he was not Maḥasī but Dahmashī Bidayrī.

Shaykh Khōjalī was originally a follower of the Qādiriyya, but nothing is known of the circumstances of his initiation. It was while on the pilgrimage in Mecca that he was initiated into the Nāṣiriyya branch of the Shādhiliyya by Aḥmad al-Timbuktāwī al-Fallātī, a student of Muḥammad al-Nāṣiri al-Shādhilī.<sup>76</sup>

Upon his return from the Ḥijāz, Khōjalī began to propagate the teachings of the Nāṣiriyya Shādhiliyya. He claimed, however, that while the foundation (*asās*) of his ṭarīqa was Qādirī, its litanies (*awrād*; sing. *wird*) and rules of personal conduct (*qawā'id al-sulūk*) were Shādhili. This tactic may have been adopted by him to gain followers without incurring the hostility of the Qādiriyya. Despite this, Khōjalī apparently had several confrontations with one prominent Qādiriyya *shaykh*, Ṣalīḥ b. Bān al-Naqā al-Ḍarīr (1092/1681-2 to 1167/1753-4).<sup>77</sup> Khōjalī exercised considerable influence and succeeded, before his death in 1155/1743-4, in attracting a number of followers. But in the time of his son and his successor, Aḥmad, their branch of the Shādhiliyya lost adherents to the other ṭarīqas, namely the Sammāniyya in the Gezira and the Majdhūbiyya and Khatmiyya in the northern Sudan.<sup>78</sup>

*The Early Majdhūbiyya.* Another offshoot of the Nāṣiriyya Shādhiliyya in the Sudan is the Majdhūbiyya. This began as a local ṭarīqa founded by Ḥamad b. Muḥammad al-Majdhūb early in the eighteenth century in al-Dāmir in northern Sudan. The Majādhīb holy family claim to descend from a certain <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl, a son of <sup>c</sup>Armān, the common ancestor of the Ja<sup>c</sup>aliyyūn. <sup>c</sup>Armān fathered two sons; Shā<sup>c</sup> al-Dīn, ancestor of the Shā<sup>c</sup> al-Dīnāb, and <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl, ancestor of the <sup>c</sup>Umarāb, the Majādhīb and the Judalāb. According to oral tradition, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl himself had two sons, Ḥamad and Qindīl, the latter being the father of *al-ḥājj* <sup>c</sup>Isā who was initiated into the Qādiriyya by Tāj al-Dīn al-Bahārī.<sup>79</sup> The Majādhīb were established in al-Dāmir by Muḥammad b. <sup>c</sup>Ālī, known as *al-Majdhūb al-kabīr*, “the elder” (fl. 1720). Before his time, the family had been known as al-Qindīlāb after their ancestor,

<sup>76</sup> Ibn Ḥayyān (1974), 191; nothing further is known about al-Timbuktāwī.

<sup>77</sup> Ibn Ḥayyān (1974), 239-45. See also Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 226, and Hill (1967), 327.

<sup>78</sup> Trimingham (1949), 223.

<sup>79</sup> *Ibid.*, 224, and Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 228-9. On <sup>c</sup>Armān, see MacMichael (1922), i, 200 and ii, 85.

Qindīl b. ʻAbd al-ʻĀl. The Majādhīb family continued, up to the time of al-Majdhūb al-kabīr's death, to be loyal adherents of the Qādiriyya.

It was Hamad b. Muḥammad al-Majdhūb al-kabīr (1105/1693-4 to 1190/1776-7) who strayed from the “path” of his forefathers and joined the Shādhiliyya. Ḥamad was a Qādirī in his early life, but after studying in Nūrī with a member of the Ḥamadtūiyāb family, Madanī b. Muḥammad al-Nāṭiq, he is said to have abandoned the Qādiriyya because he felt that some of its practices were not in conformity with Islam. While on the pilgrimage, Hamad was initiated into the Nāṣiriyya Shādhiliyya by ʻAlī al-Darāwī.<sup>80</sup> Ḥamad was succeeded by his son Aḥmad Qamar al-Dīn (b. 1159/1746-7); the Majādhīb and the Nāṣiriyya-Shādhiliyya ṭariqa continued to flourish.

*Other Branches of the Shādhiliyya.* There were others who brought the Shādhiliyya to the Sudan; for example, ʻAbd Allāh al-Sharīf, who was born in Fez in Morocco. He was initiated into the Nāṣiriyya Shādhiliyya by Muḥammad (or Aḥmad) b. al-Nāṣir and came to settle in Ḥalfāyat al-Mulūk.<sup>81</sup>

There is another tradition which attributes the propagation of the Shādhiliyya in the Sudan to Abū Jārid Ādām ʻAbd Allāh, who lived in the Gezira during the sixteenth century and founded a religious group, notorious for its non-Islamic practices, generally known in the Sudan as al-Zabālʻah. It seems paradoxical to link a group with such practices to the Shādhiliyya, which is noted for its conformity to the Quran and *sunna*.<sup>82</sup>

The Shādhiliyya was not represented in the Shāyqiyya area as an organization with a body of followers. Rather it was present in the form of teachings and liturgies such as the *Dalāʻil al-khayrāt* of al-Jazūlī.<sup>83</sup>

80 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 188-9; see also Yūsuf Badrī, “A Survey of Islamic Learning in the Funj State, 1505-1820 AD.”, B.Litt. thesis, Oxford University 1970, 87, and Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Abū Salīm, “*Dawr al-ʻulamā’ fi nashr al-Islām fī'l-Sūdān*”, Conference paper, Khartoum 1982, 11.

81 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 311; see also ʻAbd al-Majīd (1949), i, 242, and Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 218-20.

82 Shuqayr (1903), i, 57; S. Hillelson, “The people of Abu Jarid”, *SNR*, i, (1918). 175-93; Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 217, and Hill (1967), 70.

83 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 10. See also, Abū Salīm in NRO, *Majmūʻat Abī Salīm*, 12; Trimingham (1949), 213; Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 241, and Hasan (1975), i, 77.

## Conclusion

Although the doctrines of the ancient *tariqas* were widespread and their shaykhs highly venerated throughout the Sudan, they failed to gain ground in the Shāyqiyya area as organized institutions. The reasons for this, and for the gradual change in the nature of Islam in the Shāyqiyya region, need to be seen within the context of the political and economic conditions in the region, as well as through the study of the doctrines of the orders.

The political instability and the continuous wars between the Shāyqiyya and their neighbours and between the various clans themselves hardly encouraged the Sufi shaykhs to visit the region to recruit followers. However, the Shāyqiyya revolt in 1659 (see p. 7) was a contributory factor in the infiltration of the Sufi *tariqas* into the region since it caused an economic decline in the area and thus led to the closing of some of the established centres of learning and the emigration of the *‘ulamā’*, thereby clearing the way for others.<sup>84</sup>

The Qādiriyya, which originated as a *sunni* or orthodox “way” of Sufism became an eclectic *tariqa* in the Sudan, accommodating a number of non-Islamic practices. Thus Muḥammad al-Hamīm, who was the first of Tāj al-Dīn al-Bahārī’s *khalīfas* in the Sudan, had studied only a few chapters of the Quran. It is also said that he married two sisters at one time, while the *qādī* who reproached him was miraculously punished. Not surprisingly, al-Hamīm is described as one of the *malāmatiyya* (the blameworthy).<sup>85</sup> This is perhaps why some *‘ulamā’* in the Shāyqiyya area and elsewhere were unwilling to join the Qādiriyya. These included *‘Abd Allāh al-‘Arakī* and Ḥamad al-Majdhūb. *‘Abd al-Qādir b. Idrīs w. al-Arbāb*, who studied under al-Asar w. *‘Abd al-*

84 Badrī, thesis (1970), 67-8, and Awad al-Sid al-Saied Muṣṭafā, “The Majdhubiyya Ṭariqa: its Doctrine, Organization and Politics”, M.Sc. thesis, University of Khartoum 1977, 122.

85 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 318-23. On the evolution of the *malāmatiyya* idea within Sufism, see T. P. Hughes, *A Dictionary of Islam*, London 1885, 620; Trimingham (1971), 13 and 264-9, and M. Winter, *Society and Religion in Early Ottoman Egypt. Studies in the Writings of ‘Abd al-Wahhāb al-Shārānī*, London 1982, 112-13.

Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū in Nūrī, tried to persuade his teacher to join the Qādiriyya. But al-Āṣar replied,

I have nothing apart from this book [i.e. the *Mukhtaṣar* of Khalīl]. I am doing what is obligatory, recommended and permissible in it, and avoiding what is reprehensible.<sup>86</sup>

A further example is ʻAbd al-Majīd al-Aghbāsh (d. 1121/1710-11), of the Bidayrī Ghubush holy clan of Berber. He studied the *Mukhtaṣar* with Shaykh al-Āṣar in Nūrī and succeeded his father as a religious teacher in Berber. He carefully prevented his numerous pupils from being initiated into the Sufi orders, reminding them that his only *ṭarīqa* was the Quran and the *ḥizb al-bahr*, “the litany of the sea”, one of Abū'l-Ḥasan al-Shādhili's litanies.<sup>87</sup>

A final example is Muḥammad w. ʻAdlān al-Shāyqī al-Hawashābī, who made the pilgrimage and settled in Medina where he studied philosophy, logic and jurisprudence with ʻAbd Allāh al-Maghribī, a Mālikī jurist. After returning to the Sudan, Muḥammad settled in Tanqāsī, seven miles north of Marawī. He was famous for his learning and was the first to teach philosophy, logic, jurisprudence, Arabic and mysticism using the three works of Muḥammad b. Yūsuf al-Sanūsī al-Tilimsānī known as *al-Sanūsiyya al-Kubrā*, *al-Wusṭā* and *al-Ṣughrā*. Previously, only the *Ṣughrā* or *Umm al-Barāhīn* was commonly used in the Funj territory. Although Muḥammad w. ʻAdlān combined *fiqh* with Sufism, he seems to have adopted a personal form of Sufism (*taṣawwuf fārdī*) for there is no evidence of his initiation into a specific Sufi *ṭarīqa*.<sup>88</sup>

86 Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 228 and 308-10.

87 *Ibid.*, 280-1.

88 *Ibid.*, 359-60. On the works of al-Sanūsī, see GAL ii, 250, S ii, 352, and Ḥasan (1975), i, 70.

# 3

## THE CENTRALIZED BROTHERHOODS: THE FIRST PHASE

### *The Wider Background*

The ancient and decentralized *ṭariqas* had had very little influence on the Shāyqiyya region; by contrast the centralized *ṭariqas* came to dominate the area during the nineteenth century.

The present chapter discusses the coming of two of these centralized new *ṭariqas*, the Sammāniyya and the Khatmiyya. Both had their origins in the heart of the Muslim world, the Hijāz. They were part of a general revivalist or reformist movement which reached its climax during the second half of the eighteenth and the early nineteenth centuries. This Islamic revival was, in part, a response to the military, political, socio-economic and religious decline within the Muslim world and, in part, to European encroachment. The early reformers, in contrast to later ones who attempted reform through borrowing from the West,<sup>1</sup> sought to reform the Muslim world from within, that is on Islamic terms. Our concern in this study is with the latter.

There were many strands within the reform movement and many common ideas. Three movements are particularly relevant to the present study: the Salafiyya or Wahhābiyya, the *ahl al-hadīth* tradition and a number of new Sufi *ṭariqas*. The first was represented in Arabia by Muḥammad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhāb (1115/1703 to 1206/1792), whose teachings were largely based on those of Aḥmad Taqī al-Dīn b. Taymiyya (661/1263-4 to 728/1328-9) who called for a “return to the sources”, *al-rujūc ilā 'l-uṣūl*, that is the Quran and the *sunna*, as the

1 See, for example, A. Hourani, *Arabic Thought in the Liberal Age, 1798-1939*, London 1967, 103-59 on Jamāl al-Dīn al-Afghānī (1839-97) and Muḥammad ʿAbduh (1849-1905).

only true basis for Islam.<sup>2</sup> A related strand is represented by such figures as Şāliḥ b. Muḥammad al-Fullānī (1166/1752-3 to 1218/1803-4), a West African scholar settled in Medina, and Muḥammad Ḥayyā al-Sindī (d. 1163/1750).<sup>3</sup> Both may be termed anti-Madhabists or, better, “Traditionists” in that they decisively rejected *taqlīd*, the unquestioning acceptance of the teachings of any one of the law-schools (*madhāhib*), inasmuch as,

The yardstick against which every action is to be measured is conformity with Quranic injunction or with a saying or a deed of the Prophet.<sup>4</sup>

The new brotherhoods had a number of strands. One included several Naqshbandiyya teachers who were influenced by the Indian reformer, Aḥmad Sirhindi (971/1564 to 1034/1624), known as the *mujaddid al-alf al-thānī*, “the renewer of the second millennium”, who worked to purify Sufism in India.<sup>5</sup> Two figures who had links with both the Salafiyya or Wahhābiyya and *ḥadīth* movements were to become of profound significance to the movement for revival and reform throughout Sudanic Africa, from the Red Sea to Senegal. They were Aḥmad al-Tijānī (1150/1737-8 to 1230/1815) and Aḥmad b. Idrīs al-Fāṣī (1163/1749-50 to 1253/1837); both were from North Africa.

### *The Sammāniyya*

The first impulse for change came through the Sammāniyya whose origins lay in the tradition of the Khalwatiyya Sufi order, which may be traced back to the fourteenth century. The founder of the Sammāniyya, Muḥammad b. ʻAbd al-Karīm al-Sammānī (1132/1718 to 1189/1775), was a student of a Syrian Khalwati, Muṣṭafā Kamāl al-Dīn al-Bakrī

2 See H. Laoust, “Ibn ʻAbd al-Wahhāb”, in *EI* 2, iii, 677-9; ʻAbd al-Rahīm ʻAbd al-Rahmān ʻAbd al-Rahīm, *Min taʻrīkh shibh al-jazīra al-ʻarabiyya fī l-qaṣr al-ḥadīth*. Cairo 1979, i, 31-55.

3 J.O. Voll, “Muḥammad Ḥayyā al-Sindī and Muḥammad ibn ʻAbd al-Wahhāb: an analysis of an intellectual group in eighteenth-century Madīna”, *BSOAS*, xxxviii, 1975, 32-9, and J.O. Hunwick, “Şāliḥ al-Fullānī (1752/3-1803): the career and teachings of a West African ʻālim in Medina”, in *In Quest of an Islamic Humanism*, ed. A.H. Green, Cairo 1984, 147.

4 Hunwick (1984).

5 Sh. ʻInayatullah, “Shaykh Aḥmad Sirhindi”, *EI* 2, i, 297-8.

(1099/1688-9 to 1162/1748-9), who lived for long periods of his life in Damascus, Jerusalem and Cairo. On al-Bakrī's death, his students set up their own independent branches. Among these students was al-Sammān, who established a new Khalwatī branch known as the Sammāniyya.<sup>6</sup> This was brought to the Sudan in about 1764 by Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Bashīr (1155/1742-3 to 1239/1824), who had been initiated and appointed *khalīfa* by al-Sammān himself while on the pilgrimage in Medina.

Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib was born at Umm Marriḥ, north of Omdurman. His mother was Ruqayya bt. Rahma b. Muḥammad Surūr; his father, who was also his mother's cousin, was Bashīr b. Mālik b. Muḥammad Surūr.<sup>7</sup> His pedigree shows that he had a common ancestry with the ḠArakiyyūn holy clan. After memorizing the Quran at the mosque of his ancestor, Muḥammad w. Surūr, Aḥmad studied under Walad Anas al-Ḡawāḍībī, a student of Shaykh Khōjalī, on the island of Islānj, north of Omdurman. He then asked the famous Qādirī shaykh, ḠAbd al-Bāqī al-Nayyal, to initiate him into the Qādiriyya. Al-Nayyal is reported to have communicated with the spirit of Ḥasan w. Ḥassūna, who commanded him not to admit Aḥmad.<sup>8</sup> Aḥmad was also a student of Aḥmad al-Fazārī al-Fardī of Umm Ṭalḥa in the Gezira. He then decided to return to Umm Marriḥ, where he studied on his own, devoting most of his time to the *Mukhtaṣar* of Khalīl and a major commentary upon it by Bahrām al-Damīrī (d. 805/1402).

When he was sixteen or eighteen, that is in 1758 or 1760, Aḥmad travelled to the Ḥijāz. In Mecca he studied under several leading scholars, among them ḠAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb al-Miṛghānī, the founder of the

6 Muḥammad Tawfiq al-Bakrī, *Bayt al-Ṣiddīq*, Cairo (1323/1905-6), 156-65; F. de Jong, "Khalwatiyya", in *EI* 2 iii, 991-3; B. G. Martin, "A Short History of the Khalwati Order of Dervishes", in *Scholars, Saints and Sufis*, ed. N. R. Keddie, Berkeley 1972, 275-305.

7 The two main sources on Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib's life are ḠAbd al-Mahmūd Nūr al-Dā'īm, *Azāhīr al-riyāḍ fī manāqib al-ṣārif bi-llāh al-Shaykh Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib*, Khartoum 1954 and *idem*, *al-ṣUrf al-fā'iḥ wa'l-diyā' al-lā'iḥ fī manāqib al-quṭb al-rājiḥ wa-ghawth al-wādiḥ sayyidī al-ustādh al-ṣhaykh Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib b. al-Bashīr*, Omdurman 1955; see also Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Abū Salīm, "Ijāza Sammāniyya", *MDS*, 1969, 30. On Muḥammad w. Surūr, see Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 345.

8 Nūr al-Dā'īm (1954), 29-39 and 370.

Mīrghaniyya.<sup>9</sup> It was probably because of this relationship and the high esteem in which Aḥmad was held by Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī that the Sammāniyya and Khatmiyya developed very intimate relations, especially during the life of Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī (see pp. 79-80).

While in Mecca Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib was also initiated by Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad ʻAbd al-Salām al-Makkī al-Shāfiʻī, a student of Muṣṭafā Kamāl al-Dīn al-Bakrī, into the Khalwatiyya and by ʻAbd al-Rahmān al-ʻAydarūs into the Naqshbandiyya.<sup>10</sup> Aḥmad was said to have seen in a vision that his real master was Muḥammad b. ʻAbd al-Karīm al-Sammān in Medina. He thus moved there and studied under him for seven years, during which he was initiated by his teacher into a number of ṭariqas, among them the Qādiriyya, Khalwatiyya, and Naqshbandiyya.<sup>11</sup> After receiving his diploma (*ijāza*), Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib was ordered by his master to return to the Sudan to initiate followers and “to make manifest the signs of the Religion”, *iżhār maʻālim al-dīn*.

Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib was to infuse a new spirit into Sudanese Sufism, leading to a renewed emphasis not only on such practical aspects as *dhikr* (recital) and *madīḥ* (songs of praise) but also on the philosophy of Sufism. Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib was said to have found the Qādiriyya and the Shādhiliyya at a very low ebb. He felt the need for reform and began to make contact with the leading shaykhs of his day, seeking to persuade them to unite under his leadership, “to revive its [the land’s] people”, *li-iḥyā ahlihā*.<sup>12</sup>

Aḥmad travelled extensively preaching his new order. During a visit to Sinnār he recruited the Hamaj Regent, Nāṣir b. Muḥammad Abī Likaylik, who granted him an estate. He also initiated the scholar Aḥmad w. ʻIsā al-Anṣārī, who sent some of his own pupils to be initiated by Aḥmad, among whom was Badawī w. Abū Ṣafīyya (d. c. 1848), a religious notable of the Bidayriyya of Kordofan.<sup>13</sup>

9 *Ibid.*, 41, and Aḥmad ʻAbd Allāh Sāmī, *al-Shāʻir al-Sūdānī*, *Muḥammad Saʻīd al-ʻAbbāsī*, Khartoum 1968, 24.

10 *Nūr al-Dā'im* (1954), 41-2, and *idem* (1955), 6-7.

11 *Nūr al-Dā'im* (1954), 50.

12 *Ibid.*, 66.

13 *Ibid.*, 241. Abū Ṣafīyya led a holy war against the Nūba, converting many to Islam. He transferred from the Sammāniyya to the Khatmiyya, which in turn he later abandoned for the Ismāʻiliyya. Like al-Kabbāshī, he was hostile to the Turco-Egyptian regime; to an official, he exclaimed, “You call yourself

The Sammāniyya also gained some followers in the Shāyqiyya region, among whom was Ibrāhīm al-Duwayhī, an uncle of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd whose coming was allegedly prophesied by Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib, and ʻAbd al-Jabbār al-Shāyqī who propagated the ṭarīqa in Abū Dōm near Marawī.<sup>14</sup>

By the time of Aḥmad's second visit to the Ḥijāz, which took place some years after his first visit in 1758 or 1760, the Sammāniyya had already gained wide popularity, especially in the Gezira. It attracted many of the Qādiriyya, who were impressed with the ṭarīqa's new style as well as with Aḥmad's personality. Thus Aḥmad al-Baṣīr (d. 1829) and Muḥammad Tōm Bānnaqā (d. 1851), Qādirī shaykhs and religious leaders of the Ḥalawiyīn and the Yaʻqūbāb clans of the Gezira respectively, joined the Sammāniyya under the influence of Aḥmad.<sup>15</sup>

Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib, however, faced some opposition from the Ṣādqāb Qādiriyya holy clan and, paradoxically, from some of his own relatives, the ʻArakiyyūn, who probably opposed him because they did not want to be subordinate to the Sammāniyya.<sup>16</sup>

Aḥmad's visit to the Ḥijāz was via Egypt. *En route*, he stayed for some time at al-Dāmar with Ḥamad b. Muḥammad al-Majdhūb, whose grandson Muḥammad al-Majdhūb b. Aḥmad Qamar al-Dīn later became a prominent Sammāniyya leader.<sup>17</sup>

While in Cairo, Aḥmad visited al-Azhar where he attended some lectures given by Muḥammad al-Amīr, a famous Egyptian Mālikī scholar, who was said to have treated Aḥmad with honour. It was probably because of this connexion that Aḥmad al-Salāwī, himself a student of Muḥammad al-Amīr, later after the Turco-Egyptian conquest cultivated

---

Muslim, God alone knows the truth, but to me you are only the oppressors of my country", N. Peney, quoted in Trimingham (1949), 103. See also Hill (1967), 65-66; Mahmūd (1971), 131, and Mahmoud Abdalla Ibrāhīm, "The history of the Ismāʻiliyya ṭarīqa in the Sudan: 1792-1914", Ph.D. thesis, University of London 1980, 79-80.

14 Nūr al-Dā'im (1954), 329 and 338.

15 Trimingham (1949), 221 and 227; see also Hill (1967), 31.

16 Trimingham (1949), 199 and 226-8; Abū Salīm (1969), 30; Badri, thesis (1970), 182, and Holt (1973b), 126. Aḥmad met with some opposition from Yūsuf Abū Shara, an ʻAraki khalīfa, when the latter saw him encroaching upon his followers in the Gezira. Later, the ʻArakiyyūn went over to the Sammāniyya; see Trimingham (1949), 220.

17 Nūr al-Dā'im (1954), 68, and *idem* (1955), 14-15.

close relations with Ahmād, married one of his daughters and named a son after him.<sup>18</sup> Ahmād continued his journey to the Ḥijāz, where he performed the pilgrimage and stayed for some time with his teacher Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-Karīm al-Sammān, who later permitted him (*adhīna lahu*) to return to the Sudan to pursue his career.<sup>19</sup>

Ahmād's death in 1824 marked the beginning of his order's division: "at his death the sun of the *ṭarīqa* set", *gharabat bi-wafātihī shams al-ṭarīqa*.<sup>20</sup> His death without nominating a successor led to long disputes among his sons, and between them and some of his senior adherents. At first Ahmād's followers split into two groups. The first supported Ibrāhīm al-Disūqī (d. 1269/1852-3), Ahmād's elder son, because of his age, learning and, more importantly, because he had frequently taken his father's place in leading the prayers. The second group backed Nūr al-Dā’im (d. 29 Shawwāl 1268/7 August 1851), another son of Ahmād, because his father was said to have remarked of him that *baraka* would be inherent in him and his offspring.<sup>21</sup>

This dispute continued until 1245/1829-30, when Ahmād al-Baṣīr arrived to build a tomb over his master's grave. Al-Baṣīr, who was greatly respected by the Sammāniyya and believed to be a member of the Prophetic communion (*ḥadrat al-rasūl*, see Glossary), was said to have authorized Nūr al-Dā’im to lead the prayers, praying behind him like an ordinary follower. Al-Baṣīr's justification for this was that he had had a vision (*ru'yā*) in which the Prophet declared that Nūr al-Dā’im was Ahmād's successor.<sup>22</sup>

The Sammāniyya suffered further fragmentation and regionalization. Three new independent branches, which shared the same spiritual genealogy and paid nominal homage to the family of the founder, emerged. The first branch was under the leadership of al-Qurashī w. al-Zayn (d. 1878), a senior follower of Ahmād.<sup>23</sup> A second branch was

18 Nūr al-Dā’im (1954), 59-60 and 78.

19 *Ibid.*, 66.

20 *Ibid.*, 265-6.

21 *Ibid.*, 354-6.

22 *Ibid.*, 274.

23 Al-Qurashī was from the Ḥalawīyyūn of the Gezira; he established a *khalwa* to teach the Quran and propagate the Sammāniyya at al-Masallamīyya near al-Ḥaṣahayṣa. Muḥammad Ahmād, the Mahdi, joined him after a dispute with his previous master, Muḥammad Sharīf (see following n. 24). The Mahdi

founded by Aḥmad al-Baṣīr (d. 1830). Finally, a third emerged under Muḥammad Sharīf Nūr al-Dā’im (d. 1327/1908-9), a grandson of Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib.<sup>24</sup> This branch, which was known as the Ṭayyibiyya Sammāniyya Bakriyya, gained a considerable number of followers not only in the Sudan but also in Egypt.<sup>25</sup>

The Sammāniyya came to the Sudan as a “reformist” ṭariqa but was soon assimilated into the local social order. Like the ancient orders, it split up into a number of autonomous branches, characterized by personal disputes between their heads. The Sammāniyya broke up because of clashes of personality, and ethnic and regional loyalties. Thus during the disputes over the succession, Ibrāhīm al-Disūqī was supported by the Surōrāb and Ḡawādāb clans of the Jummūcīyya sub-section of the Ja‘aliyyūn, whereas his brother Nūr al-Dā’im was backed by the Jimīcāb, another sub-section of the Ja‘aliyyūn who live north of Omdurman and Khartoum North. A further example of ethnic and regional division is the case of al-Qurashī and Aḥmad al-Baṣīr, who won the support of the Ḥalawīyyīn of the Gezira.<sup>26</sup>

In conclusion, it was because of these rivalries and lack of central leadership that the Sammāniyya failed to become a geographically widespread ṭariqa as the Khatmiyya later became. The Sammāniyya may be considered a “halfway house” between the older orders and the new centralized ones.

---

married a daughter of al-Qurashī by whom he had Ḥalī al-Mahdī (1881-1944); see Hill (1967), 49, and Holt (1970), 45 and 104.

24 Muḥammad Sharīf was the Mahdi’s first Sufi teacher, before the former expelled him from the ḥarīqa; see Hill (1967), 247; Abū Salīm (1969), 31, and Holt (1970), 21. Thus, when Muḥammad Aḥmad declared himself the Mahdi in 1881, he was supported by the Sammāniyya branches of al-Qurashī and al-Baṣīr, but opposed by that of Muḥammad Sharīf; see Hill (1967), 274, and al-Ṭāhir Muḥammad Ḥalī, *al-Ādab al-ṣūfī fī l-Sūdān*, Khartoum 1970, 89.

25 F. de Jong, *Turuq and Turuq-linked Institutions in Nineteenth Century Egypt*, 179. This branch should not be confused with the Moroccan Ṭayyibiyya which derives its name from Mawlay al-Ṭayyib (d. 1767); see Trimingham (1971), 276.

26 Nūr al-Dā’im (1954), 274, 356 and 358.

DIAGRAM 2. *Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Bashīr.*

Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib w. al Bashīr\*  
 (known as al-Shaykh al-Ṭayyib)  
 (1155/1742-3 to 1239/1824)

Ibrāhīm al-Disūqī  
 (Aḥmad's eldest son  
 d. 1269/1852-3)

Nūr al-Dā'im  
 (d. 29 Shawwāl 1268/  
 7 August 1851)

\* For Aḥmad's numerous sons see, Nūr al-Dā'im (1954), 351-67.

*The School of Aḥmad b. Idrīs*

Aḥmad b. Idrīs b. Muḥammad b. Ḩalī b. Aḥmad was born into a holy family at Maysūr in the district of al-Ḩarāsh near Fez in Morocco probably in 1163/1749-50.<sup>27</sup> He was a descendant of the *imām* Idrīs b.

<sup>27</sup> Muḥammad ḨUthman al-Mīrghanī, *Manāqib ... al-Sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, Wad Madanī, 1391/1971, 7, says he was born at Qāra near Fez. The sources disagree on the date of his birth; according to Ṣāliḥ b. al-Ḥājj Muḥammad b. Ṣāliḥ al-Jaḍīrī al-Madanī, *al-Muntaqā al-nafīs fī manāqib quṭb dā'imāt al-taqdīs sayyidinā wa-mawlānā al-ṣayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, Cairo 1380/1960, 2; Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, *Aṣṭār azhār aghṣān ḥażīrat al-taqdīs fī karāmāt... al-ṣayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, Cairo 1394/1974, 34, and ḨUmar ḨAbd al-Ḥājj al-Bayyādī, *Nasab al-ṣayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, al-Zayniyya/ al-Uqṣur: published privately by the sons of al-ṣayyid Muṣṭafā b. ḨAbd al-Ḥājj al-Bayyādī, 1 and 5, he was born in 1163/1749-50. A Sanūsiyya source gives the date as 1173/1760-1; al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 55. Although this latter date is widely given in Western sources (see, for example, Trimingham (1949), 229; *idem* (1971), 114; J.O. Voll, "A History of the Khatmiyya Ṭariqa in the Sudan", Ph. D. thesis 1969, 90 and de Jong (1978), 111), the head of the Idrīsiyya in the Sudan claimed that 1163 was correct; interview 15. See further, R.S. O'Fahey, *Enigmatic Saint. Aḥmad ibn Idrīs and the Idrīsi Tradition*, London 1990, 27-32.

<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh of the Idrīsī family of Morocco, tracing his descent back to al-Husayn b. <sup>c</sup>Alī, the grandson of the Prophet.<sup>28</sup>

Even before reaching manhood, Ahmād used to seclude himself and devote most of his time to worship, contemplation and lamentation over the deteriorating state of Islam and the Muslims; he soon became known for his piety, asceticism (*taqashshuf*) and the renunciation of the things of the world.<sup>29</sup>

After memorizing the Quran and studying a range of Islamic subjects, he moved, at the age of twenty, to Fez for further study. There he studied under a number of scholars among whom were Muḥammad al-Tāwudī b. Sūda (d. 1209/1794-5), <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir b. Ahmād al-<sup>c</sup>Arabī (d. 1216/1801-2) and Muḥammad al-Majīdī (or al-Mijaydī) al-Shinqītī.<sup>30</sup> He was also taught by a number of Sufi teachers, the first being <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Wahhāb al-Tāzī, with whom he stayed for four years and by whom he was initiated into the Khādiriyya order.<sup>31</sup> On al-Tāzī's death, Ahmād joined Abū'l-Qāsim al-Wazīr, who initiated him into the Nāṣiriyya Shādhiliyya.<sup>32</sup>

Ahmād came to Fez at a time when two Moroccan sultans, Muḥammad b. <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh (ruled 1757-1790) and his brother's son Sulaymān b. Yazīd (ruled, 1794-1822), were attempting to reform Islamic learning in Morocco. Sultan Muḥammad, for instance, endeavoured to improve the curriculum of the Qarawiyīn mosque-school in Fez by encouraging the study of the "sources", *uṣūl*, of the Sharia rather than the commentaries written on it.<sup>33</sup>

28 Ahmād b. Idrīs, *al-<sup>c</sup>Iqd al-nafīs fī naẓm jawāhir al-tadrīs*, Cairo 1372/1953, 2, and al-Bayyādī (1979), 6-10. On the Idrīsī family, see D. Eustache, "Idris I", in *EI<sup>2</sup>*, iii, 1031 and 1053-7.

29 See *Tarjamat al-ustādh Ahmād b. Idrīs*, NRO, misc., 1/81/1294, f. 5.

30 Al-Madānī (1380/1960), 2, and al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 35.

31 The Khādiriyya derives its name from al-Khādir, "a servant of Ours", who appears in Quran, XVIII: 59-81; see further A. J. Wensinck, "al-Khādir", in *EI<sup>2</sup>*, iv, 902-5. Its *sanad* became the basis of the *sanads* of virtually all the ḥarāiqas inspired by Ibn Idrīs; see for example, *Sanad al-ḥarāiqā al-Khatmiyya*, Bergen, NO 126.6/1. Its founder was <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Azīz al-Dabbāgh who was initiated by al-Khādir; he was succeeded by Ahmād b. Mu'bārak al-Lamātī, who was followed by al-Tāzī who had originally been an adherent of the Nāṣiriyya Shādhiliyya. On the Khādiriyya, see Trimingham (1971), 114.

32 Al-Mīrghānī (1391/1971), 22-3, where Abū'l-Qāsim is described as one of "the hidden Malāmatī".

33 Al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 9, and Voll, thesis (1969), 92.

Ibn Idrīs began to hold circles (Ar. sing. *halqa*) to which he lectured on Sufism and *'ilm*, preaching against such practices as the exaggerated veneration of saints. He based his teachings and ideas on the Quran and the *sunna* and exhorted his audience to follow a purified form of Islam.

When Ahmad left Fez in the middle of 1212/1797-8 intending to make the pilgrimage, he was already a prominent religious teacher and Sufi shaykh in the Maghrib. On his way to Mecca, he visited Algeria, Tunisia and Libya, where he lectured in the mosque of Benghāzī. Travelling by boat, he arrived at the beginning of 1213/June 1798 at Alexandria in Egypt. Ahmad's public lectures, especially those which he gave in al-Azhar, were received with admiration and led some of those who heard them to accompany him to Mecca, which he reached at the end of 1213/1798-9.<sup>34</sup>

Ibn Idrīs stayed in Mecca for fourteen years, during which he founded a circle of pupils called by Ahmad himself, *al-ṭariqa al-Muhammadiyya al-Ahmadiyya* to show its direct link to the Prophet. Some scholars have claimed that Ahmad established his own *ṭariqa* known as the Idrīsiyya; this was in fact, as we shall see later, established by his sons after his death in 1837.<sup>35</sup> We may call Ahmad's group of students *al-madrasa al-Idrīsiyya*, the Idrīsiyya school. It did not, like most of the Sufi orders, confine its activities to the practical aspects of Sufism such as the recital of *wird* and *hizb*, but also laid emphasis on Islamic doctrine and on missionary work.

Ahmad was above all a reformer who sought, as did the Salafiyya movement, to restore the original form of Islam, purified of innovations and superstitions.<sup>36</sup> He rejected *qiyās* (analogy) and *ijmā'* (consensus),

34 al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 37. In the lives appended to Ahmad b. Idrīs, *Majmū'at Awrād aḥzāb wa-rasā'il*, Cairo 1359/1940, 205 and *idem*, (1372/1953), 3-4, the date of his arrival is given as 1214/1799-1800. C. Padwick, *Muslim Devotions. A Study of Prayer-Manuals in Common Use*, London 1969, xviii, says that Ahmad had taught in Cairo for twenty years before settling in Mecca in 1234/1818-9, but this latter is the date of his return to Mecca after his prolonged visit to Upper Egypt with his student, al-Mīrghānī. See further, the chronology proposed in O'Fahey (1990), 51-8.

35 See, for example, C.A. Willis, in NRO, Departmental Reports 11/1/4, "The Religious Confraternities", p. 10; *idem*, "Religious confraternities of the Sudan", *SNR*, iv/4, 1921, 184-5; Yūsuf b. Ismā'il al-Nabhānī, *Jāmi' karāmāt al-awliyā'*, 2 vols., Cairo (n.d.), i, 314-9, and de Jong (1978), 11.

36 Shams al-Dīn 'Abd al-Mut'āl, *Kanz al-Sa'ād wa'l-rashād*, Khartoum, 1358/1939, 12-3.

except that of the Prophet's companions, as sources of Islamic law.<sup>37</sup> He was hostile to the schools of law (the *madhhabs*).<sup>38</sup> Among his students in Mecca were Muḥammad Ḥasan Zāfir al-Madanī al-Darqāwī;<sup>39</sup> Muḥammad al-Majdhūb al-Ṣaghīr (see Appendix A); <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Sulaymān al-Ahdal, the then *muftī* of Zabīd in the Yemen;<sup>40</sup> Makkī b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Azīz; Ḥasan Muḥammad Balōl, known as Ḥasan al-Sunnī; and <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Mawārī, known as Abū'l-Ma<sup>c</sup>ālī. Aḥmad also taught a number of students after he settled at Ṣabyā in the Yemen in 1244/1829-30, among whom were Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān b. Mubashshar, al-Jazūlī b. Idrīs and Shaykh Ṭāhir al-Ḥaymādī (or al-Ḥimādī).<sup>41</sup>

Aḥmad's success was due, in addition to his own qualities, to the moral and material support which he received from Ghālib of the Zayd clan, *amīr* of Mecca. It was Ghālib who granted him the use of the famous palace (*saray*) of the Ja<sup>c</sup>fariyya in Mecca, which Aḥmad used as a centre for his followers until he left for the Yemen in 1243/1827-8.<sup>42</sup> Aḥmad's stay in Mecca coincided with important political develop-

37 *Ibid.*, 13-4.

38 *Ibid.*, 16; al-Mīrghānī (1391/1971), 46-7; see also Trimingham (1949), 199 and *idem* (1971), 115.

39 Muḥammad Zāfir was a son and successor of Muḥammad Ḥasan b. Ḥamza al-Madanī (d. 1846), the founder of the Madaniyya branch of the Darqāwiyya order in Libya. Muḥammad Zāfir made the Madaniyya a distinctive order which spread to the Maghrib, Ḥijāz and Turkey where it played a significant role in the pan-Islamic movement; see further, Trimingham (1971), 113 and 126.

40 On al-Ahdal, see *al-A<sup>c</sup>lām*, iv, 79; <sup>c</sup>Umar Riḍā Kāḥhāla, *Mu<sup>c</sup>jam al-mu<sup>c</sup>allifīn, tarājim muṣannifī al-kutub al-<sup>c</sup>arabiyya*, Damascus 1957-61, v, 140, and al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 38.

41 Al-Ḥaymādī was a Sudanese holy man about whom very little is known. He was originally an adherent of the Khalwatiyya and Shādhiliyya, but joined the Khatmiyya at the instigation of al-Mīrghānī. He accompanied the latter to the Ḥijāz, performed the pilgrimage and joined the school of Ibn Idrīs in the Yemen. He is said to have entered into retreat (*khalwa*) sixty-four times and to have been told by Ibn Idrīs that his initiation would be at the hands of a holy man from the Maghrib whom he would meet in Dār Fūr. He travelled to the western Sudan where he met Muḥammad al-Mukhtār al-Tijānī al-Shinqītī; see Muḥammad al-Sayyid al-Tijānī, *Ghāyat al-amānī fī manāqib wa-karāmāt aṣhāb al-shaykh sayyidī Aḥmad al-Tijānī*, Cairo, n.d., 105-6.

42 Interview 15.

ments, among which was the Wahhābī occupation in 1218/1803. In 1228/1813, on hearing of the approach of the army of Ṭusūn, Muḥammad ʿAlī Pasha's son, the Wahhābīs retreated to Najd, where they maintained their authority until they were finally defeated by Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad ʿAlī's forces in 1816-18.<sup>43</sup>

It was probably no coincidence that in 1813, the year of the Turco-Egyptian occupation of Mecca, Ahmād went, together with his student al-Mīrghānī, to Upper Egypt. Ahmād and his student stayed at the village of al-Zayniyya, between Qinā and Isnā. In 1815 Muḥammad al-Mīrghānī went, with his master's consent, as a missionary to the Sudan; Ahmād himself stayed in Upper Egypt until the end of 1234/1818-9 and then returned to the Ḥijāz. There he performed the pilgrimage and subsequently remained in Mecca up to the middle of 1243/1827-8, when he finally moved to the Yemen.<sup>44</sup>

It is evident that the political instability in Mecca hindered Ahmād's work. Because of their opposition to his occupation of Mecca, in 1827 Muḥammad ʿAlī Pasha ordered that the office of the *amīr* of Mecca be transferred from the Zayd clan, which had held it for a number of years, to the ʿAwn clan.<sup>45</sup> Ahmād had been on good terms with the Zayd clan. Perhaps this is why he now faced considerable opposition and hostility after the ʿAwn clan took over the *amīrship*. The Meccan *ʿulamā*, who had concealed their hostility toward him over the years, not only found the climate favourable to reveal their resentment of his disapproval of the four *madhhabs*, they openly accused him of heresy.<sup>46</sup> Ahmād, together with all his principal students, except for al-Sanūsī who remained in Mecca as his representative (*khalīfa*), left in the middle of 1243/1827-8 for the Yemen. He stayed first at Zabīd with his student ʿAbd al-Rahmān, but at the end of 1244/1828-9 he moved to a small village in ʿAsīr called Ṣabyā, which was at that time under the control of the Wahhābīs.<sup>47</sup>

43 Al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 39; see also ʿAbd al-Rahīm (1979), i, 329-34.

44 Al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 40.

45 Voll, thesis (1969), 95-6.

46 Al-Mīrghānī (1391/1971), 31, and Trimingham (1971), 115. What they meant by "heresy" is not specified.

47 Al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 41, and NRO, Intel., 6/7/22, "A short history of the Idrisia Tarika and its connection with Senussia", p. 10.

Shortly after his arrival, a famous debate (*munāzara*), later published as a book known as *al-munāzara al-Najdiyya*, took place between Ahmād and a group of Wahhābī scholars led by a certain *faqīh* Nāṣir al-Kubaybī. The debate showed that although Ibn Idrīs had much in common with the Wahhābis, he also disagreed with them over a number of issues. Ahmād continued to teach at Ṣabyā, where he died and was buried on 21 Rajab 1253/21 October 1837. He left three sons: Muḥammad (1222/1807-8 to 1307/1889-90), <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl (1246/1830-1 to 1296/1878-9) and Muṣṭafā, who died a young man some years after his father's death.<sup>48</sup>

### *The Succession Dispute*

Ahmād's death without nominating a successor was to have far-reaching repercussions on the subsequent development of the Idrīsiyya school. It also confirms the argument that Ahmād did not establish a *ṭarīqa* as such with a hierarchy and fixed system of succession. The absence of a nominated *khalīfa* led to a series of disputes over the succession among his principal students, al-Sanūsī, al-Mīrghānī, Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd and his own sons.

In these disputes, Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd was supported by Muḥammad, Ahmād's eldest son, who regarded him as Ahmād's true successor because his father used to authorize him to lead the prayers in his absence. Moreover, his father had died in Ibrāhīm's arms. Because of Muḥammad's support, Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd succeeded in winning the allegiance of Ibn Idrīs' followers in Ṣabyā. Nonetheless, Ibrāhīm decided to leave for Upper Egypt to be away from the dispute, which was becoming increasingly bitter, especially between al-Sanūsī and al-Mīrghānī. Al-Sanūsī based his claim to the succession on the fact that he had acted as his master's representative in Mecca after he had left for the Yemen.<sup>49</sup> Al-Mīrghānī, on the other hand, considered himself his teacher's sole legitimate successor because he had been the first to join him, had acted as his missionary to Ethiopia and had accompanied him to Upper Egypt, whence he had gone with his consent to the Sudan.

48 Al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 26-7 and 42-5.

49 *Ibid.*, 41. A discussion of the succession dispute is given in O'Fahey (1990), 113-19.

Aḥmad's second son, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl, sided with al-Sanūsī against al-Mīrghānī and was later initiated by him into his own order, the Sanūsiyya, which he established after Aḥmad's death. He later went with al-Sanūsī to Libya.<sup>50</sup>

The rivalry among Ibn Idrīs' students culminated in the establishment by each of his own order. Five orders eventually emerged: the Sanūsiyya, the Khatmiyya established by al-Mīrghānī, the Madaniyya of al-Madānī, the Rashīdiyya of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd and, at a later stage, the Idrīsiyya established by Ibn Idrīs' sons.

### *The Idrīsiyya School and the Sudan*

The students of Ibn Idrīs were to have great influence in the Muslim world. Those who had a direct impact on the Sudan fall into two groups: those who founded their own orders and those who continued to function as independent representatives of the Idrīsiyya school in the Sudan, endeavouring to reform Sudanese Sufism in the light of Aḥmad's teachings and ideas. Among this latter group may be included Ḥasan Muḥammad Balōl, <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Mawārzi, Makkī b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Azīz, Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān b. Mubashshar and al-Jazūlī b. Idrīs. The latter two were later to become representatives of the Khatmiyya order in the Shendi area.

Those of Aḥmad's students who influenced the Sudan through their own or later orders may be divided into two groups: those of non-Sudanese origin, al-Mīrghānī and the sons and descendants of Aḥmad himself; and those of Sudanese origin, Muḥammad al-Majdhūb al-Ṣaghīr, Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd and, indirectly, Ismācīl al-Walī.

### *Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Mīrghānī*

The first to carry Aḥmad's teachings to the Sudan was al-Mīrghānī (1208/1793-4 to 22 Shawwāl 1268/2 May 1852).<sup>51</sup> He came from a

50 Al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 44-5.

51 Makkī b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Azīz is said to have returned to the Sudan before al-Mīrghānī's first visit; see Ibn Idrīs al-Ḥasan al-Idrīsī, "al-Ḥaraka al-Sanūsiyya

Sharifian family that had lived in Bukhāra before it moved to India and thence to the Hijāz and whose descent from the Prophet was widely acknowledged.<sup>52</sup> His father Muḥammad b. Abī Bakr and his grandfather ʿAbd Allāh b. Ibrāhīm b. Ḥasan, commonly known as al-Mahjūb (lit. “the secluded”; d. 1207/1792-3) were celebrated Sufi scholars.

Al-Mīrghānī was born at al-Salāma near al-Ṭā’if in 1208/1793-4. When he was about seven, his mother died. Three years later, his father died. It was his childless uncle, Muḥammad Yāsīn b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb al-Mīrghānī, a noted Meccan Sufi and ʿālim, who took care of him. In his childhood Muḥammad ʿUthmān, who was said to have been a brilliant pupil, memorized the Quran and was instructed by his uncle in the exoteric sciences (*ʿulūm al-żāhir*) such as grammar, rhetoric, *fiqh* and *tafsīr* (Quranic exegesis). By the age of thirteen or fourteen, he had already acquired a sound knowledge of these Islamic sciences. Having studied the exoteric religious sciences and Mālikī law, Muḥammad ʿUthmān, then aged about fifteen years, decided to combine them with the esoteric sciences (*ʿulūm al-ḥaqīqa*, lit. “the sciences of the Reality”, i.e. of God), that is Sufism. Al-Mīrghānī was to become a prolific writer enriching Islamic scholarship with a number of works, including a major commentary on the Quran.

Muḥammad ʿUthmān had affiliated himself to five Sufi orders or traditions before joining the “circle” of Aḥmad b. Idrīs: the Naqshbandiyya,<sup>53</sup> the Qādiriyya, the Shādhiliyya, the Junaydiyya<sup>54</sup> and

wa-āthāruhā al-thaqāfi fī shamāl Ifrīqiyya”, MA thesis, University of Cairo 1976, 145. There is, however, little evidence to support this claim.

52 The main source for the life of al-Mīrghānī is Aḥmad “b. Idrīs” Muḥammad b. al-Naṣayḥ, ms; the *Kitāb al-ibāna al-nūriyya fī sha’n sāhib al-ṭariqa al-Khatmiyya* (hereafter cited as, *Kitāb al-Ibāna*); see also Voll (thesis) 1969, 103-15 and *passim*.

53 The Naqshbandiyya is traced back to Muḥammad al-Naqshbandī al-Bukhārī, an eclectic reformer who was influenced by Shī‘a teachings. According to al-Sanūsī (1968), 89-98, and Nūr al-Dā’im (1954), 78, this ṭariqa was the “Path” of the companions (*ṣaḥāba*) of the Prophet. See further, Montet (1967), 726, and Willis (1921), 188.

Al-Mīrghānī was initiated into the Naqshbandiyya by a number of shaykhs; first by Aḥmad b. Muḥammad Bannā al-Makkī, and then by Sa‘īd al-‘Amūdī al-Makkī, who had a religious centre at Jabal Abū Qubays in Mecca. Al-‘Amūdī was renowned for his almost continuous recitation of prayers for the Prophet, especially the *Dalā'il al-khayrāt*. His third Naqshbandī teacher was Aḥmad ʿAbd al-Karīm al-Azbaķī, who is said to have guided al-Mīrghānī to Ibn Idrīs; see

the Mīrghaniyya.<sup>55</sup> He then joined Ibn Idrīs, who initiated him for the second time into the same five orders, reflecting the latter's spiritual status.

Ahmad's school was a missionary one. Thus, Muḥammad ʻUthmān was sent by his master Ibn Idrīs to Ethiopia and, at a later stage, was allowed by him to travel to the Sudan. In Ethiopia he visited Balghā, where he preached his teacher's doctrines among the Muslim Jabarta. His success is said to have provoked the envy of the King of the Balghā region, who, thinking that Muḥammad ʻUthmān was threatening his authority, attempted to have him poisoned. Muḥammad ʻUthmān prudently returned to Mecca to rejoin his master.<sup>56</sup>

Muḥammad ʻUthmān's second journey, together with his teacher, was to Upper Egypt in 1228/1813. It seems that, apart from avoiding the Turco-Egyptians in the Ḥijāz, the trip was intended as a period of apprenticeship for Muḥammad ʻUthmān; he was sent by his teacher to preach in Manfalūṭ and Asyūṭ in Upper Egypt.<sup>57</sup>

---

*Tarjamat al-sayyid Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī*, ms., f. 4, and *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 3.

According to Trimingham (1949), 232, al-Mīrghānī was also initiated into the Naqshabandiyya by ʻAbd al-Rahmān al-Ahdal, *muftī* of Zabīd.

It was al-ʻAmūdī who initiated al-Mīrghānī into the Qādiriyya and Shādhiliyya and who taught him the *al-Dawr al-aʻlā* of Muhyī'l-Dīn b. al-ʻArabī; see *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ff. 2-3, and *al-Nafahāt al-Makkiyya* in *Majmūʻat al-nafahāt al-rabbāniyya al-mushtamila ʻalā sabʻa rasā'il Mīrghāniyya*, 1370/1950, 5-6.

54 The Junaydiyya tradition goes back to Abū'l-Qāsim al-Junayd b. Muḥammad al-Junayd al-Baghdādī (d. 260/874-5). According to Ibn al-Athīr, he was "the *imām* of the world of his time", *imām al-dunyā fī zamānihi*, and was described as the shaykh of the Sufi *madhhab* because his teachings were based on the Quran and *sunna*; see al-Sanūsī (1968), 62, and *al-Aʻlām*, ii, 137-8.

55 The Mīrghāniyya was founded by ʻAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb al-Mīrghānī, Muḥammad ʻUthmān's grandfather. It combined the Naqshbandiyya with the Shādhiliyya; NRO, Intel., 2/32/270, p. 56; Muḥammad b. ʻAbd al-Majīd al-Sarrāj, *al-Manāhij al-ʻaliyya fī tarājim al-sāda al-Mīrghāniyya*, Khartoum 1374/1955, 24, and Voll, thesis (1969), 107.

56 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 6. Balghā is a region in Eritrea; see J.S. Trimingham, *Islam in Ethiopia*, London 1952, 159.

57 *Tarjamat al-sayyid Muḥammad*, ms., f. 5; ʻAbd al-Malik b. ʻAbd al-Qādir b. ʻAlī al-Libī, *al-Fāwaʻid al-jaliyya fī taʻrīkh al-ʻāqila al-Sanūsiyya al-ḥākima fī Libīya*, Damascus 1966, 13, gives the date of al-Mīrghānī's journey

It is often stated that Muḥammad ʻUthmān was ordered by his master to travel to the Sudan.<sup>58</sup> But from the letters that were exchanged between Muḥammad ʻUthmān in Asyūṭ and his teacher in al-Zayniyya, it would seem that it was Muḥammad ʻUthmān who, in fact, petitioned his master to allow him to go to the Sudan.<sup>59</sup> Aḥmad replied,

As to what you have mentioned about going to the Sudan, it will be very inconvenient. It will be a very long journey. If you can avoid that, do so. But as for the holy men of the Sudan, they have been bearing excessive burdens, and they want to lay them upon the shoulders of others.<sup>60</sup>

The question of the journey to the Sudan continued to come up, and Aḥmad finally allowed Muḥammad ʻUthmān to go; Aḥmad wrote that it was only the Prophet who could decide Muḥammad ʻUthmān's destination, otherwise Aḥmad would have authorized the journey before. It was, therefore, not until Aḥmad had himself received the required Prophetic authority that he allowed his student to travel to the Sudan.<sup>61</sup>

Why did Muḥammad ʻUthmān suggest the Sudan as his third missionary field, after Ethiopia and Upper Egypt? He may have heard of the weakness of the *ṭariqas* there. After his apparently limited success in both Ethiopia and Egypt, he may have hoped to win a greater following in the Sudan.<sup>62</sup>

---

as 1230/1814-5, the year after the Turco-Egyptian occupation of the holy cities; Voll, thesis (1969), 111, and O'Fahey (1990), 53.

58 For example, T.W. Arnold, *The Preaching of Islam. A History of the propagation of the Muslim faith*, 2nd edn, London 1913, 327; ʻAbdīn (1967), 101, and Trimingham (1949), 232.

59 According to Voll, thesis (1969), 11-2, al-Mīrghānī was in the Sudan between 1817 and 1818. According to Sayyid Muḥammad ʻUthmān b. ʻAlī al-Mīrghānī, the present (1985) head of the Khatmiyya in the Sudan, his journey began in 1815; see Muḥammad ʻUthmān b. ʻAlī al-Mīrghānī, interview in *Majallat al-Faṭḥ* (Ramaḍān 1402/June-July 1982), 3. The latter date is partly confirmed by the statement of Ismāʻil al-Walī that he was initiated by al-Mīrghānī in al-Ubayyid in Shawwāl 1231/September-October 1816; see Ismāʻil b. ʻAbd Allāh al-Walī, *K. al-ʻuhūd al-wāfiya*, ms., f. 6.

60 *Tarjamat al-ustādh Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, ms., ff.91-3.

61 *Ibid.*, 121-2.

62 Only two of his Egyptian *khalīfas* are named in *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms. ff. 37-8. One is Aḥmad Abū Ḥarbiyya, regarded as one of the *ahl al-dīwān*, a Sufi term meaning "the people of the register (of the saints)". He had a large mosque and followers in Upper Egypt. The other was Aḥmad w. Saʻd (d. c. 1286/1869-70), who was known as *al-dhākir*, "one who remembers (God)". He

## The Travels of al-Mīrghānī

Muhammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān reached the Sudan in the last years of Funj rule at a time of instability and almost continuous war. He spent some time in Sudanese Nubia, where he visited Kunūz, Sukkūt and the Maħas regions. Here he achieved great success in recruiting followers and appointed Idrīs b. Muhammad, a famous Maħasi holy man, as his *khalīfat al-khulafā*<sup>2</sup>, that is a senior representative or deputy (on the question of the foundation of the Khatmiyya, see pp. 64-6).<sup>63</sup>

He then continued south to Dongola where he stayed for a time and recruited many followers. One was Ṣāliḥ Suwār al-Dhahab, a member of the Suwār al-Dhahab holy family, who is said to have accompanied his master to Bāra in Kordofan.<sup>64</sup> From Dongola, Muhammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān travelled to al-Dabba where he attracted a number of followers, especially from the Shāyqiyya region, among whom was Ṣāliḥ b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Muhammad b. Ḥājj al-Duwayhī, father of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, who came from his home village to meet al-Mīrghānī.<sup>65</sup> Muhammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān is also said to have initiated a number of prominent holy men in the Shāyqiyya region into the order without meeting them personally, but by sending *ijāzas* (certificates) to them in their home areas, relying only on hearsay about their learning, piety and most importantly, willingness to join him. These holy men included Muhammad Khayr b. Muhammad Ṣāliḥ al-<sup>c</sup>Irāqī, Muhammad Khayr al-Naḍīf and Muhammad Hammād, known as Shaykh Jiqaydī.

---

spent some time with his master in Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup> where he wrote a commentary on the Quran with the same title as that written by al-Mīrghānī, *Tāj al-Tafāsīr*.

63 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 28; on Idrīs see further E.A.W. Budge, *The Egyptian Sudan*, i, London 1907, 458-60.

64 Ṣāliḥ's name is not given in the *Kitāb al-ibāna*, but see Hill (1967), 329; Voll, thesis (1969), 138-9, and Maħmūd (1971), 129. He is perhaps referred to in a letter dated 1234/1818-9 from al-Mīrghānī in Kordofan to Ibn Idrīs sending greetings from a number of followers, including one Ṣāliḥ, *Tarjamat al-ustādh Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, ms., f. 90.

65 Muhammad Khalīl al-Hajrasī, *al-Qaṣr al-muṣhīd fi'l-tawḥīd wa-fī ṭarīqat sayyidī Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd*, Cairo, 1314/1915-6, 89.

Al-Mīrghānī then went from al-Dabba in a large caravan, led by his *khalīfa* Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ Shādūl, to Bāra.<sup>66</sup> He arrived in Kordofan in Shawwāl 1231/September 1816 and stayed for about three years and three months, during which time he also visited Sinnār.<sup>67</sup> In Bāra he married Ruqayya bt. Jallāb, from the Jallāba Hawwāra holy family of Bādī, by whom he later had a son, Muḥammad al-Hasan. He is said to have initiated about two hundred persons, including Hammād al-Baytī<sup>68</sup> and ḡArabī al-Khaṭīb al-Hawwārī. The latter was an *‘ālim* and a man of letters who was appointed *qādī* of Kordofan province by the Turco-Egyptian authorities.<sup>69</sup> Muḥammad ‘Uthmān also recruited Ismā‘īl al-Walī (1792-1863), who was born in al-‘Ubayyīd into a Bidayrī-Dahmashī holy family which had moved, as part of the Ja‘aliyyūn diaspora, from Manṣūrkutī near Dongola, to Kordofan. Ismā‘īl had received a traditional *khalwa* education and before he met Muḥammad ‘Uthmān in Shawwāl 1231/September 1816 he had been living as a *khalwa* teacher. Muḥammad ‘Uthmān, who was impressed by his devotion, appointed him a *murshid*, “guide”.

Also among al-Mīrghānī’s initiates in Kordofan were Badawī w. Abū Ṣafīyya, Ibrāhīm al-Barqāwī, his brother *al-ḥājj* Mūsā al-Barqāwī and Maḥmud Bādī, a brother of Ruqayya (Muḥammad ‘Uthmān’s wife), who was said to have been famous for his knowledge and writings on both Sufism and exoteric sciences (*‘ulūm al-zāhir*).<sup>70</sup> While in Kordofan, Muḥammad ‘Uthmān also recruited three holy men who were said to have played an important role in propagating the Khatmiyya in the Shāyqiyya region, namely Muḥammad w. Mālik, Muḥammad b.

<sup>66</sup> Maḥmūd (1971), 129. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ was a descendant of ‘Abd al-Mawlā of al-Khandaq who established himself as a *khabīr* (large-scale merchant) in Dār Fūr. On his descendants, see A. Bjørkelo, *Prelude to the Mahdiyya. Peasants and Traders in the Shendi Region, 1821-1885*, Cambridge 1989, 124-5.

<sup>67</sup> Al-Walī, *Kitāb al-‘uhūd*, ms., f. 6.

<sup>68</sup> Al-Baytī is said to have become *imām al-shamāl*, “*imām* of the left hand”, a term apparently peculiar to Sudanese Sufism and meaning the one who stands at the left hand of the *qutb* of the age but who is unable to attain the rank of *ghawthiyya* because of non-Sharifian origin, see *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 9.

<sup>69</sup> ‘Abd al-Rahīm (1952), 93, and Husayn Sīd Aḥmad al-Muftī, *Taṭawwur niẓām al-qadā’ fī l-Sūdān*, i, 1378/1959, i, 80.

<sup>70</sup> *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 11.

<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Halīm, known as *al-naqīb* (a Sufi technical term, see Glossary), and Mālik w. Jinayd.

However, Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān's visit to Kordofan was not as successful as his journeys in the northern and eastern Sudan. This was probably because of the hostility of the *maqdūm* Musallam, the Dār Fūr Sultanate's Governor in Kordofan, who imprisoned some of al-Mīrghānī's followers. Al-Mīrghānī is reported to have warned the *maqdūm* of the coming of the Turco-Egyptian invaders and the end of his rule at their hands.<sup>71</sup>

While in Kordofan, two of al-Mīrghānī's sons, Ibrāhīm Tāj al-Khatim and Aḥmad Nūr al-Khatim, died and were buried there.

The next region visited by Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān was the Gezira. He stayed for some time at Shādhili village before continuing to Sinnār, where he arrived in 1232/1816-7. Here he suffered from the hostility of some of Sinnār's *‘ulamā’* and rulers. The *wazīr* al-Arbāb Daf<sup>c</sup> Allāh w. Aḥmad is said to have been hostile towards Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān; it was he who sent to Ibrāhīm w. Baqādī, an eminent *‘ālim* known as the “Sibawayhī” (the famous Grammarian) of his time, to examine him. This choice itself shows that Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān's opponents were familiar with his background and abilities as a Sufi and scholar.<sup>72</sup> Ibrāhīm arrived in Sinnār from his village, Baqādī, but two days later he died of a fever, even before he had met al-Mīrghānī. Ibrāhīm was said to have been warned by the famous holy man Aḥmad w. <sup>c</sup>Isā not to put Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān to the test.<sup>73</sup>

Despite the hostility of the political establishment in Sinnār, Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān won a number of prominent followers. One of these was Aḥmad w. <sup>c</sup>Isā, who became an adherent and a close friend of al-Mīrghānī and his family and who exhorted both his students and ordinary people to join Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān. Among Aḥmad's students

71 *Ibid.*, f. 11; on Musallam, see O'Fahey and Spaulding (1972), 331. Al-Mīrghānī might well have heard of Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Alī's plans, since the invasion was being planned in 1818; see G. Douin, *Histoire du Soudan Egyptien*, 1944, i, 77.

72 The Funj Chronicle describes him as a pupil (*tilmīdh*) of Ibn Idrīs; *Makḥṭūṭa*, 75-6.

73 Ibrāhīm's death was naturally considered as a *karāma* by al-Mīrghānī's followers.

who supported al-Mīrghānī were Ḥamad w. Muḥammad Nūrāyн ‘Amīr, known as al-Šuwayliḥ, and al-Sharīf Ibrāhīm w. Sahnūn.<sup>74</sup>

Muḥammad ‘Uthmān then returned to al-‘Ubayyid where he stayed for a time before travelling north again to the commercial centre, al-Matamma, where he established a mosque and stayed for about a year, winning a considerable following. He recruited Shaykh al-Rayyāḥ, one of al-Matamma’s leading holy men. Like Aḥmad w. ‘Isā, Shaykh al-Rayyāḥ encouraged his students to join Muḥammad ‘Uthmān. Other recruits were Aḥmad al-Tirayfī, with whose wide learning al-Mīrghānī was impressed; ‘Alī al-Tirayfī, an ‘ālim who was said to be famous for his nearly continuous recitation of the Quran, and Muḥammad al-Majdhūb al-Šaghīr.<sup>75</sup>

Muḥammad ‘Uthmān next crossed the river to Shendi, where he stayed for a year and some months. His daughter Umm Kulthūm died and was buried there. He also initiated many followers, including ‘Alī al-Juzūlī and Muḥammad w. Sāttī ‘Alī, who was said to have been initiated by Muḥammad ‘Uthmān following a command of the Prophet. Although Muḥammad w. Sāttī was recruited in Shendi, he was appointed *khalīfat al-khulafā'* for his home area, al-Khandaq in Dongola. Another adherent was al-Mubashshar,<sup>76</sup> who was appointed *imām* of Muḥammad ‘Uthmān’s mosque in Shendi. Among al-Mīrghānī’s followers in Shendi was also Muḥammad ‘Uthmān b. Mubashshar, who accompanied him to al-Tāka, Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup> and thence to Mecca and the Yemen where he joined his master’s teacher, Ibn Idrīs.<sup>77</sup>

Muḥammad ‘Uthmān then moved to al-Dāmar, where he stayed for some time. In al-Dāmar a number of persons were recruited, for instance Muḥammad al-Naṣayḥ, who accompanied his master to al-Jinaydī village, east of the Atbara River, where he was ordered to return to his home village.<sup>78</sup> Al-Mīrghānī had intended to visit Berber and the north,

74 *Makḥṭūṭa*, 75-6, and *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 12 and 33.

75 On al-Majdhūb, see Appendix A.

76 Whose full name is not known, but who is to be distinguished from Muḥammad ‘Uthmān b. Mubashshar.

77 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 15-16. See also Nūr al-Dā‘im (1954), 329, and Maḥmūd (1971), 131. Wad Sāttī (not Wad Sātt as appears in the *Kitāb al-ibāna*) is another example of changing *tariqas* on account of a Prophetic command; he had earlier been a Sammānī.

78 Father of the author of the *Kitāb al-ibāna*; he stayed frequently at al-Saniyya with his master, who on one occasion sent him on a mission to Berber;

but hearing that the Turco-Egyptian expedition had reached Abū Ḥamad in 1821, he changed his mind and went east to al-Tāka. He travelled via Qōz Rajab where he spent some time recruiting followers. He then continued to al-Tāka and was received by its leading *‘ālim*, al-Habīb Ya‘qūb, who ordered all his pupils to be initiated. It was in al-Tāka in eastern Sudan that Muḥammad ‘Uthmān established his own village, al-Saniyya, “the Sublime”, which attracted great numbers of followers from various parts of the Sudan. He told his followers not to be anxious at the coming of the Turco-Egyptian expedition and later gave them a letter of recommendation to Khūrshīd Pasha, the Turkish Governor (1826-38). When Khūrshīd arrived in al-Tāka, al-Mīrghānī’s followers showed him their master’s letter. Khūrshīd treated them kindly and granted them privileged status (*jāh*) which continued until the end of the Turco-Egyptian regime in 1885. Muḥammad ‘Uthmān stayed for a long time at al-Saniyya which, according to Ibn al-Naṣayḥ, became “as if it was his home area”.<sup>79</sup>

Muḥammad ‘Uthmān returned to Mecca via Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup> where he rejoined Aḥmad b. Idrīs. There is evidence to suggest that the opinion that Muḥammad ‘Uthmān visited the Sudan only once is incorrect.<sup>80</sup> Muḥammad ‘Uthmān was to return to the Sudan three times. The next visit was, together with his wife Ruqayya and their son Muḥammad al-Ḥasan, via Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup> to al-Tāka. The second was to Sawākin, shortly after the death of Muḥammad al-Majdhūb al-Ṣaghīr in 1832, where, despite the hostility of al-Majdhūb’s followers, he succeeded in winning a considerable number of followers and establishing several *zāwiyyas*.<sup>81</sup> Muḥammad al-Ṣāfi, the eldest and most learned of Muḥammad ‘Uthmān’s followers in Sawākin, was invested as *khalīfat al-khulafā’* and entrusted with running his master’s *zāwiya*. Muḥammad ‘Uthmān left Sawākin for Mecca shortly before a fracas broke out between his follow-

---

the latter once addressed him, “the *khalīfa* of my *khalīfas* from Fazūghlī to Alexandria”, *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 25-6.

<sup>79</sup> *Ibid.*, f. 19. Khūrshīd campaigned in al-Tāka region in both 1832 and 1834; see Hill (1967), 48-9. Three of al-Mīrghānī’s sons, al-Ḥasan, al-Ḥusayn and Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ died and were buried at al-Saniyya.

<sup>80</sup> See, for example, Trimingham (1949), 232-3; Voll, thesis (1969), 112-3, and Holt and Daly (1979), 42-3. None of these authors had access to the *Kitāb al-ibāna*.

<sup>81</sup> *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 32-4.

ers and the Majdhubiyya adherents.<sup>82</sup> Al-Mirghani's last visit to the Sudan was again from Mecca, travelling together with his son, Muhammād al-Hasan, via Sawākin. It was during this visit that Muhammād 'Uthmān formally appointed his son as his representative in the Sudan (see p. 74).

### *The Establishment of the Khatmiyya*

When was the Khatmiyya established as an independent *ṭariqa*, as the *khātim al-ṭuruq* ("the seal of the orders")? And what was the nature of the spiritual relationship between Ibn Idrīs and al-Mirghani? Neither of these questions can be satisfactorily resolved on the evidence presently available. The letters exchanged between master and pupil suggest a difficult relationship, but since virtually none are dated, their language is frequently obscure and because, as we noted earlier, they have yet to be edited or translated, they are difficult to interpret.

Ibn Idrīs had consented to al-Mirghani's first journey as the result of a Prophetic order. The Funj Chronicle says that al-Mirghani, aged only twenty-six, initiated followers into his "way" (*ṭariquhu* or *ṭariqatuhu*), but gives it no name, while making it clear that he was a pupil (*tilmīdh*) of Ibn Idrīs.<sup>83</sup> The first specific reference to the Khatmiyya *ṭariqa* appears in Ismā'il al-Walī's *Kitāb al-ṣuhūd al-wāfiya*, written in Ramadān 1239/May 1824: "I took the *ṭariqa* from him, that is his *ṭariqa* known as the Khatmiyya."<sup>84</sup> There is no reference to the Khatmiyya in the letters and the matter remains obscure.

The letters portray a concerned and loving master and a pupil seeking advice on both personal and spiritual matters. The titles they use to address each other are indicative of both affection and enormous Sufi status; thus Muhammād 'Uthmān to his master:

*khalifāt al-Rahmān*  
*markaz dā'irat ahl al-īrfān*  
*sultān ḥadrat al-awliyā'*

"*khalīfa* of the Compassionate"  
 "Centre of the circle of the People of knowledge"  
 "Sultan of the assembly of saints"

82 *Ibid.*, ff. 33 and 36.

83 *Makhtūṭa*, 75-6.

84 Al-Walī, K. *al-ṣuhūd*, ms., f. 5.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>āyyat Allāh al-kubrā</i>                            | “The greatest proof of God”                        |
| <i>wazīr nuqṭat al-kamāliyyāt al-<br/>Muḥammadiyya</i> | “wazīr of the summit of<br>Muhammadan perfections” |
| From Ibn Idrīs:  |  |
| <i>min al-wālid lī waladihi</i>                        | “from the father to his son”                       |
| <i>qurrat ḥaynī</i>                                    | “the delight of my eye”                            |
| <i>ghayat al-wilāya al-<br/>Muḥammadiyya</i>           | “summit of Muhammadan sanctity”                    |

Ibn Idrīs was always ready to place his knowledge and counsel at his student's disposal. He regularly provided al-Mīrghānī, and others, with collections of prayers, litanies (*ḥizbs* and *wirds*) and formulae for entering retreat:

We have ordered our brother Ibn Mālik to write the formula of retreat [Ar. *khalwa*] for you. But when he wrote he made many mistakes of language in it, may God guide you to unravel them.<sup>85</sup>

Instruct the brothers in this *dhikr* since its consequences are great.<sup>86</sup>

Aḥmad seems not to have expected al-Mīrghānī to remain in the Sudan for so long. In his letters, he repeatedly asks him to join him in the Ḥijāz. Muḥammad ḤUthmān, in a letter of 1234/1818-9, apologizes for not joining him, justifying his delay by the increase in both his followers and his family. He adds that for financial reasons he would not be able to provide for all of them in the Ḥijāz and concludes by asking his master whether he should bring them or leave them behind. Muḥammad ḤUthmān seems to have been unwilling to leave the Sudan. Thus Aḥmad in Mecca, acknowledging a letter from Muḥammad ḤUthmān dated 26 Muḥarram 1235/14 November 1819, replies that they are expecting his arrival in that year (1819) and adds,

Make haste to come to us however you can. It is now time for you to come. You have the good news of fulfilling your intention. Hasten to the holy and sacred precinct ...<sup>87</sup>

<sup>85</sup> *Majmū‘ jawābāt al-sāda al-‘iżām*, in *Tarjamat al-ustādh Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, ms., f. 109. This is probably a reference to a short treatise by Ibn Idrīs, *Šifat dukhūl al-khalwa*.

<sup>86</sup> *Ibid.*, f. 116.

<sup>87</sup> *Ibid.*, f. 98.

Aḥmad seems to have begun to lose hope of his student's return from the Sudan. Thus he writes,

Then know, May God make it known to you with every goodness, that we have sent you [a letter] this year urging you to come to us. Thus far the occasion for your journey has not arisen because of your pre-occupation with your [affairs] there. And so we have entrusted you to God, May He be Praised and Exalted, that He may compel you to come by an irresistible divine intervention, which can neither be gainsaid, excused nor escaped.<sup>88</sup>

In the same letter, Aḥmad appears to remind his student of his still-subordinate spiritual relationship:

But as for your revelation [*fathukum*] in which you will experience the total revealing [by God of Himself, *al-tajallī al-kullī*] and the lifting of the veil from the kingdom of the heavens and the earth, this will only come about after you have come to us.<sup>89</sup>

Muhammad ʻUthmān finally rejoined his master in Mecca and moved with him to Șabyā in 1243/1827-8. He remained there with his teacher until the latter's death in 1837. After Aḥmad's death, the succession dispute became especially acute between al-Mīrghānī and al-Sanūsī, who both moved, after their teacher's death, to Mecca. There al-Mīrghānī devoted most of his time to establishing his own *tariqa*, the Khatmiyya, as a fully-fledged order with its own doctrine and rules (see Chapters Six and Seven). He also established a number of *zāwiyas* in Mecca, Medina, Jidda and al-Ṭā'if. Inspired by his master's missionary spirit, Muhammad ʻUthmān sent out his sons to preach in different regions. The eldest, Muhammad Sirr al-Khatim (1230/1814-5 to 1280/1863-4) was sent to the Yemen and Ḥadramawt. The second son, Muhammad al-Ḥasan, was appointed as his father's representative in the Sudan.

Like his master, Muhammad ʻUthmān's success drew down upon him the hostility of the Meccan *ʻulamā'*, who forced him to move to his home area in al-Ṭā'if, where he died on 22 Shawwāl 1268/2 May 1852.<sup>90</sup>

88 *Ibid.*, f. 108.

89 *Ibid.*, ff. 109-10.

90 Trimingham (1949), 233.

## Al-Mīrghānī and the Shāyqiyya Region

Muhammad ʻUthmān did not personally visit the Shāyqiyya region. His order was propagated there through a network of local representatives who were recruited mainly from established holy clans and religious teachers. The centres of learning of these families and individuals thus became integrated into the order and provided the basis for its propagation in the region.

Al-Mīrghānī's representatives in the Shāyqiyya region may be divided into four groups. First was those who travelled from their home in the Shāyqiyya region to al-Dabba, where they were recruited and appointed as local representatives, *khalīfas*, in their home areas. One example is Șāliḥ b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān b. Muhammad b. Ḥājj al-Duwayhī, a member of the Duwayhiyya clan. The second group comprises those who received their *ijāzās* without even meeting al-Mīrghānī; an example is Muhammad Khayr b. Muhammad Șāliḥ al-ʻIrāqī, of the ʻIrāqāb of Nūrī. Muhammad ʻUthmān appointed him *khalīfat al-khulafā'*, that is a senior representative, on the basis of his learning, righteousness and piety. He is said to have travelled, at a later stage, to Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup> in order to ask his master's permission to perform the Pilgrimage. Being so permitted, Muhammad Khayr pursued his journey to the Hijāz, where he died and was buried. Other examples are Muhammad Khayr al-Naṣīf and Muhammad Ḥammād, known as al-Shaykh Jiqaydī, two prominent religious teachers of the Naṣīfāb clan of Abū Rannāt Island (see pp. 144-50). Finally, mention should be made of Muhammad w. Ibrāhīm Khuḍr Mattī al-Bidayrī al-Dahmashī, who propagated the Khatmiyya in his home area of al-Arāk, just north of Karīma.<sup>91</sup>

The third group of al-Mīrghānī's local representatives include those who met him in Kordofan, accompanied him on his journeys and stayed with him at his centre, al-Saniyya, before returning home. Among these were Muhammad b. Mālik, commonly known as Wad Mālik, and Muhammad b. ʻAbd al-Halīm, known as *al-naqīb*, a nickname given him by his teacher. Al-Naqīb and Wad Mālik were both ordered by their master to return to their home areas, Kūrtī and Qanatī respectively, to spread the *ṭariqa*. Al-Naqīb's death is regarded as a

91 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 28; interviews 9, 12 and 19.

*karāma* in that he is alleged to have gone to Egypt with the intention of preaching the order there, but did not obtain his master's permission; so he died upon his arrival in Egypt.<sup>92</sup> After al-Naqīb's death, another holy man from the Shāyqiyya region was appointed as *khalīfat al-khulafā'*, namely Mālik w. Jinayd who was directed by al-Mīrghānī to take over. Mālik remained in the office until his death in 1307/1889-90.<sup>93</sup>

The final group comprises those who travelled from the Shāyqiyya region as far as al-Saniyya and Muşsawa<sup>c</sup> to meet al-Mīrghānī and to be initiated by him. One of these was Muḥammad ʻAlī, known as al-Darwīsh, who travelled from his village, al-Zūma, north of Karīma, to Muşsawa<sup>c</sup> where he was initiated, appointed *khalīfa* and then ordered to return to his village.<sup>94</sup>

### *The Causes of al-Mīrghānī's Success*

In his travels, Muḥammad ʻUthmān came into contact with people from many different groups and social classes. He was opposed by some and supported by others. Our concern here is to establish who supported and who opposed him and to attempt to investigate the motives determining their attitudes.

Which groups were attracted to al-Mīrghānī? His missionary activities were especially successful in the northern and eastern Sudan. These two regions were at that time under only the nominal control of the Funj Government. This was probably why the "ancient" orders, which were closely associated with the ruling class, had failed to gain ground there. Most importantly he won the support of the merchant class, figures such as Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ Shādūl of the Khandaq area and members of the Bidayriyya, Hawwāra and Ṭirayfiyya *jallāba* of Kūrtī and Kordofan. The support of this class for the Khatmiyya in the Shāyqiyya region reached its climax in the time of Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. Muḥammad ʻUthmān was also supported by a number of local *khalwa* teachers, some of the major holy families and some tribal leaders. Thus, al-Mīrghānī was backed by the family of Suwār al-Dhahab, who transferred its spiritual loyalty from the Qādiriyya to the

92 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 27-8.

93 *Ibid.*, f. 28.

94 *Ibid.*, ff. 27-8; *Makhtūṭa*, and interview 11.

Khatmiyya. The changing of allegiance from one order to the other was common, not only in the Sudan but throughout the Muslim world.<sup>95</sup> Another example is Ahmad w. ʻIsā, who was originally a Sammānī but abandoned the order for the Khatmiyya.

Al-Mīrghānī's appeal to these scholars and religious families lay perhaps in his personality, abilities as a Sufi and scholar and the doctrine which he propagated. Al-Mīrghānī's background also contributed to his success. He was a member of a family of scholars; his appeal to Ahmad w. ʻIsā, for instance, may have been because al-Mīrghānī's grandfather, ʻAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb al-Mīrghānī, was a teacher of Wad ʻIsā's master, Ahmad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Bashīr. Furthermore, al-Mīrghānī was a leading student of the renowned scholar Ibn Idrīs, who was said, together with his student al-Mīrghānī, to have spoken of Ahmad al-Ṭayyib with great respect.<sup>96</sup> Because al-Mīrghānī and Ahmad al-Ṭayyib had developed very intimate relations, the latter did not oppose the former when he initiated some Sammāniyya into his own order. The relationship between the two orders grew very close in the time of Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, who became a Sammānī himself.

Another factor which contributed to al-Mīrghānī's success was the belief that he had strong blood ties with the Prophet; hence the common phrase, *al-Sayyid Muḥammad ʻUthmān, al [= alladhi] jadduhu an-nabī*, "his ancestor was the Prophet". The claim to Sharifian descent was, of course, common throughout the Islamic world, but al-Mīrghānī's claim seems to have been widely acknowledged as being more elevated than the general pretension to such descent.

Muḥammad ʻUthmān's success may also be attributed to the way he treated his own followers and other holy men. His ḥaḍāra's discipline and the rules which he set for its members also attracted followers. Al-Mīrghānī disliked the exaggerated dress and asceticism (*taqashshuf*) of the dervishes. He exhorted his followers always to maintain a decent appearance. According to the *Kitāb al-ibāna* he established the tradition of granting each of his senior representatives a long robe with long sleeves, usually made of silk or cotton, called *quftān*, and an ordinary outer robe called *jibba*. He used also to give each of them a woollen cloak called *ʻibāya* and a robe called *farajīyya* to be worn in winter time.<sup>97</sup>

95 For West Africa, see Jenkins in Willis, ed. (1979), 51.

96 *Nūr al-Dā'im* (1954), 71-2.

97 *Kitab al-ibāna*, ms., f. 106.

Affiliation with al-Mīrghānī was undoubtedly considered by some of the more ambitious as a step towards advanced education in the school of Ibn Idrīs in the Ḥijāz. Two of Muḥammad ʻUthmān's representatives in the Shendi area went with him to Arabia and joined his master's school in the Yemen.

Al-Mīrghānī attracted a number of holy families in the Shāyqiyya region. According to one informant, most of these families were not affiliated with specific Sufi orders before al-Mīrghānī came to al-Dabba. Most of these holy families were not themselves Shāyqiyya, but mainly Duwayhiyya, ʻIrāqāb, Bidayriyya and Ṣawārda. The appeal of al-Mīrghānī to these families and, at a later stage, to a number of other families and persons, of both Shāyqī and non-Shāyqī origin, should be seen within the context of the political instability and the continuous wars between the Shāyqiyya and their neighbours, and between the various Shāyqiyya clans themselves. More important was the external threat which was represented by the Mamlūk attacks against the Shāyqiyya in 1813, shortly before the coming of al-Mīrghānī, and the Turco-Egyptian invasion in 1820, shortly after his arrival. Al-Mīrghānī, who was a stranger to the Sudan, was politically neutral and was not involved in its society, may have been seen as a "Wise Stranger" who could bring stability to a social order in upheaval and give its ethnic minorities a sense of identity.<sup>98</sup>

Ibn al-Naṣayḥ gives the impression that the time was ripe for al-Mīrghānī's success. A number of prominent Sudanese holy men had allegedly prophesied the coming of Muḥammad ʻUthmān. Among these was a famous holy man of the Shāyqiyya region, Wad al-Karsanī; he is reported to have said,

There will come to this land a new order in accordance with the Book and the Sunna. Whoever accepts it shall be victorious and triumphant. Whoever holds back from it and does not accept it; who greets its followers, but neither joins them nor leaves them shall be saved but excluded [maḥrūm, sc. from the elect]. And whosoever joins and then leaves, shall perish. Our refuge is in God.<sup>99</sup>

Al-Mīrghānī's appeal seems to have been greater to what may be considered, in Sudanese terms, a middle class (traders and urban holy

98 On the concept of "Wise Stranger", see Holt (1973b), 76-8.

99 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff.71-2. There is a tradition among the descendants of Wad al-Karsanī that it was Shaykh Ahmad al-Karsanī of al-Barkal in the Shāyqiyya region who prophesied the coming of al-Mīrghānī. Interview 14.

men), hence his success in trading towns such as al-Matamma, Shendi, al-Dabba and al-Ubayyid. This middle class, seeking for greater Islamic orthodoxy to buttress their position *vis-à-vis* the political elite, would have found al-Mīrghānī's teachings attractive.<sup>100</sup> This suggestion gains support from looking at those who were hostile to him: the *wazīr al-Arbāb* Daf<sup>c</sup> Allāh in Sinnār, Musallam in Kordofan and *makk* Nimr in Shendi - in other words the political establishment.<sup>101</sup>

Muhammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān's willingness to co-operate with the Turco-Egyptians may have been the reason for the defection of two of his principal adherents in the Sudan, Ismā'īl al-Walī and Muḥammad al-Majdhūb al-Şaghīr. The former had been initiated by al-Mīrghānī in Kordofan but in 1241/1825-6 broke away from his teacher and established his own order, the Ismā'īliyya. Ismā'īl justified his defection by a divine order (*al-amr al-ilāhī*) and permission from the Prophet (*al-idhn al-nabawī*).<sup>102</sup> Al-Majdhūb's defection was also based on a Prophetic order; while in Medina, the Prophet appeared to him, ordering him to abandon the Khatmiyya and return to the order of his grandfathers, that is the Shādhiliyya.<sup>103</sup> There may well have been political motives in both cases. Both may have disliked their master's willingness to deal with the Turco-Egyptian regime, which may have been viewed by them, as by most of the Sudanese, as alien and oppressive. Al-Walī was imprisoned for three days by the Turco-Egyptian Government; the reasons for this are not given in Ismā'īliyya's sources, but according to the *Kitāb al-ibāna* al-Walī entered into a series of spiritual states (*ahwāl*) to the point where he claimed the sun would not rise or set without his command and it was because of these ideas that he was imprisoned.<sup>104</sup> Mahmoud Abdalla Ibrahim notes that by 1239/1823-4, the writings of al-Walī:

100 On socio-economic developments in this period, see J. L. Spaulding, "Slavery, land tenure and social class in the northern Turkish Sudan", *IJAHS*, xv/ 1, 1982, 1-20.

101 Whose downfall was attributed by Ibn Idrīs to their hostility to al-Mīrghānī; *Makhtūṭa*, 74.

102 Al-Walī, *K. al-<sup>c</sup>uhūd*, ms., ff.6-7.

103 *Makhtūṭa*, 111.

104 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 10.

Betrayed a feeling of frustration and dissatisfaction with the religious and political situation around him. His *Intizhām al-riḍāsa* was an expression of his desire for change.<sup>105</sup>

Despite the hostility of the ruling class and political instability, especially at the time of his first visit, al-Mīrghānī had laid the foundations of the Khatmiyya. He had created a network of qualified and reliable local representatives; and he had founded the village of al-Saniyya (later renamed al-Khatmiyya) as a seat for the order. Al-Mīrghānī thus paved the way for his son and representative in the Sudan, Muḥammad al-Ḥasan, who was to consolidate the position of the Khatmiyya in the Sudan, especially in the Shāyqiyya region.

105 Ibrāhīm, thesis (1980), 58.

# 4

## THE CONSOLIDATION OF THE KHATMIYYA

### *Muhammad al-Hasan al-Mirghani*

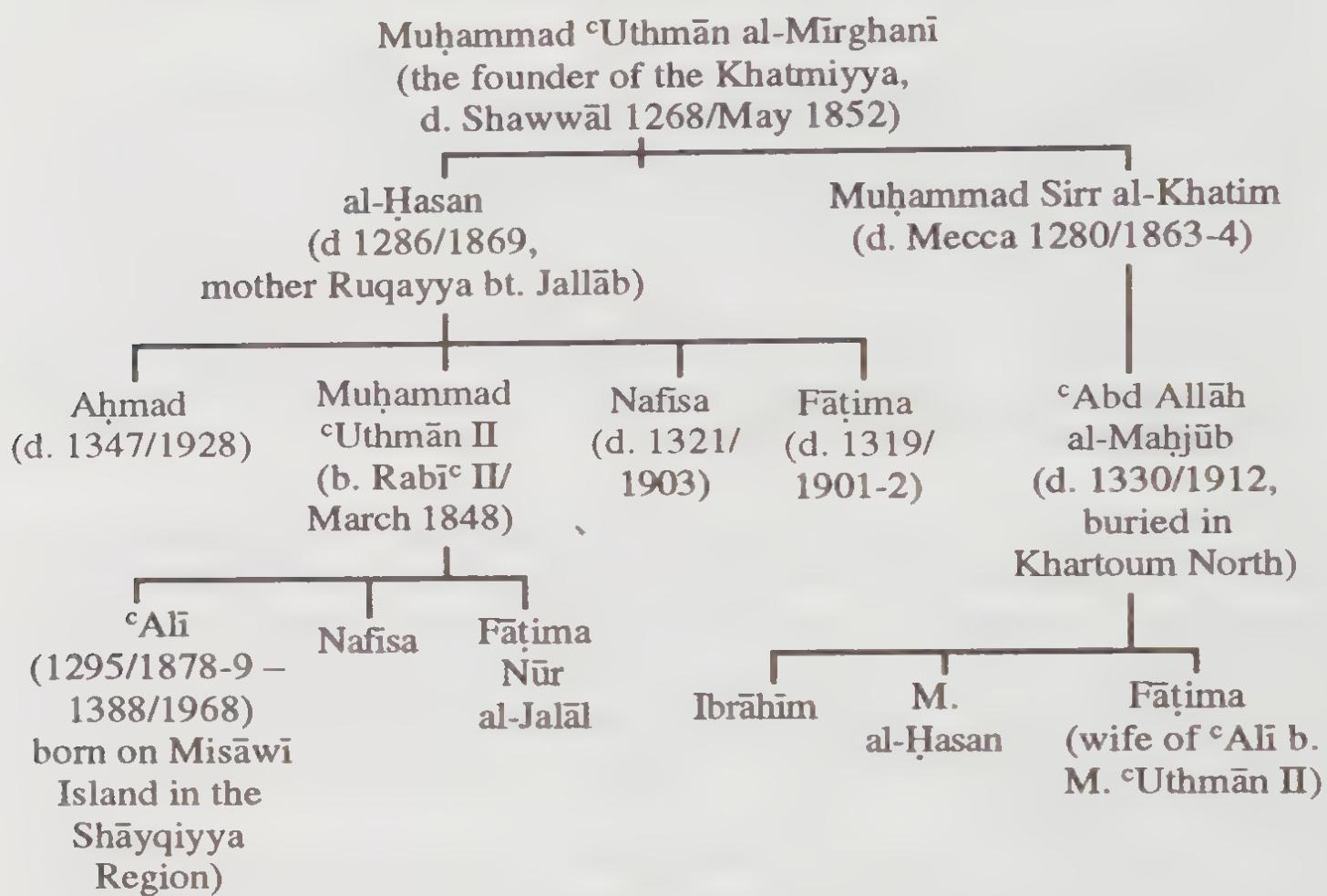
After Muhammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Mirghānī's death on 22 Shawwāl/2 May 1852, the headship of the Khatmiyya passed to his eldest son, Muhammad, known as *Sirr al-khatim*.<sup>1</sup> Upon the latter's death, the *ṭariqa* split into four regional branches each with its own shaykh. Despite this regionalization the Khatmiyya maintained a considerable degree of unity through shared doctrines and intermarriage within the Mirghānī family.

The Sudan branch was established by Muhammad al-Hasan b. Muhammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Mirghānī, commonly known in the Sudan as *al-sayyid al-Hasan* and sometimes as *Abū Jallābiyya*.<sup>2</sup> He was born at Bāra in Kordofan on 12 Jumādā II 1235/28 March 1819, shortly before the Turco-Egyptian invasion.<sup>3</sup> The news of al-Hasan's birth reached his father while the latter was in the Shendi area.<sup>4</sup>

1 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 44; see also NRO, Intel. 2/32/270, p. 27, and Trimingham (1949), 233. Hill (1967), 274, confuses Muhammad *Sirr al-Khatim* with his son and namesake who died in 1917. The latter was generally known as Muhammad al-Mirghānī to distinguish him from his father.

2 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 53; Muṣṭafā Ibrāhīm Tāhā, "al-Adab al-sha<sup>c</sup>bī <sup>c</sup>inda'l-Shāyqiyya", MA thesis, University of Khartoum 1967, 85, and Qurashī Muhammad Hasan, *Ma<sup>c</sup>a shu<sup>c</sup>ara<sup>c</sup> al-madā<sup>c</sup>ih*, 2nd edn, Khartoum 1972, 241. The nickname *Abū Jallābiyya* alludes to the fact that he wore a *jallābiyya*, which was not common in the Sudan at that time; see H.B. Barclay, *Buuri al Lamaab*, Ithaca 1964, 8.

3 Ahmad b. Idrīs b. al-Naṣayḥ, *Manāqib al-sayyid al-Hasan al-Mirghānī*, ms., f. 4, and *idem*, *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 49. Later sources give different dates; Zaghlūl Muhammad al-Waṭānī, *Abṭāl al-Khatniyya*, i, Cairo 1953, 15, gives c. 1235/1819-20, and Muhammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Amawī, "Dhikrā

DIAGRAM 3. *The Mīrghānī Family: The Sudan Branch*

In about 1822-3, *al-ḥājj* Idrīs w. Jallāb, a maternal uncle of al-Ḥasan, took him and his mother to Dongola and thence to the Hijāz via Upper Egypt. Upon reaching Mecca they found that his father had left for Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup>. They stayed for some time with Ahmād b. Idrīs; al-Ḥasan's mother asked Ahmād to pray to God to bless her son. Ahmād is reported to have replied,

al-Sayyid al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī", *Sawt al-Sūdān*, 8 February 1963, proposes 1234/1818-9.

4 There is a popular tradition that a holy man in Bāra, Shaykh Muṣṭafā, prophesied that Ruqayya would marry a Sharīf from Mecca and would be the mother of a saint. Another tradition has it that Usuman dan Fodio (1754-1817), having heard of the prophecy, went to Bāra to marry Ruqayya, but found her already married to al-Mīrghānī; interview 23.

Rejoice, for your son is the leader who holds the reins of the most holy caravan [al-qāfila al-qudsiyya].<sup>5</sup>

Al-ḥājj Idrīs then took al-Ḥasan and his mother to Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup> to join Muḥammad ʿUthmān. After some time in Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup>, the latter travelled with them to al-Tāka, where he directed al-ḥājj Idrīs to escort al-Ḥasan and his mother back to Bāra. In about 1249/1833, when al-Ḥasan was fourteen years of age, he travelled, together with his mother and some of his maternal uncles, via Berber and Sawākin to join his father in Mecca.

In the Ḥijāz, al-Ḥasan memorized the Quran under a religious teacher from Medina, Muḥammad Shaykh al-Dalā'il. He was also thoroughly educated by his father in a wide range of Islamic subjects. He was taught by a woman, a former student of his great-grandfather ʿAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb al-Mīrghānī, a litany known as *wird al-basmala*. Al-Ḥasan recited the *wird* continuously for nineteen days before being ordered in a vision by al-Khadīr to recite instead another *wird* called *Yā ḥayy, Yā qayyūm*.<sup>6</sup> Al-Ḥasan spent eight months wandering in the mountains between Mecca and al-Tā'if preoccupied with the recitation of his new litany. In a further vision of al-Khadīr, he was ordered to enter into a spiritual retreat (*khalwa*) in Mecca. Al-Ḥasan then travelled to Medina, where he performed the visitation to the grave of the Prophet. Al-Ḥasan's long stay in Medina worried his father, who wrote to him several times asking him to return to Mecca. Al-Ḥasan finally did so and afterwards left with his father for Sawākin, where they stayed for two or three months. His father ordered him to travel throughout the Sudan to propagate the order and act as his representative there.

As has been noted by Voll, it was al-Ḥasan who successfully consolidated the Khatmiyya, especially in the northern and eastern Sudan.<sup>7</sup> The success of this consolidation can be seen in the ability of the Khatmiyya to face challenges to its influence, even in al-Ḥasan's lifetime. Other Sufi orders which, like the Khatmiyya, originated within the Idrīsī tradition, also found their way into the northern Sudan (see below, Chapter Five). None succeeded in attracting as large a number of followers as the Khatmiyya. The fact that the Khatmiyya came into the region before the others may have helped. Nevertheless, the reasons for

5 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 50-1.

6 *Ibid.*, ff. 51-2, and *Manāqib al-sayyid al-Ḥasan*, ms., ff. 4-5.

7 Voll, thesis (1969), 153.

its success need to be studied within the context of the conditions prevailing at the time of the Khatmiyya's advent. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī had propagated his ṭarīqa during the last years of the Funj Sultanate, which were dominated by war and political disorder. Conditions had changed by the time al-Ḥasan arrived as his father's representative. The Turco-Egyptian invaders were in the process of destroying the traditional order in the Sudan, groups such as the Shāyqiyya being brought under the control of the central Government. To these Shāyqiyya, and indeed to most of the riverain communities which suffered from the invaders, al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī came as a holy man with charismatic appeal. They may have found in his ṭarīqa a substitute for their traditional institutions.

Muḥammad ʻUthmān, who, like his master Ibn Idrīs, kept aloof from the rulers of the day, exhorted his son al-Ḥasan not to follow in his footsteps in this respect and urged him to associate with the Turco-Egyptian Government and to behave politely towards it.<sup>8</sup>

Following his father's orders, al-Ḥasan apparently moved to al-Saniyya, the order's headquarters, at the foot of Kasala Mountain, probably in 1840, the same year as a Turco-Egyptian expedition to the area. Although this campaign, which was led by ʻAhmad Pasha Abū Widān, the then Governor-general, failed to achieve its main goal (the complete subjugation of the Hadanduwa) it succeeded in establishing the town of Kasala as the main administrative centre in the eastern Sudan.<sup>9</sup>

A contemporary European source records that during his war against the Hadanduwa, Abū Widān requested a holy man at Kasala to use his

8 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 52. Ibn al-Naṣayḥ's wording may have been influenced by the audience for whom the *K. al-Ibāna* was written (see p. 195). Muḥammad ʻUthmān's attitude towards the Turks is alluded to in an undated letter (early nineteenth century) from a Khatmiyya *khalīfa*, al-ḥājj Muḥammad, to another Khatmiyya *khalīfa* in the Dongola region, Muḥammad b. al-Ṣādiq. The former reported that Muḥammad ʻUthmān had told his son, "The Turks are coming here [i.e. Sawākin]. He [Muḥammad ʻUthmān] said to us [al-Ḥasan], 'If they [the Turks] come here, I shall leave and travel to Muṣṣawa'". Al-Ḥasan continued that his father would move on to Sinkāt if the Turks reached Muṣṣawa; see NRO, Misc., 1/27/376, Letter from al-ḥājj Muḥammad ... to *al-khalīfa* Muḥammad b. al-Ṣādiq.

9 On Abū Widān's campaign, see Holt and Daly (1979), 64-8. Our primary sources, the *Kitāb al-ibāna* and *Maṇāqib al-sayyid al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī*, do not give a date for al-Ḥasan's arrival at al-Saniyya; later sources suggest 1840, see G.J. Fleming, "Kasala", *SNR*, v, 1922, 69.

influence to persuade their chief, Shaykh Muḥammad Dīn, to submit to the Government. According to Hill, the translator and editor of this source, this holy man may have been Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī.<sup>10</sup> However, Muḥammad ʻUthmān was not in the Kasala area at the time, having returned from Sawākin to the Ḥijāz; the holy man was more probably al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. Although Abū Widān had assured the holy man that no harm would befall Muḥammad Dīn, the latter was arrested, shackled and sent to Khartoum where he died of smallpox in the following year.<sup>11</sup> It was perhaps because of Abū Widān's deceitful behaviour that his relations with al-Ḥasan are said to have been hostile.

Al-Ḥasan then began an intensive missionary tour which covered all the regions where his father had followers. Al-Ḥasan's first visit was to Berber, where he was warmly welcomed by his father's followers and representatives. His reception was so enthusiastic that it aroused the suspicions of the Governor of Berber, who relayed them to Abū Widān. The latter, who was on tour in the Nuba mountains in Kordofan, promised the Governor that he would bring al-Ḥasan under control. Al-Ḥasan, who had arrived in Khartoum, was informed by some of his followers of Abū Widān's intention, but the latter died in Ramadān 1259/September/October 1843, immediately after his return from Kordofan.<sup>12</sup>

While in Berber district, al-Ḥasan appointed a number of local representatives. Among these was Aḥmad b. Muḥammad al-Naṣayḥ, known as Aḥmad b. Idrīs al-Rubāṭābī, who was appointed a *khalīfat al-khulafā'* like his father, who had been invested with the same office by Muḥammad ʻUthmān. Aḥmad is said to have become a close confidant of his master. This association was cemented by al-Ḥasan's marriage into Aḥmad's family. It was by this Rubāṭābī wife, who moved to live with al-Ḥasan in Shendi and later al-Saniyya, that al-Ḥasan became the father of a son and three daughters.<sup>13</sup> Al-Naṣayḥ was a poet and the au-

10 Hill (1970), 94.

11 *Kitāb al-Ibāna*, ms., f. 52.

12 *Ibid.*, f. 53; see also *Taṛīkh mulūk al-Sūdān* (1947), 33.

13 While in the village of al-Jiwayr in the Shendi area, al-Ḥasan married a second wife who was later to become the mother of his daughter Fāṭima (d. 1319/1901-2). Nafisa and her sister Fāṭima were later to marry their cousins ʻAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb b. Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim I and Bakrī b. Jaʻfar b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī I, respectively. See interviews 17 and 23 and

thor of some devotional works. Specifically, he is known for his works the *Kitāb al-ibāna al-nūriyya fī shā' n ṣāhib al-ṭariqa al-Khatmiyya* and *Manāqib al-sayyid al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī*. Al-Naṣayḥ's loyalty to the Khatmiyya continued after his master's death on 18 Sha'ban 1286/23 November 1869, especially after the outbreak of the Mahdiyya.

Al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī maintained close relations with a number of contemporary holy men and families. He made a prolonged stay at Qubbat Khōjalī, in the present-day Khartoum North. While al-Ḥasan was at Qubbat Khōjalī, a number of Shaykh Khōjalī's descendants abandoned their original ṭariqa, the Shādhiliyya, for the Khatmiyya. This Khōjalī branch of the Shādhiliyya had begun to lose momentum after Shaykh Khōjalī's death. After the defeat of the Shāyqiyya by the Turco-Egyptians, 400 Shāyqiyya had joined the invaders as irregular soldiers. After the punitive campaign of the *daftardār*, which ravaged most of the riverain communities, the ḡAbdallāb lands at Qarī and Ḥalfāyat al-Mulūk were granted to the Shāyqiyya in return for their support.<sup>14</sup> Undoubtedly, these losses had affected the Mahas and their holy men, whose influence had been largely bound to the ḡAbdallāb and Funj regimes. Furthermore, in 1240/1824-5 the *daftardār* had destroyed the mosque of a famous Mahāsī holy man, Shaykh Arbāb w. Kāmil w. *al-fakī* ḡAlī, a great-grandson of Shaykh Arbāb al-ḡAqā'id, and then brutally executed Arbāb himself with a cannon.<sup>15</sup>

Within the context of these grim events, the Khōjalāb, according to a descendant, changed their spiritual allegiance from the Shādhiliyya to the Khatmiyya because they had been impressed by al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī.<sup>16</sup> According to Voll, this change was motivated by the desire of Shaykh Khōjalī's descendants to benefit from al-Mīrghānī's association with the Turco-Egyptian Government, whose centre of administration was just across the river from their village.<sup>17</sup>

The ties of the Khōjalāb with the Khatmiyya were consolidated by al-Ḥasan's marriage to Fāṭima bt. Muḥammad al-Amīn (known as al-ḡAjab) b. Tāhā, the future mother of al-Ḥasan's sons Aḥmad and Muḥammad ḡUthmān II. Shaykh al-Amīn, a brother of Fāṭima, granted

letter, dated 20.7.1984, to the present writer from ḡAlī al-Shaykh Jiqaydī. See also *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 55-6.

14 Interview 4; see also Lobban, thesis (1973), 48-9.

15 *Makhtūṭa*, 97.

16 Interview 4.

17 Voll, thesis (1969), 230.

him an estate on which he built a *khalwa* and a grotto (*ghār*) for his private worship and other spiritual purposes.<sup>18</sup>

Al-Hasan also initiated a number of other Mahās holy men living at the Khōjalāb village. Among these was Abū Bakr Muḥammad al-Mut̄ārid b. Abī'l-Mācāli b. Ḥamad w. Umm Maryūm. Abū Bakr, commonly known as Wad al-Mut̄ārid, was also related through his mother, Rābi'a bt. al-Badrī, to another famous holy man, Shaykh Khōjali b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān. Abū Bakr, who was a Quranic teacher and was appointed a *khalifa* by al-Hasan, accompanied his master on his journeys through the northern and eastern Sudan. He later settled on Misāwī Island in the Shāyqiyya region and married locally. He fathered several sons, including Muḥammad, ʻUthmān, ʻAbd Allāh and Muḥammad al-Hasan. Misāwī Island, which was (and still is) one of the main Khatmiyya centres in the Shāyqiyya area, was to be the birthplace of Sayyid ʻAlī, a grandson of al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī, who became one of the principal Sudanese religious figures after the defeat of the Mahdist state in 1898 and until the time of his death in 1968.

Abū Bakr was a man of letters and a talented poet, composing a number of Sufi poems or songs (*qaṣā'id*) and songs of praise (*madā'ih*), which are still popular among the followers of the order. Learning of al-Hasan's death on 23 November 1869, Abū Bakr and several followers, travelled from the Shāyqiyya region to al-Saniyya to offer his condolences to the Mīrghānī family and the senior representatives of the order. He lamented his master's death in a number of elegies.<sup>19</sup>

Abū Bakr's allegiance to the Khatmiyya continued until his death in 1884. Like most of the Khatmiyya, he refused to support the Mahdist cause. According to oral sources, Aḥmad al-Huday, a member of the Sawarāb branch of the Shāyqiyya and a Mahdist *amīr*, forced Abū Bakr, together with a number of Khatmiyya local representatives, to join him in 1884 in an attack on Muṣṭafā Pasha Yāwar, the Governor of Dongola. The first battle took place at al-Karad, just north of al-Dabba; Abū Bakr, together with several Khatmiyya *khalifas* and followers, were killed in the battle.<sup>20</sup>

18 Interview 4; see also al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 49.

19 Interviews 10, 19 and 23. For examples of Abū Bakr's poetry, see *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 59-63, and *Majmū'at al-nafahāt al-rabbāniyya* (1370/1950), 245-6.

20 Interviews 6, 16 and 23; see also Hill (1967), 196.

### *Al-Hasan and his Contemporaries*

According to *Inshiqāq al-qamar*, al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī frequently visited the village of al-Kabbāshī with a large group of his followers. Al-Hasan was respected by al-Kabbāshī and his adherents and they used to exchange correspondence on various religious matters. This relationship continued even after the death of both al-Hasan and al-Kabbāshī himself. Shaykh Ibrāhīm w. Ahmād, commonly known as Abū Nafīsa (1871-1951), a Sufi poet and leading follower of the Kabbāshī branch of the Qādiriyya, composed a poem in praise of al-Hasan, referring to him as *al-wasīla*, the intermediary with God.<sup>21</sup>

Al-Hasan also had close ties with al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd w. Badr. Muḥammad ‘Uthmān al-Mīrghānī, who had met al-‘Ubayd in Mecca, is said to have prophesied that upon the latter's return to the Sudan he should find a tree filled with flies where he would establish his religious centre. Thus, the establishment of al-‘Ubayd's *khalwa* and Sufi centre at Umm Ḏubbān (lit. “the mother of flies”), near the present-day Khartoum North, was considered as one of al-Mīrghānī's numerous miracles.<sup>22</sup>

Al-Hasan's time also saw the abandonment of the Qādiriyya for the Khatmiyya by the successors of the famous Qādirī Shaykh, Idrīs w. al-Arbāb. This family, like the descendants of Shaykh Khōjalī, were at a low ebb during the first years of Turco-Egyptian rule. Their religious centre at al-‘Aylafūn had been sacked during the *daftardār*'s reprisal campaign. They also faced the rivalry of al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd, whose centre at Umm Ḏubbān was very close to that of Shaykh Idrīs. As Voll has suggested, the descendants of Shaykh Idrīs might have felt the need for Khatmiyya support in their competition with Shaykh w. Badr.<sup>23</sup>

Relations between the Khatmiyya and the Sammāniyya were consolidated under al-Hasan. Al-Hasan was a frequent visitor to the Sammāniyya centre at Umm Marriḥ, north of Omdurmān, where he used to spend hours inside the tomb of Ahmad al-Ṭayyib. According to

21 Al-Kabbāshī (1971), 16-9, and al-Bashīr (1976), 274.

22 J. Reid, *Tribes and Prominent Families in the Blue Nile Province*, Khartoum 1935, 70. This centre is now known as Umm Ḏawnbān.

23 Voll, thesis (1969), 230.

*Azāhīr al-riyād*, al-Hasan was initiated into the Sammāniyya by Shaykh Ḥasib b. Imām al-Maghribī, a student of Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib. Al-Hasan began to initiate people into the Sammāniyya as well as into his own ṭariqa. Moreover, he ordered his own followers to copy the *Rātib al-saṣāda*, which is a collection of prayers composed by Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib, to be used together with the Khatmiyya devotions.<sup>24</sup> Al-Mīrghānī was also friendly with the Sammāniyya branch of Shaykh al-Qurashī w. al-Zayn (d. 1878) of the Ḥalāwiyyīn in the Gezira. While in the Gezira, al-Hasan paid a visit to Shaykh al-Qurashī during which he copied more of the Sammāniyya teachings.<sup>25</sup>

Al-Hasan visited Bāra in Kordofan and met his maternal relatives and his father's local representatives and followers. He also visited al-Ubayyid, where he faced a certain amount of hostility from his father's former student, Ismā‘il al-Walī. The *Kitāb al-ibāna* gives few details but claims that despite his attitude towards his master's son, al-Walī remained loyal to the Khatmiyya.<sup>26</sup> Even after he had broken away from the Khatmiyya and founded his own order, al-Walī continued to initiate followers into the two ṭariqas. This practice is said to have been kept up by al-Walī's son and successor, Muḥammad al-Makkī (1237/1821-2 to 1324/1906).<sup>27</sup>

Al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī was on friendly terms with the followers of Aḥmad b. Idrīs, especially Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd. He also maintained close relations with his brothers and other members of the Mīrghānī family, who, because of the deeply-rooted belief in their hereditary *baraka*, enjoyed equal veneration in all areas where the order had followers. This relationship was cemented by marriage connections (see p. 77, n. 13). Al-Hasan exchanged letters with these relatives, discussing with them religious as well as personal matters.

Although al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī never left the Sudan after his appointment as his father's representative there, he was regularly visited by his brothers and relatives who lived outside the Sudan. His brother Ja‘far stayed with him from 1275/1858-9 to 1277/1860-1. Ja‘far was warmly welcomed and enjoyed the hospitality of the followers of the order; his letter to the followers of the Khatmiyya in the Abū Rannāt

24 Nūr al-Dā'im (1954), 73 and 285-6.

25 *Ibid.*, 286.

26 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 11.

27 Al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 28-9.

area in the Shāyqiyya region confirms that he had received gifts from them.<sup>28</sup>

Al-Hasan enjoyed great social status and political influence. He was frequently asked by the Government to intervene to settle disputes. He played a significant role as an intermediary during the serious mutiny of the *jihādiyya* at Kasala in 1864-5.<sup>29</sup> In return for his support for the Government, al-Hasan was granted privileges and his centre of learning at al-Saniyya was subsidized. Al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī used to receive a monthly subsidy of 250 Egyptian piasters and four *ardabbs* (750 litres) of sorghum. Following al-Hasan's death, Ja'far Pasha Mažhar, the Governor-general, suggested to the Khedive that the Government should continue this subsidy to al-Hasan's two sons, Aḥmad and Muḥammad ʻUthmān II, their two sisters and mothers.<sup>30</sup>

Although the Khatmiyya supported the Government and enjoyed the latter's patronage, the relationship between them was not always cordial. Al-Hasan did not involve himself directly in politics; he thus laid the foundation of the strategy of not openly involving themselves in politics that was to be maintained by his sons and their descendants to the present day.

### *Al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī and the Shāyqiyya Region*

Al-Hasan's travels included the Shāyqiyya region, which had not been visited by his father. The Khatmiyya had been propagated there by local representatives, drawn from religious families in the region.

The Khatmiyya had not consolidated themselves among the Shāyqiyya before the arrival of al-Hasan. The destruction of the traditional system by the Turco-Egyptian invaders had indirectly contributed to the spread of the Khatmiyya. This may be illustrated by the case of the Ḥamadūiyāb holy family of Nūrī. This family had enjoyed consid-

<sup>28</sup> *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 46-7, the letter of Sayyid Ja'far al-Mīrghānī is in the possession of *khalīfa* ʻAlī Muḥammad al-Shaykh Jiqaydī, Kobar, Khartoum North.

<sup>29</sup> G. Douin, *Histoire du Regne du khédive Ismaïl*, Cairo 1936, iii/1, 175-200; see also *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 55.

<sup>30</sup> A letter from Ja'far Pasha Mažhar to the Khedive Ismā'il, ENA, Cairo, *maṣīyya Turkī*, case ḥāṣ/2, 46, document no. 361. The letter is published in ʻAbd al-Majīd (1949), iii, 178.

erable influence during the Funj period and had been granted estates and privileges by both the Funj sultans and the *Shāyqiyya mālik*s. This is perhaps why this family was at the time of Muḥammad ʻUthmān's visit reluctant to abandon the Qādiriyya. The Ḥamadtūiyāb may also have felt that affiliation to a ḥarīqa led by a Sufi and scholar such as Muḥammad ʻUthmān would place them in a subordinate position.

By the time of al-Ḥasan's visit and prolonged stay in the *Shāyqiyya* region in the early 1840s, the Turco-Egyptian administration had already been established. It was evident that al-Ḥasan was a very influential holy man, who enjoyed political as well as religious prestige. The Ḥamadtūiyāb might have felt, as several other religious families did, that in the changed political circumstances it would be advantageous to join the Khatmiyya. This decision may have been prompted by the fact that the Ḥamadtūiyāb's neighbours, the ʻIrāqāb of Nūrī, who had joined the Khatmiyya at the time of Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī's visit to al-Dabba in about 1815 and had been invested with the office of *khalīfat al-khulafā*<sup>31</sup>, began to enjoy great religious influence. This office gave the ʻIrāqāb considerable religious authority over a number of holy families in the *Shāyqiyya* region.<sup>31</sup>

Thus, according to an oral tradition among the Ḥamadtūiyāb, their ancestors abandoned the Qādiriyya for the Khatmiyya as a result of a Prophetic order. Muḥammad Karrār b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān Muḥammad Madānī (known as al-Nāṭiq) saw a vision in which he was ordered by the Prophet to accept initiation into the Khatmiyya by al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, a justification which was not, of course, unique to the Ḥamadtūiyāb.

Muḥammad Karrār, who was appointed a *khalīfa* by al-Ḥasan, had been educated in the family's centre at Nūrī. Upon his death he was succeeded as *khalīfa* by his son, ʻAbd al-Rahmān, whose period of office continued until his death in the last years of the nineteenth century.

While in Nūrī, al-Ḥasan also initiated other members of the Ḥamadtūiyāb, among whom were Shaykh w. Ibrāhīm, al-ʻAbbās Madānī and ʻAbd al-Rahmān al-Nāṭiq. However, from al-Ḥasan's letter of 10 Rabīʻ I 1283/23 July 1866 to the Ḥamadtūiyāb it would seem that the Khatmiyya order was not yet well established among them and its rituals not yet systematically practised. Al-Ḥasan thus also ap-

pointed Hamadtū b. Muḥammad Madanī al-Nāṭiq as *khalīfa* and entrusted him with the duty of the proper establishment of the *ṭariqa* among his family. In the same letter al-Ḥasan exhorted the rest of the Ḥamadtūiyāb to give their support to his new representative.<sup>32</sup>

Al-Ḥasan made a prolonged visit to al-Zūma, north of Karīma. He was welcomed by Muḥammad Aḥmad and Idrīs, sons and successors of Muḥammad ʻAlī, known as al-Darwīsh, who had joined the Khatmiyya at the time of Muḥammad ʻUthmān and who died while on the pilgrimage to Mecca. The family of these two *khalīfas*, commonly known as Awlād al-Darwīsh, played a significant role in consolidating the Khatmiyya in the Shāyqiyya region. Their efforts were enhanced by al-Ḥasan's prolonged stay and marriage into the influential family of Wad al-Zūma. A number of al-Zūma's other holy families and individuals joined the Khatmiyya. Among these was ʻAlī Muḥammad w. al-Tīkal, who became one of the main Khatmiyya supporters in the Shāyqiyya area. His descendants are still today (1982) influential in the order.

During his stay in al-Zūma, al-Ḥasan was given plots of land and a number of palm trees by his followers. His stone house there, commonly known as *qal’at al-Sayyid al-Ḥasan*, and its open space where he used to lead the prayers, are still places of visitation (*ziyāra*) for the followers.<sup>33</sup>

Another Khatmiyya centre which was also visited by al-Ḥasan was that of the Naḍīfāb of Abū Rannāt Island. This community is discussed in greater detail below (pp. 144-50).

Al-Ḥasan also initiated members of the Rikābiyya holy clan who lived at al-Karāfāb near al-Qurayr. Their earlier association with the Khatmiyya received renewed impetus through al-Ḥasan's visit. Among those initiated was Shaykh Nāfiʻ b. al-Amīn, a descendant of Ibrāhīm al-Būlād. While al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī was in the Shāyqiyya region, Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd arrived from the Hijāz to propagate the teachings of Ibn Idrīs on the grounds that he was the latter's legitimate successor. The followers of the Khatmiyya claimed throughout the region that he was a heretic. Al-Rashīd had in fact been accused in 1273/1856-7 of heresy by the board of *ʻulamā* in Mecca but had successfully rebutted the claim. Having heard of his followers' hostility to al-Rashīd, al-Ḥasan ordered Nāfiʻ to visit al-Rashīd in his home village, al-Kurū,

32 Interviews 20 and 25; see also Bergen NO 163. 8/6, letter from Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī to the Ḥamadtūiyāb of Nūrī.

33 Interviews 11, 23 and personal observation (1982).

north of Karīma, and investigate the matter. Nāfi<sup>c</sup> was cordially received by al-Rashīd and his followers, and eventually accepted instruction from him into the teachings of Ibn Idrīs. Upon his return to al-Karāfāb, Nāfi<sup>c</sup> reported what had happened to al-Ḥasan. The latter expressed his admiration for al-Rashīd and ordered his followers not to insult him.<sup>34</sup>

Another Khatmiyya centre which was frequently visited by al-Ḥasan was al-Ghurayba, just south of Kūrtī. Al-Ghurayba's ties with the Khatmiyya had already been established when Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān went there. At the time of al-Ḥasan's visit, the affairs of the Khatmiyya were administered by *khalīfat al-khulafā*<sup>3</sup> Mālik b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Jinayd (d. 1307/1889-90), who had been invested with the office by the founder himself. Mālik was assisted by a number of *khalīfas*, who included were Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān, Sīd Aḥmad al-Naqīb, Aḥmad and Muḥammad Ma<sup>c</sup>rūf and the sons of Ḥāmid al-Muftī, Muḥammad, <sup>c</sup>Umar and Maḥmūd. This latter son was also responsible for the teaching of the Quran and Quranic sciences in the *khalwa* of al-Ghurayba; he was moreover the *muftī* and the *ma<sup>3</sup>dhūn* of the area.<sup>35</sup>

During his stay at al-Ghurayba, al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī appointed a number of new *khalīfas*; among them were the two brothers of Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān and Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim, who, having received their education in al-Ghurayba, established their own Quranic schools at Huzayma in the Shāyqiyya region and Kasala, respectively. Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Ṣāfi was a frequent visitor to the headquarters of the order in the eastern Sudan, especially after his brother, Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim, had established his religious school in Kasala.<sup>36</sup>

Al-Ḥasan also visited Kūrtī, which was at that time a substantial trading centre with about seventy-five large-scale merchants. There, he initiated members of the trading community of Bidayriyya and Ṭirayfiyya origin. One of these was Kanbāl Ḥamad, who was the head merchant of Kūrtī, trading in gum arabic and ostrich feathers. Kanbāl, like

34 NRO, Misc., 1/18/208, *K. fī dhikrat al-sayyid Ghulām Allāh*, ms., ff. 43-4.

35 Interview 6. See also Bergen NO 167. 9/1, letter, Dhū'l-hijja 1272/August-September 1856, from al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī to the people of al-Ghurayba.

36 Interview 6. See also *Ta<sup>3</sup>rikh al-khulafā*<sup>3</sup> (in the Ghurayba area), ms. Bergen NO 169.9/3. Presents from al-Ghurayba brought by Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Ṣāfi are acknowledged in a letter from al-Ḥasan; see n. 35 above.

several other local Khatmiyya representatives, was killed in the sack of Kūrtū by the forces of Muṣṭafā Yāwar in 1884.<sup>37</sup>

There is a popular tradition among the Khatmiyya concerning the relationship of the Kawārtā with al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī; al-Ḥasan returned the hospitality of the Kawārtā by praying to God to bless their trade. The subsequent flourishing of the Kawārtā's commercial activities, especially in the time of Kanbāl's sons and successor, Ḥasan (c. 1845-1933), was attributed by many to al-Mīrghānī's supplications.

Eventually, al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī returned to the eastern Sudan where he continued his efforts to consolidate the Khatmiyya. While on a visit to Jabal Taqorba in the Bani ʿĀmir area, he died of a fever on 18 Shaʿbān 1286/23 November 1869. His body was carried by his followers to Kasala where it was buried at the village of al-Saniyya. He left two sons, Aḥmad and Muḥammad ʿUthmān, and two daughters, Nafisa and Fāṭima. A tomb was constructed over his grave and a large mosque was built in his memory by his son, Muḥammad ʿUthmān.<sup>38</sup>

### *The Causes of al-Ḥasan's Success*

Al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī consolidated the position of the Khatmiyya among the Shāyqiyya. Was his success primarily because he was seen as favoured by the authorities of the day? Or was it because he was a charismatic figure in the Sudanese holy man tradition (he was, of course, half-Sudanese) that he was able to reconcile Khatmiyya discipline to the needs of Sudanese spirituality?

Some scholars attribute the spread and consolidation of the Khatmiyya *tariqa* in the Sudan to its association with the Shāyqiyya as well as to the favour that both of them enjoyed under the Turco-Egyptian rule.<sup>39</sup> This hypothesis, however, should not be accepted uncritically. In fact, most of the key followers of the Khatmiyya, inasmuch as they came from the old holy families in the Shāyqiyya region, were of non-Shāyqī origin. Nor was the favour of the Turco-

37 Interviews 1, 6, 17 and 23; on Kanbāl, see Hill (1967), 196.

38 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 56, and al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 41.

39 For example, Shuqayr (1903), iii, 112; Voll, thesis (1969), 213 and 236; Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 83, and Ahmed al-Shahi, "A Noah's Ark: the Continuity of the Khatmiyya Order in Northern Sudan", *Bulletin, British Society for Middle Eastern Studies*, viii/1, 1981, 16.

Egyptian Government confined to the Khatmiyya; it also extended to other Sufi orders and to a number of *khalwa* teachers. The Government gave the family of Ahmad al-Tayyib a monthly subvention of money and millet.<sup>40</sup> Ismā‘il al-Walī was hostile to the Turco-Egyptian rule in its opening years, especially after he had been imprisoned for three days. Al-Walī, however, changed his attitude towards the Government at the time of Muḥammad ‘Alī Pasha’s visit to the Sudan in 1838-9. During the visit, Muḥammad ‘Alī received a letter from al-Walī expressing his gratitude for the privileges that he enjoyed as a religious leader under the regime. A document dated 13 Shawwāl 1273/8 June 1856 confirms that all the land and properties of Shaykh al-Walī, like those of several other holy men in the Sudan, were exempted from taxes.<sup>41</sup>

Nor were relations between the Khatmiyya and the Shāyqiyya on the one hand and the Turco-Egyptian regime on the other always cordial. The hostility of the Government attained serious proportions after al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī’s death; a large number of the Khatmiyya local representatives were arrested and their privileges were abolished.

Muḥammad ‘Uthmān was a Meccan *‘ālim*; his writings include works on *tafsīr*, *tawhīd*, *ḥadīth* and treatises on Sufism.<sup>42</sup> By contrast, his son has left only short works of a devotional nature. This may be a clue as to how he was perceived by his contemporaries and later described in the *manāqib* literature written a generation after his death, as a miracle-working holy man whose life and works were a manifestation in themselves of this *baraka*. Here al-Hasan stands in contrast not only to his father, but also to his father’s master, Ibn Idrīs; al-Hasan was assimilated into Sudanese Islam.

The *Kitāb al-ibāna* brings this out vividly:

40 ENA, Cairo: *daftar*, no. 1282 *ṣādir ‘ardūhālat Turkī*, an Arabic translation of a Turkish document (no. 3, p. 20), dated 16 Rajab 1286/22 October 1869, and *sijill*, no. 583, p. 16, document no. 12, 21 Sha‘bān 1286/26 November 1869. See also ‘Abd al-Majīd (1949), iii, 172 and 176, and Antūnī Sūriyāl ‘Abd al-Sīd, “Juhūd Miṣr al-thaqāfiyya fī'l-Sūdān, 1820-1879”, MA thesis, University of Cairo 1972, 62 and 105.

41 For al-Walī’s letter, see ENA, Cairo, case no. 265, a copy of an Arabic dispatch, *ḥamrā‘*, no. 154, 4 Dhū’l-hijja 1254/18 February 1838. See also ‘Abd al-Majīd (1949), ii, 19.

42 GAL S II, 809-10.

In this respect he (al-Ḥasan) told us something very strange, may God help us to believe, namely that he was the saint of divine guidance and prosperity. He said to us time and time again in the presence of a group of his followers: 'I remember the time of my birth. I even remember which women were present and I know what they were saying to each other'. We were astonished at what he said, although we did not doubt its veracity for such things often happen to holy men and women [*ahl Allāh*] and are recorded in their writings and works about miracles. What has been said by our Lord Jesus son of Mary, peace upon him, should suffice as an example.<sup>43</sup>

### *Muhammad ʻUthmān II*

According to Voll, after al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī's death several members of the family, living outside the Sudan, played an active part in the affairs of the Khatmiyya in the Sudan.<sup>44</sup> One was Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II (d. 1917), head of the Egyptian branch of the Khatmiyya and a son of Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī. Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II, who was commonly known as Muḥammad al-Mīrghānī to distinguish him from his father, appointed a number of *khalīfas* in the Sukkūt, Maḥas and the Shāyqiyya regions, especially after the death of Muḥammad ʻUthmān II, in 1886.<sup>45</sup> Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II visited the Sudan at the end of 1883 in response to a Government request to use his religious influence to counter the Mahdist cause (see pp. 101-2).

Another who came was Bakrī b. Jaʻfar b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, who arrived after al-Ḥasan's death to assist his cousin, Muḥammad ʻUthmān II, in the administration of the order. Bakrī, who was married to his cousin Fāṭima bt. al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, was also active in the military and religious struggle against the Mahdist movement. Finally, ʻAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb, a brother of Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II and the husband of Nafīsa bt. al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, also

<sup>43</sup> *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 50.

<sup>44</sup> Voll, thesis (1969), 255-6.

<sup>45</sup> *Sanad wa-ijāza kubrā al-ṭariqa al-Khatmiyya*, ms., NRO, Misc. 1/22/248, and Voll, thesis (1969), 257.

moved from the Hijāz to the Sudan and remained there until he died and was buried in a large tomb in Khartoum North in 1912.<sup>46</sup>

The participation of these members of the family in the administration of the Khatmiyya does not mean that the order lacked central leadership. Upon al-Hasan's death, his son Muḥammad ʻUthmān (born 1848) was recognized by the family and followers as his successor despite the presence of his elder brother, Ahmād (born 1846).<sup>47</sup> However, Muḥammad ʻUthmān II began, immediately after his father's death, to face a number of problems. This may explain why other members of the family came to help in preserving the influence of the order.

Muḥammad ʻUthmān b. Muḥammad al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī was sometimes called *al-ṣughayr*, "the younger", and more commonly *al-aqrab*, "the second" (lit. "the nearer [in terms of time]") to distinguish him from his grandfather; for convenience, the present study refers to him as Muḥammad ʻUthmān II. He was born at Qubbat Khōjalī on 10 Rabīʻ II 1265/4 March 1848 amid much rejoicing.<sup>48</sup>

Muḥammad ʻUthmān II memorized the Quran under his father. In 1860, when he was twelve years of age, he was, together with his brother Ahmād, circumcised. In about 1863, when Muḥammad ʻUthmān II was fifteen, he completed the memorization of the Quran and mastered the rules of its recitation. He was then encouraged by his father to combine that with the study of the other Islamic sciences. Muḥammad ʻUthmān II pursued his studies on his own and taught himself a wide range of Islamic subjects, including *fiqh* and *tawḥīd*. He, and his brother Ahmād, were taught the basis of Sufism by their father, who also allowed them to attend his meetings and lessons with the senior followers of the order. His father used to speak highly of his younger son and repeatedly asserted that he was following in the footsteps of the founder of the order. The father, shortly before he died, issued him an *ijāza*, nominating him as his successor.<sup>49</sup>

Muḥammad ʻUthmān II's period of office saw a number of challenges to the Khatmiyya. The first came from the Government, which changed its policy towards the religious families and institutions and cancelled their privileges. The change in policy should be seen within

46 Al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 47.

47 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 56; al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 52, and Trimingham (1949), 233.

48 Al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 49-50.

49 *Ibid.*, 51-2.

the context of a general economic decline in the Sudan at that time. The decline was particularly acute in Dongola and Berber provinces, strongholds of the Khatmiyya in the northern Sudan. At the time of al-Hasan al-Mirghānī's death in November 1869 these provinces were already suffering from shortages of vegetables and cereals.<sup>50</sup>

The Government appointed Ḥusayn Bey Khalīfa, a Sudanese of <sup>c</sup>Abbādi origin, governor of Berber province in 1869 in the hope that he would reverse the economic decay. In 1871 he became the governor of the amalgamated provinces of Dongola and Berber. He attempted to improve conditions by reducing Government expenditure and bringing more land under cultivation. These policies led to hostility between Ḥusayn Khalīfa and the Khatmiyya; consequently, a large number of them were arrested.<sup>51</sup>

Ḥusayn Khalīfa's attitude towards the Khatmiyya is evident in his letter of 19 Rajab 1289/23 September 1872 to the Khedive. He portrayed the Khatmiyya as propagators of false beliefs among the common people and especially women. He described their *khalīfas* as idlers who supported their activities by illegally going from door to door begging for contributions in cash or kind. Ḥusayn's letter, based on a survey of the province, continues that there were 141 Khatmiyya *khalīfas*, out of whom fifty-one were in the sub-district (*khuṭṭ*) of Marawī. The authorities in the different sections of the province were told to stop these *khalīfas* from begging and to oblige them to build new waterwheels (Ar. sing. *sāqiya*) on the estates that the Government had granted to them to earn their living. The letter adds that this policy would enable the Government to benefit from these *khalīfas*. It also mentions that each of the *khalīfas* who were living in the sub-district of Marawī was obliged to build a *sāqiya*, whereas every four or five *khalīfas* in the rest of the province were ordered to build one. Their tax-exempt status was abolished and an official was appointed to collect the taxes due from these *khalīfas*.<sup>52</sup>

Although Ḥusayn Khalīfa achieved some success, he was removed from office in 1873, accused of maladministration and nepotism; several of his relatives were charged with the illegal possession of a num-

50 See further Bjørkelo (1989), 75-6.

51 Voll, thesis (1969), 264. On Ḥusayn Khalīfa's policies, see further Bjørkelo (1989), 94-6.

52 ENA, Cairo, a Turkish document in *daftar*, no. 1864, *maṣīyya*, p. 23; translated in <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Majīd (1949), iii, 184.

ber of *sāqiyas*.<sup>53</sup> In a recent study Bjørkelo attributes Ḥusayn's removal to pressure on the Government by some Turks, notables and merchants who felt that Ḥusayn's reforms had endangered their interests.<sup>54</sup> It seems reasonable to assume, although we have no direct evidence, that the Khatmiyya, who managed through the efforts of Muḥammad ʻUthmān II to resume their cordial relations with the Government, also played a role in the removal of Ḥusayn Khalīfa.

A further challenge to the Khatmiyya came from Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, who already in al-Ḥasan Mīrghānī's lifetime began to propagate the teachings of Ibn Idrīs in the Shāyqiyya region. After al-Rashīd's death in 1874, his activities were carried on by his students, ʻAbdullāhi al-Dufārī and Muḥammad al-Dandarāwī. The same teachings of Ibn Idrīs were also taught in the name of the Ahmadiyya Idrisiyya order by his son, ʻAbd al-ʻĀl, who arrived in Dongola from Upper Egypt in July 1878 (see pp. 118-19). Finally, the most serious threat to the Khatmiyya was the outbreak of the Sudanese Mahdiyya in 1881, which coincided with the infiltration of the Tijāniyya order into areas where the Khatmiyya had followers. However, Muḥammad ʻUthmān II followed his father's example and preserved the missionary spirit of the order. He also kept up the tradition of visiting the followers in their home areas. Muḥammad ʻUthmān's efforts to administer the Khatmiyya coincided with those of the Khedive Ismāʻīl (1863-79) to establish the Turco-Egyptian administration in the Sudan on a sounder basis. Ismāʻīl improved the routes and introduced telegraph communication and steamers into the Sudan. These innovations facilitated the administration of the Khatmiyya order, which had followers in various areas of the Sudan.

Muḥammad ʻUthmān II married a woman of Ethiopian origin, who lived with him in the Mīrghānī house at Qubbat Khōjalī and became the mother of his eldest son Aḥmad (1293/1877-8 to 1347/1928) and his daughter Fāṭima Nūr al-Jalāl, who was commonly known as Sitt Nūr.<sup>55</sup>

Muḥammad ʻUthmān II travelled extensively in the eastern and northern Sudan. He visited Shendi, where he maintained his father's house, which, later became a centre of opposition to the Mahdist

53 Bjørkelo (1989), 97.

54 *Ibid.*

55 NRO, Kassala, 2/124/523, *Religion-Tarikas*, and al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 79.

movement in the region. While in Berber, he visited Artolī Island, the home of the Inqirriyāb, who were related to the 'Abdallāb. He enjoyed the people's hospitality and married Āmina, a daughter of a local holy man, Shaykh al-Nūr.<sup>56</sup> Muḥammad ʻUthmān II, accompanied by his wife Āmina, a large group of followers and *khalīfas* (who included his father's senior representative and relative by marriage, ʻAhmad b. Idrīs Muḥammad al-Naṣayḥ) continued to the Shāyqiyya region, where he made an extended stay. He visited many villages in the region, initiating followers and appointing *khalīfas*. He also established a number of mosques and *zāwiyas*.

Like other members of his family, Muḥammad ʻUthmān II was credited with the power of performing *karāma*. While in the village of Juwārī, just north of Kūrtī, he is said to have restored the eyesight of a woman who was supporting a number of orphan children. Ibn Idrīs al-Naṣayḥ, who witnessed the incident, reported that his master's comment was that it was He, Almighty God, who had rescued the poor woman and to Him should be offered thanks.<sup>57</sup>

Muḥammad ʻUthmān II eventually reached the village of Nūrī, where he remained for some years. At first he lived with the *khalīfat al-khulafā'* Muḥammad ʻUthmān Muḥammad Khayr, a member of the 'Irāqāb holy family of Nūrī and the senior representative of the Khatmiyya in the Shāyqiyya region. Shortly afterwards Muḥammad ʻUthmān II, who was given considerable land by his followers, built a splendid house whose remains can still be seen (in 1982).

Early in 1295/1878-9, Muḥammad ʻUthmān II, together with his pregnant wife Āmina, left Nūrī for Misāwī Island, just opposite Kūrtī. On his way he made short stops at the religious centres of his local representatives. For instance, he visited the mosque of the sons of Ḥājj Nūr at the village of al-Jirayf, north of Nūrī. Muḥammad ʻUthmān II and his suite were warmly received at Misāwī, which had established its ties with Khatmiyya during the life of al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. There, Muḥammad ʻUthmān II left his wife behind and travelled to Kasala, where he shortly afterwards received news of his son's birth. Muḥammad ʻUthmān II sent a telegram to *khalīfat al-khulafā'* Muḥammad ʻUthmān Muḥammad Khayr al-'Irāqī, with instructions that his

56 Al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 80, and *Manāqib al-sayyid ʻAlī al-Mīrghānī*, Khartoum 1390/1970, 11.

57 Al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 56-7.

newly born son was to be named *‘Alī*. It was this child who later became one of the key religious figures in the modern Sudan.<sup>58</sup>

The followers of the Khatmiyya, and those of other orders, were accustomed to show their loyalty to their spiritual masters by granting them shares (Ar. sing. *shaqīqa*) in their agricultural land or by offering them one or more of their palm trees. Some of the Khatmiyya, however, went much further in demonstrating their loyalty and gave away some of their sons and daughters to serve as attendants to members of the Mīrghānī family. These sons and daughters, who were known as *awlād al-bayt* or *banāt al-bayt*, that is attendants of the male and female members of the Mīrghānī household respectively, spent their lives in the service of their masters or mistresses. A number of female adherents in the Shāyqiyya region as well as in other areas voluntarily offered their service as *ḥuwārāt* (Ar. sing. *ḥuwāra*), namely acting as links between the female members of the Mīrghānī family, known collectively as *al-sharīfāt*, and the female followers of the *tariqa*.<sup>59</sup>

### *The Khatmiyya and the Mahdiyya*

The most serious challenge that the Khatmiyya faced was the Mahdist revolution. From the beginning the Khatmiyya, like the Turco-Egyptian administration, underestimated the Mahdist movement. It was only when the Mahdist cause began to gain momentum and attracted supporters in areas which were considered Khatmiyya strongholds that the members of the Mīrghānī family and their adherents began to take measures against it.

It was Kordofan that saw the early and decisive stages of the Mahdist movement, from where it gradually spread to the other parts of the Sudan. Members of the riverain groups, especially the Bidayriyya, who lived in the western Sudan in contrast to their kinsmen who remained on the Nile, supported the Mahdist cause from the outset.<sup>60</sup> Before his public manifestation as the Mahdi, Muḥammad Ahmad vis-

58 The above is based on interviews 16, 19 and 20. Khalīfa Muḥammad *‘Abd al-Ḥamīd al-‘Irāqī* (interview 19) allowed the present author to read the telegram which is preserved among his private papers.

59 Interview 9, and al-Sarrāj (1374/1955), 54. These voluntary servants provided Muḥammad *‘Uthmān* II with a large retinue.

60 Holt (1970), 109, and Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 73-80.

ited al-Ubayyid twice and stayed with several holy families and individuals from the Bidayriyya, including Muḥammad al-Makkī b. Ismā‘īl al-Walī, the head of the Ismā‘īliyya, and the family of Ṣalīḥ Suwār al-Dhabab (d. 1875).<sup>61</sup> On his second visit Muḥammad Aḥmad secretly informed these families that the Mahdīship had been bestowed upon him by the Prophet.

The Mahdiyya was to divide these families deeply. Muḥammad al-Makkī and Ismā‘īl b. ʿAbd al-Qādir al-Kurdufānī (d. 1897), a grandson of Ismā‘īl al-Walī, who was a poet, a *muftī* and later became the Mahdist chronicler, were among the earliest and most faithful supporters of the Mahdi. In contrast, Aḥmad al-Azhārī, a brother of Muḥammad al-Makkī, supported the Turco-Egyptian Government against the Mahdi and wrote a pamphlet refuting his claims to the Mahdīship. He was killed in October 1882 in a battle fought near Bāra against the Mahdists.

Another example is Muḥammad b. Ṣalīḥ Suwār al-Dhabab who, again in contrast to his brother Ibrāhīm who became a Mahdist *amīr*, remained loyal to the Turco-Egyptian regime and died in al-Ubayyid after its occupation by the Mahdist forces in January 1883.<sup>62</sup> A final example is the Bādī family of Bāra. This family was among the earliest supporters of Muḥammad ʿUthmān al-Mīrghānī I, who cemented his ties with it by marrying a daughter, Ruqayya, the mother of al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. After the outbreak of the Mahdiyya, however, several members of this family abandoned the Khatmiyya and joined the Mahdi. These included Fawzī Maḥmūd Bādī and his brothers, Aḥmadī and Mukhtār, who became close confidants of the Mahdi and were appointed as his secretaries. Fawzī was moreover invested with the office of the keeper of the Mahdi's seal, *amīn khatm al-Mahdī*, and after the fall of Khartoum in January 1885, he was appointed as one of the seven commissioners who constituted the Mahdi's administrative council, *majlis ʿumanāt al-Mahdī*. Mukhtār was also appointed a director of the lithograph press, *amīr maṭbaʿat al-ḥajar*, which was seized by the Mahdist forces.<sup>63</sup>

61 Holt (1970), 53.

62 Hill (1967), 62.

63 Shuqayr (1903), iii, 357; Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Abū Salīm, "Makhtūt fī taṣrīkh muṣassis al-Khatmiyya", *MDS*, 1968, 38, and *idem*, *al-Haraka al-fikriyya fī'l-Mahdiyya*, Khartoum 1970, 86.

How are we to explain this phenomenon of the split of these important families over the question of the Mahdiyya? One may suggest that these divided loyalties were a kind of insurance policy, whether or not the people involved were doing this consciously, against the loss of their family's position. This can be illustrated by the family of Suwār al-Dhahab, which resumed its position as the Khatmiyya local representatives in al-Ubayyid when the members of the Mīrghānī family managed to re-establish the Khatmiyya after the fall of the Mahdist state in 1898.<sup>64</sup>

The Mīrghānī family began to react to the new threat, especially when the Mahdist revolution spread to the eastern Sudan, led by 'Uthmān Dīqna (c. 1840-1926). 'Uthmān, who was partly of Beja origin and a follower of a Sufi order, the Majdhūbiyya, rivals of the Khatmiyya since the time of Muḥammad 'Uthmān al-Mīrghānī I, joined the Mahdi after the fall of al-Ubayyid in 1883. He swore allegiance and the Mahdi subsequently appointed him *amīr* over the eastern Sudan. When Dīqna returned to the Red Sea Hills, he began to distribute the Mahdi's proclamations and administer the oath of allegiance on his master's behalf. He eventually reached Qubāb, the centre of his Sufi teacher Shaykh al-Ṭāhir al-Majdhūb, the local head of the Majdhūbiyya. The swearing of allegiance to the Mahdi by Shaykh al-Ṭāhir al-Majdhūb and his followers greatly strengthened the Mahdist cause.<sup>65</sup>

Victory followed victory, and the Mahdist revolution spread rapidly into other Khatmiyya areas, the Berber and Dongola regions. The arrival of Gordon in February 1884 with orders to evacuate the Turco-Egyptian troops from the Sudan, encouraged all those who were halfhearted to give their support to the Mahdist cause. One example is Muḥammad al-Khayr 'Abd Allāh Khōjalī of Berber, a former teacher of Muḥammad Aḥmad, the Mahdi. Muḥammad al-Khayr, who was subsidized by the Government, received several letters from Muḥammad Aḥmad in which he informed him about his Mahdiship and urged him to join his movement. In a letter dated 1299/1881-2, the Mahdi reproved his former teacher for his delay in joining his cause and urged him to support it either by declaring a *jihād* in the Berber region or by emigrating

64 Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 38.

65 Abū Salīm, (1970), 27 and 55; *idem*, ed. *Mudhakkirāt 'Uthmān Dīqna*, Khartoum 1974, 40-1, and Holt (1970), 81-4.

(*yuhājir*) to join him.<sup>66</sup> It was not until Gordon's arrival that Muḥammad al-Khayr emigrated to the Mahdi in Kordofan and swore allegiance to him. On 3 Jumādā II 1301/31 March 1884, the Mahdi appointed him as *amīr* of Berber and instructed him to begin a *jihād* in the province, where he arrived on 27 April 1884.<sup>67</sup>

Ahmad al-Shahi argues that the Mahdist followers used only to make incursions into the Shāyqiyya homeland, and that they never settled there.<sup>68</sup> This statement, however, may be disputed since the Sawarāb sub-section of the Shāyqiyya supported the Mahdiyya; the Mahdi appointed some of its members *‘āmils* (commissioners) and *amīrs*. The earliest of these followers were Ahmād al-Huday and Shaykh al-Ṭayyib al-Sawarābī, who propagated the teachings of the Mahdi, together with (despite the Mahdi's prohibition of the Sufi orders) those of the Tijāniyya order. Before Ahmād al-Huday joined the Mahdist cause, Muṣṭafā Yāwar, the then Governor of Dongola, replied to a letter which he had received from the Mahdi expressing his desire to join the Mahdiyya. The Mahdi, who was delighted by Yāwar's positive response, appointed him *‘āmil* (administrative agent) for Dongola province. Some of the Mahdist supporters reported to the Mahdi that Yāwar's conversion was only a pretence.<sup>69</sup> This is presumably why the Mahdi conferred the same office of *‘āmil* of Dongola upon Ahmād al-Huday after the latter had sworn allegiance to Muḥammad al-Khayr, the Mahdi's agent in Berber province.

Al-Huday and his agent in the Sāyqiyya region, *amīr* al-Ṭayyib al-Sawarābī, fought a number of unsuccessful battles against Muṣṭafā Yāwar, in which two local senior Khatmiyya representatives, Abū Bakr Wad al-Mut‘ārid and Kanbāl Ḥamad al-Kawārtī, who had been forced to join in the fighting, were killed. Other Khatmiyya leaders who died in the fighting include Idrīs b. Muḥammad ‘Alī al-Darwīsh, a member of the Awlād al-Darwīsh of al-Zūma; Shaykh Ḥamad, nicknamed *al-ḍibaylān*, “the feeble”, of the Ḥawājnīr clan of al-Jirayf, north of Nūrī; and Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Madanī al-Nāṭiq, of the Hamadūiyāb of Nūrī.<sup>70</sup>

<sup>66</sup> Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Abū Salīm, “*al-Murshid ilā wathā’iq al-Mahdī*”, mimeograph, Khartoum 1969, 34-5, no. 64.

<sup>67</sup> Shuqayr (1903), iii, 234, and Holt (1970), 98.

<sup>68</sup> Al-Shahi, thesis (1971), 309.

<sup>69</sup> Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 318-9, no. 649.

<sup>70</sup> Interviews 11, 16 and 20.

The loyalty of some Shāyqiyya to the Turco-Egyptian regime should not be interpreted to mean that the entire community was anti-Mahdist. Members of the Sawarāb, Hinikāb and <sup>c</sup>Awniyya sub-sections of the Shāyqiyya, who lived in Berber province, were on good terms with the Mahdi; in a letter dated 7 Ṣafar 1302/26 November 1884 the latter ordered that no one should interfere with their property.<sup>71</sup> Furthermore, and in contrast to Wingate's claim that "even eight days after the fall of Khartoum, if a Shaigi [Shāyqī] was seen, he was instantly killed", the Mahdi appointed al-Shafī<sup>c</sup> Rahma al-Shāyqī as *amīn* (commissioner) in the administrative board, *majlis al-umanā?*, which he set up shortly after the fall of Khartoum.<sup>72</sup>

The Mahdist threat to the Khatmiyya became even more serious when Muḥammad al-Dandarāwī and <sup>c</sup>Abdullāhi <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Ḥafīz al-Dufārī, students of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd and who had won some support in the Shāyqiyya region, swore allegiance to the Mahdi. Indeed, Muḥammad Aḥmad, before declaring himself the Mahdi, had been taught the doctrines of Ibn Idrīs and issued an *ijāza* by <sup>c</sup>Abdullāhi al-Dufārī.

The Khatmiyya opposed the Sudanese Mahdiyya by both peaceful and military means. But did the Khatmiyya believe in the Mahdist idea as such? The answer is that they, like most Muslims, did. Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Mīrghānī I who called himself *al-khatim*, "the seal of [sc. all the saints]", believed that his rank in the divine hierarchy would be the sixth, immediately after that of the Mahdi. He noted that the first four places in the hierarchy would be occupied by the Prophet, his daughter Fāṭima and her two sons al-Ḥasan and al-Ḥusayn, respectively. Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān affirmed the inferiority of his position to that of the Mahdi by stating that he would have a seat near to *al-<sup>c</sup>arsh*, "the throne [sc. of God]", immediately behind that of the Mahdi.<sup>73</sup> Al-Mīrghānī also noted that he had composed a book of devotions called *al-Rātib*, and its contents were beyond the comprehension of all, save the Prophet and the expected Mahdi.<sup>74</sup> Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān I, unlike

71 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 226, no. 446. A number of informants in both the Shāyqiyya region and Khartoum confirmed that many of the Shāyqiyya who had emigrated to the Shendi area during the nineteenth century voluntarily joined the Mahdist cause.

72 F.R. Wingate, *Mahdiism and the Egyptian Sudan*, 2nd edn, London 1968, 143, and Shuqayr (1903), iii, 557.

73 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 74.

74 *Ibid.*, ff. 74-5.

most of the Muslims, did not associate the Mahdi's manifestation with the end of time. He also considered that the expected Mahdi would manifest himself in the east.<sup>75</sup>

But the Mīrghaniyya did not recognize Muḥammad Aḥmad as the Mahdi. In the beginning, they underestimated the strength of the Mahdist movement, which they repeatedly referred to as "the sedition", *al-fitna*; they circulated Government anti-Mahdist proclamations and wrote to their own followers and other influential figures refuting the Mahdi's claims and exhorting them to remain loyal to the regime.

The Mahdi, who knew of the belief of the Mīrghanī family in the Mahdist idea, repeatedly reproached its members for their delay in supporting his movement. In his letter of 14 Ṣafar 1302/15 December 1883 to Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghanī II the Mahdi stated that he had sent him many messages and letters of warning (*indhārāt*) that had evoked no response. He concluded by urging al-Mīrghanī to support the Mahdist cause either by making the *hijra*, "emigration", and joining him or by waging the *jihād* under the command of Shaykh al-Ṭāhir al-Majdhūb and ʻUthmān Dīqna in the eastern Sudan.<sup>76</sup>

Soʻād al-Fatīḥ argues that Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghanī II, and indeed all the members of the Mīrghanī family, would have been most unwilling to subordinate themselves to ʻUthmān Dīqna, and I would add his Sufi master Shaykh al-Ṭāhir, who belonged to their rivals, the Majādhīb.<sup>77</sup>

Some of the Mīrghaniyya may have wavered or prevaricated. On 13 Muḥarram 1301/14 November 1883, the Mahdi writes to Muḥammad Abū Bakr (commonly known as Bakrī) b. Jaʻfar al-Mīrghanī I, acknowledging the receipt of Bakrī's letter in which he had declared his loyalty to the Mahdiyya but also expressing his unwillingness to obey Dīqna. The Mahdi continues that he had already given Bakrī the chance of choosing between joining Dīqna or making of the *hijra* to the Mahdi himself. The Mahdi concluded by saying that despite his awareness of Bakrī's anti-Mahdist feelings, revealed in some of his correspondence captured by the *Anṣār*, he would pardon the latter if he hastened to join him.

75 *Ibid.*, f. 74, and NRO Majmūʻat Abī Salīm, 7/1/10, ms., p. 9.

76 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 96, no. 189.

77 Soʻād al-Fatīḥ, "The Teachings of Muḥammad Aḥmad, the Sudanese Mahdi", MA thesis, University of London 1961, 97.

The activities of Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī II against the Mahdiyya have been described by a number of scholars; he used his headquarters, al-Khatmiyya, in Kasala as a base to oppose Mahdism in the eastern Sudan. He travelled widely in the region preaching against the Mahdiyya and exhorting the people to remain loyal to the Government. He left his wife and his daughter in his father's house at Shendi to keep the Mahdists from encroaching upon his followers in the area. And when Khartoum was besieged by the Mahdist forces, Gordon instructed that his correspondence with Egypt should be sent through Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī II, whom he trusted.<sup>78</sup>

The people of Kasala appealed to the Government for reinforcements. Their request evoked no response and this is presumably why they wrote to the Mahdi expressing their readiness to surrender.<sup>79</sup> The Mahdi sent al-Ḥusayn w. al-Zahrā, an influential ʻālīm, as head of a delegation to supervise the evacuation of the Government troops from Kasala.<sup>80</sup> But Muḥammad ʻUthmān II advised the forces not to surrender. Despite his knowledge of this, the Mahdi wrote to Muḥammad ʻUthmān II on 11 Shaʻbān 1302/27 May 1885, when Kasala was still under siege, stating that he greatly cared for al-Mīrghānī and adding that the latter's delay in supporting the Mahdiyya was not appropriate to his great status. The Mahdi also noted that he had sent him an *amān*, "pardon" or "safe-conduct", with Ḥasan Badawī Ḥāshī and had instructed al-Ḥusayn w. al-Zahrā to treat him with kindness.<sup>81</sup> Illness forced Muḥammad ʻUthmān to withdraw from Kasala to Sawākin, where he stayed until the end of August 1886, when, leaving his family behind, he moved to Cairo, where he died and was buried. His son ʻAhmad and daughter Fāṭima remained as prisoners until the fall of the Mahdist state in 1898.<sup>82</sup> His other son, ʻAlī, stayed in Sawākin with Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II, and later travelled with him to Cairo, where he studied at al-Azhar. ʻAlī returned to Kasala after the re-occupa-

78 The above is based on Wingate (1968), 162; Shuqayr (1903), iii, 332-6; Hill (1967), 279, and Voll, thesis (1969), 273-84.

79 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 341, no. 701; see also Voll, thesis (1969), 282.

80 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 336, no. 687; *idem* (1970), 195-6, and Holt (1970), 210-11.

81 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 346, no. 712.

82 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 55-6; Shuqayr (1903), iii, 336 and 401, and Hill (1967), 279.

tion of the Sudan by the Anglo-Egyptian forces in 1898, and succeeded, with his brother Ahmad, in restoring the influence of the Khatmiyya.<sup>83</sup>

After the departure of Muḥammad ʻUthmān II from the Sudan, Bakrī al-Mīrghānī became the leader of the Khatmiyya in Kasala. He was circumspect in his dealings with the Mahdi and his followers; he swore allegiance to the Mahdiyya and apparently urged the people of Kasala to submit to the Mahdists. Thus, in a letter of 3 Shaʻbān 1302/19 May 1885 to Bakrī, the Mahdi acknowledges the latter's role in arranging for the surrender of Kasala. In the same letter, the Mahdi informed Bakrī about the delegation which would come to undertake the evacuation of Kasala, and concluded by offering him a pardon, urging him to migrate to join him.<sup>84</sup> However, Bakrī himself continued to circulate anti-Mahdist letters and played an active part in the military operations against the *Anṣār*. He was severely wounded in a battle and was taken by his followers to Sawākin, and later to the Hijāz, where he died in 1304/1886-7.<sup>85</sup> Kasala finally surrendered in May 1885 and was immediately plundered by the Mahdist forces, who also destroyed al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī's tomb and mosque.<sup>86</sup>

The Mahdist forces in the eastern Sudan fought on a number of fronts simultaneously. In February 1884, Tōkar surrendered; Sharīfa Maryam bt. Hāshim al-Mīrghānī and some of her followers were imprisoned by the *Anṣār* and were not released until an Anglo-Egyptian expedition from Sawākin defeated the Mahdists and occupied the area in 1891.<sup>87</sup> Shortly before the fall of Tōkar, the British had intervened to protect Sawākin, a strategic Red Sea port, from the Mahdists. The British, using Sawākin as a base, fought several successful battles against the Mahdist forces. They were actively supported by ʻUthmān Tāj al-Sirr b. Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim, who managed to win over a considerable number of people from the Mahdist cause. Sawākin, which never fell into the hands of the *Anṣār*, became a refuge for many anti-

<sup>83</sup> *Manāqib al-sayyid ʻAlī al-Mīrghānī* (1970), 13-4, and Khartoum, NRO, Intel. 2/32/270, p. 12.

<sup>84</sup> Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 339, no. 697.

<sup>85</sup> *Ibid.*, 89-90, no. 179, and Shuqayr (1903), iii, 340.

<sup>86</sup> *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 56, Shuqayr (1903), iii, 402, and Holt (1970), 106.

<sup>87</sup> *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 47-8, and Holt and Daly (1979), 109-10.

Mahdists, especially after the fall of Kasala in 1885. <sup>c</sup>Uthmān Tāj al-Sirr himself remained there until he died in 1903.<sup>88</sup>

Sawākin also served as a base for Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II, who at the request of the Khedive arrived from Cairo on 1 Rabī<sup>c</sup> al-Awwal 1301/31 December 1883 and put his religious authority at the disposal of the Government.<sup>89</sup>

<sup>c</sup>Uthmān Dīqna described Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim as the greatest opponent of the Mahdiyya on the face of the Earth. He added that Sirr al-Khatim claimed that he was authorized by the Prophet himself to combat the Mahdist sedition. Sirr al-Khatim required those who wished to see him to spend three days washing themselves in order to be purified from the contamination of Mahdism. He also advised all those who felt the slightest temptation to join the Mahdiyya to ask for God's forgiveness. Sirr al-Khatim is said to have ordered the followers of the Khatmiyya to swear daily by the Quran that the Mahdiship of the Sudanese Mahdi was false.<sup>90</sup>

Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II wrote a number of anti-Mahdist letters that were sent to people in various parts of the Sudan. One surviving letter is that sent to Tamām Agha and his brothers, to <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Ḥamza and his brothers, and to all the merchants and the people of al-Khandaq. <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Ḥamza (c. 1824-1937) was a substantial merchant who was a descendant of Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ Shādūl, a caravan guide and a *khalīfa* of Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Mīrghānī I. He had strong commercial ties with the Turco-Egyptian officials. In September 1884 he supported Muṣṭafā Yāwar, the Governor of Dongola, against the Mahdist forces. The latter, however, joined the Mahdiyya, presumably realizing that the Turco-Egyptian regime was finished.

<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Ḥamza and the people of al-Khandaq received a letter from the Mahdi, dated 22 Sha<sup>c</sup>bān 1302/7 June 1885, acknowledging their letter in which they had attributed their support for Muṣṭafā Yāwar to the fact that he had been appointed as *cāmil* over Dongola by the Mahdi himself. They had, in the same letter, expressed their regret about what had happened and affirmed their loyalty to the Mahdi.<sup>91</sup>

88      *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 45; Abū Salīm (1974), 74, and Hill (1967), 141-2.

89      Abū Salīm (1974), 74-5, and NRO, Intel. 2/32/270.

90      Abū Salīm (1974), 74-5.

91      Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 363, no. 752.

In his letter to *‘Abd Allāh Ḥamza* and the people of al-Khandaq, Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II refers to the Mahdist movement as “a blind and deaf sedition whose advocates were at the gates of hell”. He adds that it is better to die than to follow its cause. He then reproaches *‘Abd Allāh* and the people of al-Khandaq for supporting it:

What you have done during these years is contrary to the pure Muḥammadan Sharia, to the Islamic community, and to both compassion and humanity.

Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II devotes a considerable part of his letter to reminding the people of al-Khandaq of the security and prosperity that they had enjoyed under Turco-Egyptian rule:

I can not remain silent because of the obligation of our past friendship and the brotherhood of faith and the *tariqa* [the Khatmiyya] and because I fear I should be questioned about it before God, May He be Exalted and Praised. Therefore, I have written this to you in the hope that you will be given understanding and regain your reason.<sup>92</sup>

92 Bergen, NI 298. 15/26 a and b, lithographed appeal from Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim al-Mīrghānī to *‘Abd Allāh Ḥamza* and his brothers, 8 Dhū’l-Qaḍā 1302/19 August 1885.

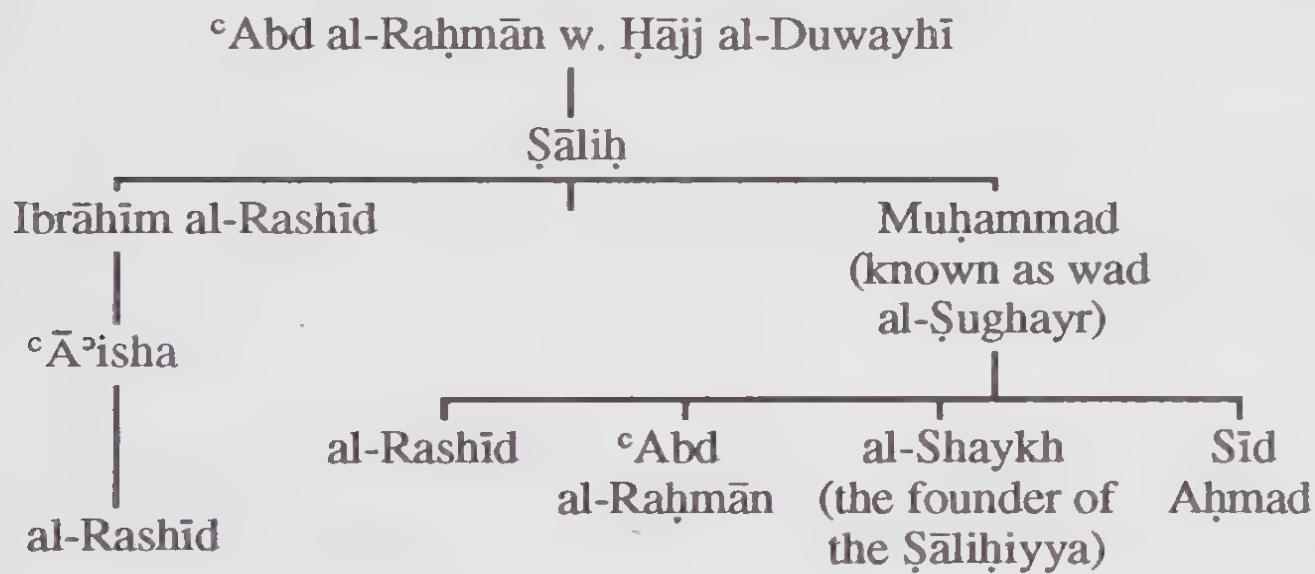
# 5

## THE CENTRALIZED BROTHERHOODS: THE NEXT GENERATION

Among the students of Ibn Idrīs, a distinction can be made between those who themselves founded orders and those whose missionary activities were only formalized after their death. The former included al-Mīrghanī, al-Sanūsī and, indirectly, Ismā‘īl al-Walī; the latter included Ibn Idrīs' own descendants (known as the Adārisa) and Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd and Muḥammad al-Dandarāwī.

### *Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd*

DIAGRAM 4. *The Family of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd*



Ibrāhīm b. Şālih w. Hājj al-Duwayhī, known as Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, was born at al-Kurū, north of Karīma in the Shāyqiyya region, on 15 Rajab 1228/14 July 1813. He was not a Shāyqī, as is often stated,<sup>1</sup> but belonged to the Duwayhiyya, a section of Juhayna. His family, which

<sup>1</sup> See, for example, Hill (1967), 177; ‘Abdīn (1967), 102, and F. de Jong, “al-Duwayhī, Ibrāhīm”, *EI*<sup>2</sup>, supplement, 278.

claimed <sup>c</sup>Ālid descent, had a long religious tradition, being descended from a noted religious teacher, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Hājj al-Duwayhī, after whom the village of Duwaym Wad Hājj, near Marawī, is named, and where his great *qubba* still stands. His mother was Khāliṣa bt. al-Makk al-Nāfa<sup>c</sup>ābī, from al-Zawara in the Manāṣir area. This is presumably why al-Rashīd later won a considerable number of followers in that region.

When Ibrāhīm was about two or three years old, his father, Ṣāliḥ, took him to meet Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Mīrghānī I at al-Dabba. After the father “took the Path” from the Mīrghānī, he asked him to initiate his son as well. Al-Mīrghānī allegedly refused, saying that his real master would be Aḥmad b. Idrīs.<sup>2</sup>

After memorizing the Quran and studying various Islamic subjects with his father, Ibrāhīm left for the Ḥijāz in 1247/1832-3. There he performed the pilgrimage and then continued on to the Yemen, where he joined the circle (*ḥalqa*) of Ibn Idrīs, staying until the latter’s death in 1837.<sup>3</sup>

During the succession dispute following Aḥmad’s death, the latter’s eldest son, Muḥammad, seems to have regarded al-Rashīd as his father’s true successor. Al-Rashīd, who won the support of most of his master’s followers at Ṣabyā, decided to leave for Upper Egypt so as to avoid the dispute. There he visited the house and the mosque which Ibn Idrīs had established at al-Zayniyya. He then moved to Luxor and established a *zāwiya*, which became the centre of a local Idrīsiyya school under Muḥammad Abū'l-Qāsim al-Ḥijāzī.<sup>4</sup>

Shortly afterwards al-Rashīd returned to Mecca. But, following a request from al-Sanūsī, who was forced by the hostility of the <sup>c</sup>ulamā<sup>2</sup> of

2 Al-Hajrasī (1314/1915-6), 89, and Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Tuhāmī, *R. al-dīn al-naṣīḥa*, ms. Bergen, accession number 237, f. 58. Not surprisingly, the Khatmiyya claim that al-Rashīd was initiated by al-Mīrghānī; see Maḥmūd (1971), 132.

3 On al-Rashīd’s relations with Ibn Idrīs, see NRO, Misc., 1/15/179, *Manāqib wa-karāmāt ... al-Rashīd*, ms., f. 15; al-Hajrasī (1314/1915-6), 78 and 90-1; al-Nabhānī (n.d.), i, 344-7; al-Madānī (1380/1960), 44, and al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 20. De Jong in *EI*<sup>2</sup>, supplement, 278, gives the date of al-Rashīd’s arrival in Ṣabyā as 1246/1830.

4 Al-Hajrasī (1314/1915-6), 98-9; Trimingham (1949), 231, and <sup>c</sup>Ali Ṣāliḥ Karrār, “*Athar al-ta<sup>c</sup>ālīm al-Idrīsiyya fī'l-ṭuruq al-ṣufiyya fī'l-Sūdān*”, MA thesis, University of Khartoum 1977, 73.

Mecca to leave for Upper Egypt in 1841, al-Rashīd went with him to Jerusalem, from where they returned to Egypt. After a short stay, the two of them, accompanied by <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl, went to Libya.<sup>5</sup> Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd returned to Upper Egypt and moved from there to the Sudan via Sawākin. On his way to the Shāyqiyya region, he visited Qubbat Khōjalī and then entered into spiritual retreat on Tūtī Island. Eventually, he arrived at his home village, al-Kurū, where he made a prolonged stay. There he used the famous mosque of his ancestors as a centre for teaching the ideas of his master, Ibn Idrīs. He then undertook a series of missionary tours covering a considerable part of the northern Sudan. During these tours he initiated many followers and established a number of zāwiyyas, especially in the Shāyqiyya and Danāqla regions.<sup>6</sup>

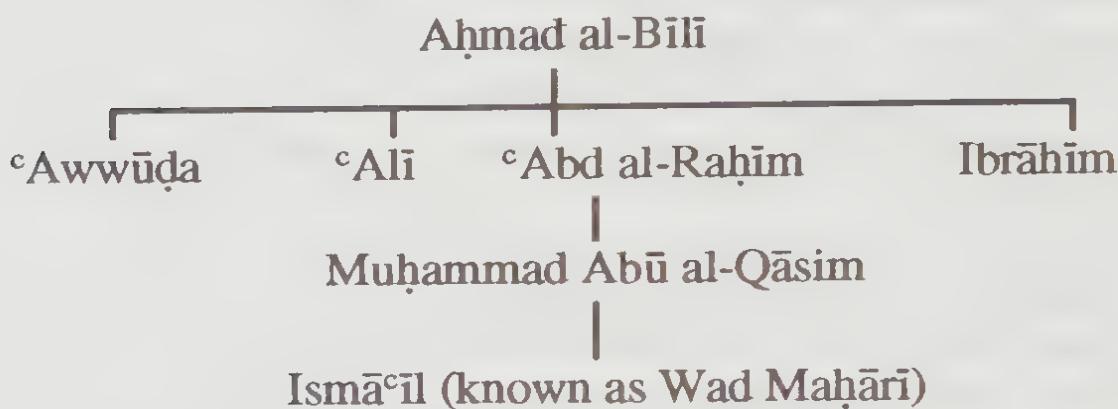
Among al-Rashīd's numerous students were Husayn Bey Khalīfa, Muḥammad al-Amin al-Hindī, (the father of al-Sharīf Yūsuf al-Hindī, founder of the Hindīyya ḥarīqa), Muḥammad al-Taqalāwī at Omdurman, Muḥammad Mūsā Ghānim of Shendi and, finally, Muḥammad al-Amin w. al-Tuwaym of Salawa, south of Shendi.<sup>7</sup>

In the Shāyqiyya and Bidayriyya regions, al-Rashīd's followers included members of the Bīlī religious family (commonly known as the Bīliyāb) of Manṣūrkutī. These were the descendants of a famous holy man of the sixteenth or seventeenth century, Aḥmad al-Bīlī, who lived, died and was buried in Tanqāsī in the Shāyqiyya region.

5 NRO, misc., 1/27/376; al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 45; al-Tuhāmī, *R. al-dīn al-naṣīḥa*, ms., f. 60, and E.E. Evans-Pritchard, *The Sanusi of Cyrenaica*, Oxford 1949, 13.

6 On al-Rashīd in the Sudan, interviews 2 and 22; *K. fī dhikrat al-sayyid Ghulām Allāh*, ms., f. 43; al-Tuhāmī, *R. al-dīn al-naṣīḥa*, ms., f. 60, and Karrār, thesis (1977), 74.

7 NRO, Intel., 2/32/262, H.A. MacMichael, "Notes on the Tijania Tarika", and Karrār, thesis (1977), 74-5. On the Hindī family, see Abū Salīm (1970), 18, and R. S. O'Fahey, "A history of the Awlād Hindī", *Bulletin of Information, Fontes Historiae Africanae*, 7/8, Evanston 1982/3, 43-50.

DIAGRAM 5. *The Biliyāb Family*

The Biliyāb do not belong to the *'Awniyya* branch of the *Shāyqiyya* as Shuqayr asserts, but to the *Bidayriyya*.<sup>8</sup> This confusion probably arose because a branch of the Biliyāb married into the *'Awniyya*. The Biliyāb, however, like most holy families, claimed Sharifian descent. The branch of Shaykh *'Alī* al-Bili, who played a role in the religious life of Kordofan, was related to the family of Ismā'īl al-Wālī through marriage.

The most prominent of al-Rashīd's followers among the Biliyāb was, however, Ismā'īl al-Biliyābī, known as Wad Mahārī, a descendant of *'Abd al-Rahīm* b. Ahmad al-Bili.<sup>9</sup>

It is clear from an undated letter from al-Rashīd to his student, al-Biliyābī, that the latter was highly respected by his teacher. In the same letter al-Rashīd advised his student on some religious matters and urged him to initiate people into the order.<sup>10</sup>

Al-Rashīd's followers in Mansūrkutī included members of the families of Āb Ahmayda and Salmān. Al-Rashīd also initiated members of the Rikābiyya, among whom were *'Uthmān* Ḥamad al-Rikābī of Ḥusaynārtī, north of Kūrtī, and Nāfi' al-Amīn of al-Karāfāb village in the *Shāyqiyya* region, who was also a student of al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. Among al-Rashīd's other *Shāyqiyya* students was al-Ḥājj al-Māhī (1794-1869) of al-Kāsinger, near Karīma, who was a leading composer

8 Shuqayr (1903), i, 85, and *Nasab al-Biliyāb*, ms. in the possession of Muḥammad al-Ḥasan Sīd Ahmad al-Bili, Khartoum.

9 *Ibid.*, and interview 22.

10 Al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 70-1.

and chanter of religious praise songs (*madḥ*), and Muḥammad Bashīr Agha, a Shāyqī notable of al-Qurayr, near Marawī.<sup>11</sup>

Al-Rashīd enjoyed cordial relations with the Sammāniyya. In 1269/1852-3, he visited Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib's tomb at Umm Marriḥ and is reported by a Sammāniyya source as saying:

All the Sudanese holy men are mere students in comparison with *ustādh* Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib.<sup>12</sup>

Towards the end of 1269/1852-3, al-Rashīd returned to Upper Egypt, where he visited Qinā, al-Zayniyya and Qūṣ. In the latter, he initiated a famous religious man called Shaykh ʿAbd Allāh Mūsā Agha Rāsim.<sup>13</sup> Al-Rashīd finally arrived in Mecca in 1271/1854-5 and established a religious centre near Jabal Abū Qubays. It was here that he composed his famous devotional work: *Risālat tawthīq al-ṣurā li-man arāda hudā khayr al-warā fī taṣālīm al-ṭariq al-Ahmādī al-Idrīsī*.<sup>14</sup>

While in Mecca, al-Rashīd declared himself the heir to the spiritual status (*maqām*) of his teacher. He considered himself to be identical to his master:

O God, don't make for me any name or exemplar other than those of my master Aḥmad b. Idrīs.<sup>15</sup>

This was presumably the basis of the accusation of heresy brought against him twice by followers and members of the Mīrghanī family in 1273/1856-7. The charges, although their nature is not specified, were brought before the board of Meccan *‘ulamā’*. Al-Rashīd, however, successfully rebutted them and, consequently, attracted many followers, especially from among the Syrian and Indian pilgrims. An Indian

11 Interview 8; Qurashī Muḥammad Hasan, *Maṣāḥīḥ al-madā’ih*, 2nd edn, Khartoum 1972, 263, and Karrār, thesis (1977), 73-4. One of *al-ḥājj* al-Māḥī's teachers, Ibrāhīm ʿAlī w. Halīb of al-Zuma, was also taught by al-Rashīd; Hasan (1972), 24.

12 *Nūr al-Dā’im* (1954), 74. The same source says that al-Rashīd described the Sammāni Shaykh, al-Qurashī w. al-Zayn, with the Sufi title, *quṭb al-shamāl* (see Glossary).

13 Al-Hajrasī (1314/1915-6), 98-100.

14 Al-Tuhāmī, *R. al-dīn al-naṣīḥa*, ms., f. 60.

15 *Ibid.*, f. 59.

Begum was so impressed that she sent him a gift of 1,000 gold rupees, which he used to build a splendid *zāwiya*.<sup>16</sup>

Ibn Idrīs' family gave its support to al-Rashīd. This is evident from Muṣṭafā b. Ahmad b. Idrīs' letter of Shawwāl 1273/May-June 1857 to al-Rashīd, in which he acknowledges the receipt of two letters from the latter, informing him of his trial. The letter demonstrates that al-Rashīd was held in high esteem by his master's family:

Our brother and beloved and sincere friend ... the Shaykh of the *ṭariqa* and the *imām* of the "Truth" ..., the perfect saint (*al-walī al-kāmil*), who is following in the footsteps of the Prophet ...

Muṣṭafā continues by expressing his sorrow over the unjust accusations levelled against al-Rashīd and his delight at the news of the latter's triumph before the board of *‘ulamā*<sup>17</sup>:

It is not, of course, concealed from you that God never puts a person to the test without loving him. The example of the Prophets should suffice; though they are the noblest of the created beings to God and are loved by Him, yet He has put them to the test.<sup>18</sup>

Nor did al-Rashīd's cordial relations with his master's family wane over the years. A letter from Ibn Idrīs' eldest son, Muḥammad, dated 1288/1871-2, praises al-Rashīd. He ends the letter by expressing his gratitude for gifts of tea, coffee and a copy of al-Ghazālī's *Iḥyā’ ʻulūm al-dīn*.<sup>19</sup> In return, al-Rashīd constantly acknowledged the spiritual authority of his late teacher. Thus:

This is the spiritual descent [*sanad*] of the Aḥmadiyya Muḥammadiyya *ṭariqa*. Whoever enters it, is secure from every peril and affliction, and possesses some attributes pleasing to God, and takes on the characteristics of the merciful.<sup>19</sup>

Shortly before his death in Mecca in 1874, al-Rashīd was joined by two students, namely ʻAbdullāhi ʻAbd al-Ḥafiz al-Dufārī and Muḥammad Aḥmad al-Dandarāwī, of Sudanese and Egyptian origin respectively. These two students were later to play a major part in

16 A. Le Châtelier, *Les Confréries musulmanes du Hedjaz*, Paris 1887, 96, and Trimingham (1949), 231. The reason for al-Rashid's popularity among Indians is not explained.

17 Al-Rashīd (1974), 65-6.

18 *Ibid.*, 64-5.

19 *Manāqib wa-karāmāt ... al-Rashīd*, ms., f. 38; al-Tuhāmī, *R. al-dīn al-naṣīḥa*, ms., f. 60, and Trimingham (1949), 231.

preaching the doctrine of Ibn Idrīs in the Sudan, especially in the Shāyqiyya region. Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd died on 7 Sha'bān 1291/20 August 1874 and was buried in Mecca. He left only one daughter, 'Ā'isha, and the succession went to his nephew al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad b. Ṣāliḥ (c. 1854-1919).<sup>20</sup>

### *The Rashīdiyya and Ṣālihiyya*

Al-Shaykh was born at al-Kurū in the Shāyqiyya area in about 1854. He studied Mālikī law with his father Muḥammad, known as Wad al-Ṣughayr, who was a noted religious teacher in the region. After al-Rashīd's death, al-Shaykh left for Mecca to continue the work of his late uncle. There he married a woman of Moroccan origin, who was to become the mother of several sons, including al-Rashīd, Ahmad and Ibrāhīm.<sup>21</sup>

During al-Shaykh's first years in Mecca he sought to organize his uncle's followers into an order that came to be known as al-Rashīdiyya.<sup>22</sup> However, in about 1887, for reasons that are unclear, al-Shaykh established an offshoot of the Rashīdiyya which he called the Ṣālihiyya.<sup>23</sup> This latter ṭariqa would be viewed as being part of the Idrīsī tradition, simply because its teachings were based almost entirely on those of Ibn Idrīs.

The Ṣālihiyya rapidly gained popularity and found its way into parts of Asia and East Africa. It was especially successful along the coast of Somalia, where Somali religious figures, who had been initiated by al-Shaykh while on pilgrimage in Mecca, propagated the order. One of these Somali local representatives was Muḥammad Qūlid al-Rashīdī, who recruited many followers and established several agricultural settlements, an economic role which echoes that of the Grand Sanūsī in

<sup>20</sup> Karrār, thesis (1977), 76. Some Western sources give Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ as al-Rashīd's successor; see, for example, Trimingham (1949), 231, and B.G. Martin, *Muslim Brotherhoods in Nineteenth Century Africa*, Cambridge 1976, 179. This is an error based on reading "al-Shaykh" as a title and not as a name; see Karrār, thesis (1977), 76 and the oral sources cited there.

<sup>21</sup> Le Châtelier (1887), 96, and de Jong, *EI* 2, supplement, 279.

<sup>22</sup> Trimingham (1952), 243-4; I.M. Lewis, "Sufism in Somaliland", *BSOAS*, xvii, 1955, 580-602, and Martin (1976), 179.

<sup>23</sup> *Ibid.*

Libya and, more recently, Ahmад Bamba in Senegal.<sup>24</sup> Another local representative of the Ṣālihiyya in the Somalia was Muḥammad ʻAbd Allāh Ḥasan, the so-called “Mad Mullah” (1864-1920), who led his country’s resistance to the British and Italians between 1899 and 1920.<sup>25</sup>

The popularity of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, especially among wealthy Indian pilgrims, had enabled him to accumulate considerable wealth and thus to send regular aid, both in kind and in cash, to his relations in the Shāyqiyya region. The surviving correspondence of al-Rashid’s successor, al-Shaykh, who combined religion with trade and drew considerable wealth from the agricultural lands of his own ṭariqa, the Ṣālihiyya, in Somalia, shows that he kept up the tradition of aiding his relatives in the Shāyqiyya area.<sup>26</sup>

#### *‘Abdullāhī al-Dufārī and the Mahdist Cause*

‘Abdullāhī b. ‘Abd al-Ḥafīz b. ‘Abdullāhī b. ‘Alī was commonly known as ‘Abdullāhī al-Dufārī because his great-grandfather, *al-faqīh* Idrīs, once lived at the village of al-Nūq in the Dufār area. Al-Dufārī was born on Ḥusaynārtī Island in 1244/1828-9. His family, which had branches in Kūrtī, Tūtī Island, and al-Kawa and al-Qitayna in the White Nile area, was well known for its religious status.<sup>27</sup>

‘Abdullāhī al-Dufārī was a Bidayrī, but his pedigree also gives him, on his father’s side, a Bakrī origin, that is descent from Abū Bakr al-Ṣiddīq, the Prophet’s successor. His family shared a common ancestry with another famous holy family in the Shāyqiyya region, namely the

24 *Ibid*, and O’Fahey (1990), 163-5. On the Sanūsiyya, see Evans-Pritchard (1949), and on Bamba, O’Brien (1971).

25 The hostile colonial view of Muḥammad ʻAbd Allāh Ḥasan has been modified by modern scholarship; see, for example, Martin (1976), 177-201, and Said Samatar, *Oral Poetry and Somali Nationalism*, Cambridge 1982.

26 Letter from the Duwayhiyya of Duwaym Wad Ḥājj to al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Rashid in Mecca; dated 21 Ṣafar 1329/21 February 1911, Bergen NO 155. 7/11, and interview 2.

27 The following is based on two sources from within the Dufārī tradition, namely *Manāqib al-ḥājj ‘Abdullāhi al-Dufārī*, ms. in the possession of his descendants, and ‘Aydarūs ‘Abd al-Karīm, *Manāqib al-quṭb al-ḥājj ‘Abdullāhi al-Dufārī*, n.p., n.d.

Ḥamadūiyāb of Nūrī. Through his mother, Zaynab bt. ʻAbd al-Karīm, al-Dufārī was also a close relative of al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī through the latter's mother, Ruqayya.

After memorizing the Quran and receiving the normal education at the local Quranic school of ʻUthmān Ḥammād, al-Dufārī travelled with his parents to meet al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī at al-Jiwayr in the Shendi area. There he studied under al-Mīrghānī and stayed with him for eight years. But his master told him that his real teacher would be Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd.<sup>28</sup>

Al-Dufārī, together with his family, returned to his home village Ḥusaynārtī, where he lived for some years. He then travelled to the Ḥijāz, where he made the pilgrimage and met Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd. Al-Dufārī eventually returned to his village in the Sudan and began to initiate followers into the Ahmadiyya Muḥammadiyya ṭarīqa. Among his students was Șāliḥ b. Faḍl of Mōrā in the Shāyqiyya region.

Shaykh Șāliḥ was of Rikābī origin. His grandfather Ḥasan w. Bilayl, had been a follower of al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. Although a young man when initiated by al-Dufārī, he was appointed a *khalīfa*. Shaykh Șāliḥ, who was famed for his mastery of the rules of Quranic recitation (*tajwīd*), used his religious school at Mōrā as a centre for the Ahmadiyya. He initiated a considerable number of followers in Mōrā, Maṇṣūrkutī, al-Kuray, Qanatī and Maqāshī. Like his teacher al-Dufārī, Shaykh Șāliḥ also supported the Mahdist cause. His followers, together with those of his master, were, and still are, known as the Ahmadiyya-Anṣār. After his death in 1932, Shaykh Șāliḥ was succeeded by his son Ahmad, who is currently (1982) the head of the religious school and the Ahmadiyya *khalīfa* at Mōrā.<sup>29</sup>

After some years at Ḥusaynārtī al-Dufārī moved, in response to a Prophetic order, to the Gezira. He visited Umm Marriḥ, the centre of Ahmad al-Ṭayyib; in this sense al-Dufārī kept up the tradition of close ties with the Sammāniyya followed by all those influenced by Ibn Idrīs. This was further confirmed by his visit to the centre of al-Qurashī at al-Ḥalāwiyyīn. A Sammāniyya source reports that when al-Dufārī was in

28 *Manāqib* ... al-Dufārī, ms., f. 15, and ʻAbd al-Karīm, *Manāqib*, n.d., 7. While at al-Jiwayr, al-Dufārī's parents had two other sons, ʻAbd al-Karīm and Munawwar, who were both to become followers of the "way" of Ibn Idrīs and supporters of the Mahdi.

29 The above is based on ʻAbd al-Karīm, *Manāqib*, 12-3; *K. fī dhikrat al-sayyid Ghulām Allāh*, ms., 95-6, and interviews 8 and 22.

Mecca he asked al-Rashīd about the place (*maqām*) of al-Qurashī in the Sufi hierarchy. Al-Rashīd is reported to have said:

He [al-Qurashī] is the *quṭb* of the north. I frequently listened to his sayings, which prove that he is the *sultan* of the people of his age.<sup>30</sup>

Al-Dufārī also visited Qarī, where he stayed with *al-ḥājj* Ḥasan al-Sunnī, a student of Aḥmad b. Idrīs.<sup>31</sup> Although our sources make it difficult to establish a chronology for al-Dufārī's travels, it seems that he toured most of the Gezira before finally settling at al-Kawa in the White Nile area. There he established a religious centre and initiated many followers into the Way of Ibn Idrīs, the Aḥmadiyya Muḥam-madiyya *tariqa*. Among his students were Muḥammad Aḥmad, the future Mahdi, and the famous scholar al-Husayn w. al-Zahrā.<sup>32</sup>

Thus it was al-Dufārī, the student of al-Rashīd, who provided the link between the Sudanese Mahdi and Aḥmad b. Idrīs. This may explain why the Mahdi showed great respect to all those who were associated with the Idrisiyya school. We saw earlier how he tried to win over the members of the Mīrghānī family, offering them safe-conduct despite their hostility. Moreover, the Mahdi quoted in one of his earliest proclamations, dated Sha'bān 1298/June-July 1881, the following sayings of Ibn Idrīs about the Mahdist idea:

Shaykh Aḥmad b. Idrīs said: "fourteen generations of the people of God (*ahl Allah*) have denied the coming of the Mahdi".

He then said: "He [the Mahdi] will appear from a place unknown to them and in a condition that they will deny".<sup>33</sup>

Al-Dufārī and many of his students, including those of the Shāyqiyya region, were among the earliest supporters of the Mahdiyya. After the Mahdi had migrated to Jabal Qadīr on 7 Dhū'l-hijja 1298/1 November 1881, he wrote to al-Dufārī thanking him for his belief in his Mahdiship and urging him to come to him. Al-Dufārī went without delay and made a prolonged stay with his former student at Jabal Qadīr.<sup>34</sup>

30 Nūr al-Dā'im (1954), 307; see also ʻAbd al-Karīm, *Manāqib*, 9-10.

31 ʻAbd al-Karīm, *Manāqib*, 13-4.

32 *Ibid.*, 17; *Manāqib ... al-Dufārī*, ms., f. 19; Karrār, thesis (1977), 78.

33 Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Abū Salīm, ed., *Manshūrāt al-Mahdiyya*, Beirut 1969a, 19-22.

34 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 400, no. 839. See also ʻAbd al-Karīm, *Manāqib*, 16.

Another example of the followers of the Ahmadiyya Muhammadiyya who supported the Mahdiyya from the beginning was Muhammad al-Amin al-Hindi, who was, at that time, a religious teacher in the Jayli area, just north of the present-day Khartoum North. The Mahdi wrote to him in Sha'bān 1299/June-July 1882, authorizing him to administer the oath of allegiance (*bay'a*) on his behalf. In the same letter the Mahdi exhorted him to reject the *madhhabs* and to rely on the sources of Islam, the Quran and the *sunna*. He concluded by urging al-Hindi and his students to make the migration, *hijra*, and join him. This al-Hindi did, and remained with the Mahdi until his death at al-Rahad on 23 Rajab 1300/30 May 1883.<sup>35</sup>

Another such follower was Muhammad al-Amin w. al-Tuwaym of Salawa, near Shendi. He was one of the descendants of Shaykh al-Tuwaym, known as al-Tuwaymāb, of the village of al-Kuray in the Shāyqiyya region. Muhammad al-Tuwaym was a famous poet (*mādīh*). At the outset of the Mahdiyya, he and several of his relatives in the Shendi and the Shāyqiyya areas became supporters. Muhammad al-Tuwaym became a close friend of the Mahdi and his family. The latter repeatedly addressed him as *Ṣafiyunā wa-ḥabībunā*, "our beloved and best friend", and conferred upon him the title of *khalīfa Ḥassān*, that is the successor of Ḥassān b. Thābit, the Prophet's poet.

The Mahdi apparently held his former teacher al-Dufārī in respect. According to a *Manāqib* on al-Dufārī, the Mahdi once told some of his followers:

By God he [al-Dufārī] is a *quṭb*, and whoever rejects him will cut off his inheritance in Paradise.<sup>36</sup>

The Mahdi received the support of al-Dufārī's younger brothers, Munawwar and 'Abd al-Karīm, and appointed the latter as *amīr* for the Kawa area.<sup>37</sup> Al-Dufārī survived the Mahdiyya and continued his teaching activities until his death on 14 Dhū'l-hijja 1325/29 January 1908 at al-Kawa, where he was buried.<sup>38</sup>

The Mahdi's positive attitude toward the followers of the school of Ibn Idrīs may explain the clemency he offered to one of its adherents,

35 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 24, no. 44. See also O'Fahey (1982/3), 43-50.

36 'Abd al-Karīm, *Manāqib*, 11 and 15-16.

37 *Ibid.*, 16-17.

38 *Ibid.*, 31-2; see also Karrār, thesis (1977), 79.

Ḥusayn Khalīfa, the Turco-Egyptian Governor of Berber. After the fall of Berber to the Mahdist forces, Ḥusayn swore allegiance to the Mahdi, who pardoned him and his sons and instructed Aḥmad Sulaymān, the commissioner of the Mahdist treasury, *amīn bayt al-māl*, to grant them an appropriate sum of money. The Mahdi wrote, on 24 Rajab 1302/10 May 1885, to Muḥammad al-Khayr, his agent in the Berber area, telling him that Ḥusayn Khalīfa had been appointed *‘āmil ‘umūm al-jihāt al-Miṣriyya*, that is agent for the Mahdist cause among his own people, the *‘Abābda*.<sup>39</sup>

### *Muḥammad Aḥmad al-Dandarāwī*

Like his master, Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, Muḥammad Aḥmad al-Dandarāwī is erroneously stated to have founded an independent *ṭarīqa*; it was, in fact, established by his son.<sup>40</sup> Muḥammad al-Dandarāwī was born in 1255/1839-40 at Dandara, in Upper Egypt, into a religious family that claimed Sharifian descent. He was educated at his family's Quranic school, and became a teacher in his turn. He then travelled to the Ḥijāz, where he performed the pilgrimage and met Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, who taught him the doctrines of Ibn Idrīs.<sup>41</sup>

After the death of al-Rashīd in 1874, al-Dandarāwī left Mecca for the Sudan. There he made an extended stay in the Shāyqiyya region, where he was warmly welcomed. Some of the local people offered him plots of land and some palm trees.<sup>42</sup>

Muḥammad al-Dandarāwī lived for some time with his teacher's family at al-Kurū and Duwaym Wad Ḥājj in the Shāyqiyya area; it was he who built a tomb over the grave of his master's ancestor, *‘Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥājj*, at Duwaym Wad Ḥājj.<sup>43</sup>

39 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 149-50, no. 290; 266, no. 535, and 328, no. 668.

40 Martin (1976), 178, and *al-Muṣṣawar*, no. 2988, 20 Rabī‘ I 1402/15 January 1982, 38.

41 Interview 3; see also Karrār, thesis (1977), 79, and O'Fahey (1990), 165-6.

42 Interviews 3 and 22, and letter to the author from Professor Mohammed Omer Beshir, 10 October 1983.

43 Karrār, thesis (1977), 79.

In the missionary spirit of the school of Ibn Idrīs, al-Dandarāwī undertook an extensive preaching tour in the northern Sudan. His travels in the Shāyqiyya region took him to Manṣūrkutū, Karīma, al-Dahasīra and al-Kāsinger, where he initiated a number of followers. While at the last-named place, he built a tomb over the grave of al-Ḥājj al-Māhī, a student of al-Rashīd.<sup>44</sup>

Like al-Dufārī and other followers of the Ahmadiyya Muḥammadiyya, al-Dandarāwī, although he was an Egyptian, also supported the Sudanese Mahdi. He travelled with a group of his followers from the Shāyqiyya region to meet the Mahdi in Omdurman. When they arrived at Shendi, they were met with hostility by some of the Anṣār and their personal effects were confiscated by the *amīr* Wad Ḥamza, the Mahdi's representative in the area. The latter sent a dispatch with *amīr* ʻAbd al-Karīm, a brother of al-Dufārī, to Wad Ḥamza reproving him and ordering him to return the confiscated items. Wad Ḥamza expressed his regret for what had happened.<sup>45</sup> Al-Dandarāwī was prevented by illness from going to the Mahdi, but he authorized al-Dufārī, who was in Omdurman at the time, to swear allegiance to the Mahdi on his behalf.

Muhammad al-Dandarāwī then returned to the Shāyqiyya region where he declared himself the spiritual heir of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd. This caused resentment among many, especially those who had been initiated by al-Rashīd himself. Thus Muhammad al-Tuwaym, a student of al-Rashīd, wrote from his home village, Salawa, to al-Dandarāwī reproaching him for his claim.<sup>46</sup>

Our sources on al-Dandarāwī are too few to show the sequence of his travels. It seems that his visit to the Sudan was followed by one to Somalia.<sup>47</sup> It is also not clear when al-Dandarāwī returned to his home in Dandara, Upper Egypt, where he died in 1328/1910-11.<sup>48</sup> He was succeeded by his son, Abū'l-ʻAbbās (d. 1953), who broke away from

44 Interview 3.

45 ʻAbd al-Karīm, *Manāqib*, 19-20. Wad Ḥamza's loss of sight in a family dispute was later regarded as a *karāma* of al-Dandarāwī.

46 The letter, which is undated, is in the possession of *khalīfa* Muhammad al-Tuhāmī al-Ḥasan, Khartoum.

47 Martin (1976), 178 and 233 n. 9.

48 Karrār, thesis (1977), 80.

the Rashīdiyya and established an independent branch to be known as al-Dandarāwiyya after his father.<sup>49</sup>

### *The Idrīsiyya*

Ibn Idrīs' sons, Muḥammad and <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl, institutionalized their father's teachings into an order called the Idrīsiyya, or more formally *ṭariqa Muḥammadiyya Ahnadiyya Idrīsiyya*.<sup>50</sup>

Although the seat of this new *ṭariqa* was situated in the Dongola area, and at a later stage Omdurman, it also influenced the Shāyqiyya region through the students of al-Rashīd and the family's own pupils, whatever their *ṭariqa*. This is because all of them recognized the spiritual authority of the sons and descendants of Ibn Idrīs, who were venerated as possessors of *baraka*.<sup>51</sup> Although it is not clear when the Idrīsiyya was established, one may suggest that it was not until the death of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd in 1874 that the Idrīsiyya *ṭariqa* came into being. Al-Rashīd, who was regarded by the sons of Ibn Idrīs as their father's successor, died without leaving a son to follow him, and thus the succession passed to his nephew, whose first years in the office saw a decline in the adherents of the school of Ibn Idrīs.<sup>52</sup>

It was Muḥammad b. Ahmad b. Idrīs and his descendants who was responsible for the spread of the Idrīsiyya in the Yemen and in parts of Muslim Asia, whereas his brother <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl, and the latter's son Muḥammad, were responsible for its propagation in Upper Egypt, the

49 *Al-Muṣṣawar* (1982), 38. For the teachings of the Dandarāwiyya, see <sup>c</sup>Alī <sup>c</sup>Isā al-Āḥmadī, *K. al-Idāḥ li-ahl al-falāḥ*, ms., written by the former *khalīfa* (d. 1980) of the Dandarāwiyya in the Karīma district, now in the possession of his son, Abū'l-<sup>c</sup>Abbās <sup>c</sup>Alī, Karīma.

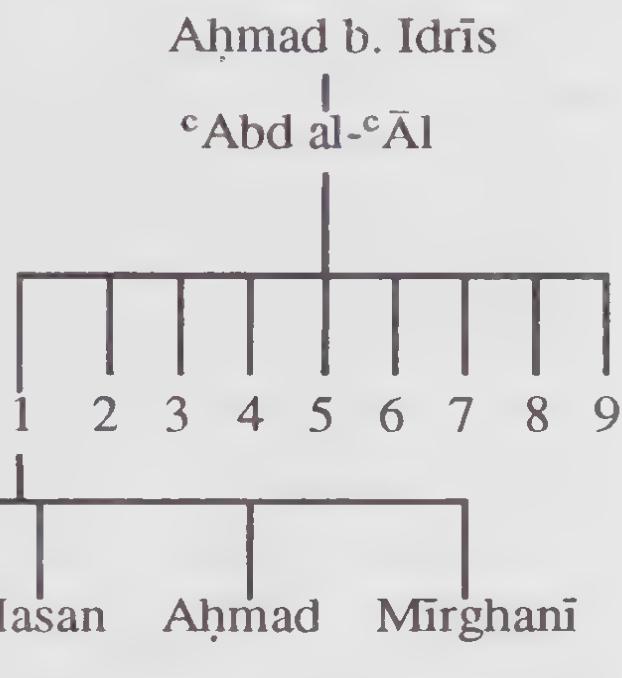
50 Interview 15; see also NRO, Intel., 2/32/270, p. 12, and Voll, thesis (1969), 101.

51 Interview 22.

52 De Jong, *EI* 2, supplement, 278-9.

DIAGRAM 6. *The Adārisa: the Sudan branch.*

1. Muḥammad
2. Muṣṭafā Ahmād b. Idrīs
3. al-Mā'mūn
4. Muḥammad al-Sanūsī
5. Muḥammad al-‘Arabī ‘Abd al-‘Āl
6. Muḥammad Idrīs
7. Al-Murtadā
8. Abū'l-Hasan
9. al-Amīn



Sudan and other parts of Muslim Africa.<sup>53</sup> Although the former also had close contacts and influence, especially in the Dongola area in the Sudan, our concern here is mainly with the latter.<sup>54</sup>

‘Abd al-‘Āl was born at Ṣabyā in the Yemen in 1246/1830-1; he was only seven years old when his father died. He memorized the Quran and studied other Islamic subjects with some of his father's students. His principal teacher, however, was al-Sanūsī, with whom he travelled to Upper Egypt and from there to Libya, where he remained until al-Sanūsī's death at Jaghbūb on 9 Ṣafar 1276/7 September 1859.<sup>55</sup>

After al-Sanūsī's death, ‘Abd al-‘Āl left for Egypt on his way to the Ḥijāz. In Cairo he met ‘Alī ‘Abd al-Ḥaqq al-Qūṣī, one of the students of Ibn Idrīs in al-Zayniyya, who asked him to come with him to Upper Egypt to meet the followers there. When ‘Abd al-‘Āl arrived at al-

53 Karrār, thesis (1977).

54 NRO, Intel., 2/32/270, p. 13.

55 Al-Rashid (1394/1974), 45; NRO, Northern Province, 1/25/263, and Intel., 6/7/22.

Zayniyya he found that the followers had transformed his father's house into a place of pilgrimage.<sup>56</sup>

<sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl was warmly received by the followers, who asked him to honour and bless them by marrying some of their daughters. Thus he married a daughter of *al-hājj* <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahīm, one of al-Zayniyya's notables. Shortly afterwards, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl married three other women and became the father of nine sons (see Diagram 6).<sup>57</sup>

<sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl stayed at al-Zayniyya for twelve years, during which he firmly established the Idrīsiyya. He also attempted to unite both the Sanūsiyya and the Khatmiyya under his *ṭariqa* on the grounds that their founders were his father's students. To achieve this, he sent some of his sons to study and "receive the Path" from both Muḥammad al-Mahdī al-Sanūsī and Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II, the head of the Khatmiyya in Egypt. Thus he sent his son Muḥammad to the latter, who initiated him into the Khatmiyya. Later Sirr al-Khatim also educated and initiated another member of the Adārisa, Muḥammad Idrīs b. <sup>c</sup>Alī b. Muḥammad.<sup>58</sup> However, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl failed to unite the brotherhoods.

In 1294/1877 <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl and his eldest son Muḥammad left for the Yemen via the Sudan. They reached Dongola in Rajab 1294/July-August 1877, where they were requested by Muṣṭafā Yāwar, the Governor of Dongola, and the people of the area to spend some time with them. They stayed for over a year; then on 28 Dhū'l-Qaḍā 1296/24 November 1878 <sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl died and was buried in the main mosque of Dongola.<sup>59</sup> A large tomb was built and the anniversary of his death (*ḥawliyya*) was, and still is, celebrated by the followers. Representatives of the adherents of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd and his students in the Shāyqiyya region also used to attend this and other occasions associated with the Idrīsiyya tradition.<sup>60</sup>

<sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl was succeeded by his son Muḥammad, who married into the people and lived at the village of Bayūd, near Arqū, which became an important centre for the Idrīsiyya. Muḥammad also maintained the missionary spirit of the Idrīsiyya and visited several villages and

56 NRO, Intel., 2/32/261, English title, "A general note on Tarikas in the Sudan"; contains Ar. ms. *Makḥṭūṭ taṭrīkh dūkhūl al-ṭarā'iq li'l-Sūdān*.

57 Al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 45.

58 NRO, Intel., 2/32/261, and Abū Salīm in 7/1/10, p. 10. See also Karrār, thesis (1977), 85.

59 NRO, Intel., 6/7/22.

60 Interview 22.

towns in the northern Sudan, establishing mosques and Quranic schools at al-Qa<sup>c</sup>b in Dongola, al-Duyyūm al-Qadīma in Khartoum (now Khartoum Two) and Omdurman. He also established a *takiyya* in the Ḥalfa region.<sup>61</sup>

The sons and descendants of Ibn Idrīs propagated the Idrīsiyya in Sudanese Nubia, which was under the influence of the Khatmiyya, especially the branch of Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim II of Egypt, and won many followers. This led to a dispute between the leaders of the two orders. The Khatmiyya considered the Idrīsiyya *ṭariqa* as subordinate to the Aḥmadiyya Muḥammadiyya (which is how they described the Rashīdiyya) on the grounds that Muḥammad b. Aḥmad b. Idrīs had sworn allegiance to al-Rashīd as Ibn Idrīs' successor.<sup>62</sup> Dr. Abū Salīm argues that the Idrīsiyya gained ground in Sudanese Nubia mainly because the Khatmiyya were led by local *khalīfas*, loyal to the Egyptian branch of the Khatmiyya.<sup>63</sup> The absence of the Mīrghānī family in the area enhanced the position of the Idrīsī family. By contrast, the Idrīsī family did not win as many followers in the Shāyqiyya region because their efforts there coincided with those of Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Mīrghānī II himself.

Like the Mīrghānī family, the Adārisa also enjoyed great influence and received gifts of lands and palm trees from the followers. A levy of 8 to 10 *midd* on each agricultural unit (*sāqiya*, lit. "waterwheel") used to be collected by a local representative from the adherents after the harvest. This was sold and the proceeds sent to the head of the order as contributions from the followers to cover the expenses of the *ṭariqa*. When the head of the order visited an area, the *khalīfas* would collect from each house a sum of 4 or 5 piasters or its equivalent in kind - for example, wheat, barley, or dates.<sup>64</sup>

The ties of the Idrīsī family to the Shāyqiyya region were indirect, being mainly through the followers of al-Rashīd. They also, however, sent voluntary gifts, both in cash and kind, to the descendants of Ibn

61 Kāmil Muḥammad Ḥasan al-Aḥmādī (n.d.), *Dumūc al-wafā<sup>c</sup> <sup>c</sup>alā imām al-ASFYĀ<sup>c</sup> [al-sayyid Muḥammad al-Sharīf b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Muta<sup>c</sup>āl]*, Khartoum, and Karrār, thesis (1977), 87.

62 NRO, Intel., 2/32/261.

63 NRO, Abū Salīm in 7/1/10, p. 5.

64 NRO, Northern Province, 1/19/127 "Abu el-Hasan Abdel Mutaal", and Karrār, thesis (1977), 88.

Idrīs.<sup>65</sup> The members of the Idrīsī family, for their part, also showed respect for and maintained friendly relations with the students and followers of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd.

Following the evacuation of Dongola by the Government troops in 1887 because of the Mahdist revolt, Muḥammad b. ʿAbd al-Āl took his family to al-Zayniyya, where he remained until 1897 when he returned to Dongola after its occupation by the British forces. He resumed his activities until his death in July 1936. He was succeeded by Mīrghānī, who had settled on Tanqāsī Island in about 1905-6; after his father's death he moved to Dongola.<sup>66</sup>

### *The Tijāniyya*

Aḥmad al-Tijānī was one of the key figures of Islam in nineteenth century Africa.

Concerning al-Tijānī's early life and travels, our knowledge is limited, being based effectively on only one source, which as Professor Abun-Nasr notes:

Left out many details which might have put his life and career in a different perspective.<sup>67</sup>

Within this context, it is worthwhile to note that there are traditions in the Sudan that al-Tijānī had lived as a merchant for five years in al-Ubayyiḍ in Kordofan.<sup>68</sup> He then returned to Morocco from where, in 1186/1772-3, he moved to the Ḥijāz. On his way he stopped at Algeria, where he was initiated by a local *muqaddam* into the Khalwatiyya.<sup>69</sup>

While in Medina, al-Tijānī's ties to the Khalwatiyya were confirmed when he was initiated by Muḥammad ʿAbd al-Karīm al-Sammān into the Sammāniyya Khalwatiyya. On his way back home from the Ḥijāz

65 Interview 22.

66 NRO, Northern Province, 1/25/263, and Karrār, thesis (1977), 89.

67 J.M. Abun Nasr, *The Tijaniyya. A Sufi Order in the Modern World*, London 1965, 15.

68 Mahmūd (1971), 58, and al-Idrīsī, thesis (1976), 43.

69 Abun-Nasr (1965), 18.

he visited Cairo, where he was again initiated into the Khalwatiyya, this time by Maḥmūd al-Kurdī al-Khalwatī (d. 1195/1780).<sup>70</sup>

There is a tradition among the followers of Ibn Idrīs that their master, presumably before he left Fez for Mecca in the middle of 1212/1797-8, had appointed Aḥmad al-Tijānī as a representative.<sup>71</sup> Aḥmad al-Tijānī established his own ṭariqa, the Tijāniyya in 1196/1781-2, declaring that he had received Prophetic permission to initiate others.<sup>72</sup> His order spread in North Africa and across the Sahara to West Africa.

The Tijāniyya was introduced into the western Sudan by a religious man of Hausa origin, ʻUmar Janbo, a pupil of Muḥammad al-Ṣaghīr b. ʻAlī, a student of the founder. He propagated the order in Dār Fūr and Kordofan, travelled widely in the region and also visited Egypt and the Ḥijāz. After the fall of the Mahdist state in 1898-9, he lived at al-Fāshir under the auspices of Sultan ʻAlī Dīnār (reigned 1898-1916), the Fūr sultan. But the Sultan suspected ʻUmar Janbo of making him ill by magic and he fled in 1908 to al-Ubayyid, and later to Omdurman. He continued onto the Ḥijāz, where he died and was buried in Mecca.<sup>73</sup>

The propagation of the Tijāniyya in the northern parts of the Sudan was, however, the work of another Tijānī missionary, Muḥammad b. al-Mukhtār b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān al-Shinqītī, known as Abū'l-ʻĀliya. He was born at Tashīt in Mauritania in about 1820. He received his education from members of his family; his mother, Fāṭima bt. al-ʻĀliya, was also well versed in the Islamic sciences.<sup>74</sup>

Abū'l-ʻĀliya combined religion with trade and travelled extensively. He visited Egypt, where he studied; he then left for the Ḥijāz, where he performed the pilgrimage. While in Medina in 1847, he received an *ijāzā* for the rank of *muqaddam* from Șāliḥ b. Aḥmad Balqāsim. He then returned to his home area and from there travelled to Timbuktu,

70 al-Ḥasan b. *al-ḥājj* Muḥammad al-Shādhili, *K. Ṭabaqāt al-Shādhiliyya al-kubrā*, Cairo (1347/1928-29), 164-5.

71 *Tarjamat al-ʻalāma al-sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs* (1315/1897-8), 5. Al-Nabḥānī (n.d.), i, 349, places his biography of al-Tijānī immediately after his long notice of Ibn Idrīs (i, 341-9) and opens his account of al-Tijānī with the words, “*ajall khulafā’ sayyidi Aḥmad b. Idrīs*”: “The most prominent of the *khalīfas* of Ibn Idrīs”.

72 Abun-Nasr (1965), 19.

73 NRO, Intel., 2/32/270, p. 26.

74 Al-Tijānī, *Ghāyat al-amānī*, 104.

Borno, Wadai and, finally, the Sudan. In Dār Fūr he initiated Sultan Muḥammad al-Ḥusayn (ruled 1838-73) and acted as his ambassador to Egypt. While in Cairo, he initiated Muḥammad Sa‘īd Pasha (ruled 1854-63), the Viceroy of Egypt, and returned in 1858 with presents from him to Sultan Muḥammad al-Ḥusayn.<sup>75</sup>

Abū'l-‘Āliya travelled to Sawākin, where he lived for some years. He then moved to Berber with a certain Zayn al-‘Ābdīn al-Maghribī. In Berber, Abū'l-‘Āliya initiated many followers, including Muḥammad al-Khayr, a teacher of the Mahdi and later his representative in Berber; Abū'l-Qāsim Aḥmad Hāshim (d. 1939), a scholar and legal notable, and some of his sons and brothers; and finally Muddathir Ibrāhīm al-Ḥajjāz (1855-1937), a religious notable who served the Mahdi and the Khalīfa as secretary and was the keeper of the latter's private seal. After Zayn al-‘Ābdīn's death, a dispute over his property took place between his relatives and Abū'l-‘Āliya, who eventually moved and settled on Umm Ḥarāhir Island, south of Shendi. There he married into the local people and acquired large landed properties.<sup>76</sup> Before his death in 1882, he had initiated many followers; among them was Aḥmad al-Huday al-Sawarābī, who introduced the Tijāniyya into the Shāyqiyya region.

Aḥmad al-Huday was born about the mid-nineteenth century at the village of Uslī, west of Misāwī Island in the Shāyqiyya region. His family belonged to the Kufunja branch of the Sawarāb sub-section of the Shāyqiyya. They moved after the Turco-Egyptian invasion of 1821 and settled at Wādī Bishāra, at the northern end of al-Sabalūqa gorge. Al-Huday visited Abū'l-‘Āliya at Umm Ḥarāhir and was initiated by him into the Tijāniyya.<sup>77</sup>

It is not clear when al-Huday began to preach the Tijāniyya in the Shāyqiyya region. According to an oral source, he had visited the Shāyqiyya area already during the colonial period and initiated followers into his order; one may suggest that it was not until the beginning of the Mahdiyya in 1881 that the Tijāniyya began openly to gain followers. This may be supported by the fact that "the Tijāniyya were persecuted under the Egyptian occupation", and that they used to conceal

<sup>75</sup> *Ibid.*, 105; Trimingham (1949), 237, and Hill (1967), 267.

<sup>76</sup> NRO, Intel., 3/32/261, p. 10 and Intel., 2/32/262. See also Hill (1967), 23 and 243.

<sup>77</sup> NRO, Intel., 2/32/261, p. 10, and interview 8.

their *ṭarīqa*. This was presumably because several of their practices and beliefs were considered by many Muslims as heretical.<sup>78</sup>

With the coming of the Mahdiyya, al-Huday swore allegiance to Muḥammad al-Khayr, the Mahdi's representative in Berber. Al-Huday was also appointed as *‘āmil* of Dongola province in the place of Muṣṭafā Yāwar.<sup>79</sup> On his arrival as the Mahdi's representative, al-Huday appointed his relative Shaykh al-Ṭayyib al-Sawarābī as his agent in the Shāyqiyya region (see p. 96). Al-Huday and members of his family began to preach the Tijāniyya in the region and won many followers.<sup>80</sup> This happened at a time when the Sufi orders had already been banned by the Mahdi's proclamation of the middle of 1301/the beginning of 1884. This combination of the Tijāniyya and the Mahdiyya is clear from an undated letter deplored the practice which was issued by the Khalifa, in the lifetime of the Mahdi, to all the believers.<sup>81</sup> The Tijāniyya did not gain a great following in the main centres of the Khatmiyya within the Shāyqiyya region, such as Nūrī, al-Zūma, Abū Rannāt and al-Jirayf. Its followers were found mainly in areas that were inhabited by the Sawarāb or their relatives - for instance, in Uslī, al-Bāsā, al-Dibayba, al-Kurū and al-Qurayr.<sup>82</sup>

Al-Huday declared a *jihād* against Muṣṭafā Yāwar Pasha and was joined by many Hawwāra and Ḥassāniyya. His army was also reinforced when Nu‘mān w. Qamar, head of the Manāṣir, joined him with his people.<sup>83</sup> Al-Huday is said to have forced many Shāyqiyya, including the local *khalīfas* of the Khatmiyya, to join his army.

Aḥmad al-Huday fought two unsuccessful battles against Yāwar at al-Dabba on 18 May and 29 June 1884. He realized that he would not be able to face his enemy without reinforcements, so he appealed to the Mahdi. The latter, then at al-Rahad in Kordofan and about to leave for Khartoum, sent a force under his relative Maḥmūd al-Ḥājj whom he appointed *‘āmil ‘umūm* (general agent) of Dongola, ordering al-Huday to join him.

<sup>78</sup> Trimmingham (1949), 238, and Abun-Nasr (1965), 27.

<sup>79</sup> R.C. Slatin, *Fire and Sword in the Sudan*, London 1896, 172, and Shuqayr (1903), iii, 234.

<sup>80</sup> Interviews 6 and 8.

<sup>81</sup> Abū Salīm (1970), 45-8.

<sup>82</sup> Interviews 6 and 8.

<sup>83</sup> The following is based on Shuqayr (1903), iii, 239-40.

The Mahdist army, however, was defeated for the third time in September 1884. Maḥmūd al-Ḥājj and al-Huday, together with many of their supporters and those forced to join them, were killed. The villages of al-Dabba and al-Karad were burnt to the ground by the Government forces. This indiscriminate sacking also included the town of Kūrtū, an important trading centre in the Shāyqiyya region.

The development of the Tijāniyya after the death of al-Huday is not clear. Apparently some of his relatives, especially those living at Wad Hāmid south of Shendi, continued his activities.<sup>84</sup> A follower of al-Huday, al-Fadl al-Nabrī, a descendant of the Awlād Jābir, and his own sons remained loyal to their master's relatives and acted as representatives for the Tijāniyya in the Karafāb area of the Shāyqiyya region.<sup>85</sup>

84 Interview 8.

85 *K. fī dhikrat ... Ghulām Allāh*, ms., pp. 36-7.

# 6

## STRUCTURE AND ORGANIZATION

### *The Shaykh and his Followers*

We distinguished earlier between two types of *tariqa* in the Sudan, the “ancient” and the “new” centralized ones. The ancient orders, namely the Qādiriyya and the Shādhiliyya, were autonomous units, being divided into geographically-defined areas. Each of these had its own independent shaykh and its distinctive chain of transmission of spiritual authority (*silsila* or *sanad*). The only meeting ground between these sometimes antagonistic units was the common homage they paid to the founder. None of these “units”, however, seems to have established a proper hierarchy during the Funj period. A shaykh of a *tariqa* unit, who was usually a religious teacher, had no barrier between him and his students and followers. As Dr. Mahmoud Abdalla Ibrahim notes:

His [the shaykh's] relationship with them [the followers] was direct, face-to-face and personal.<sup>1</sup>

It seems, however, that these autonomous units of the ancient *tariqas* began to adopt a hierarchical structure after the Turco-Egyptian invasion of 1821, which put an end to the Funj Sultanate and imposed a centralized administration.<sup>2</sup> The Turkiyya, despite its limitations and shortcomings, created a form of infrastructure which facilitated the efforts of the various *tariqas* to consolidate their position and to establish an effective administration.

In contrast to the geographically-limited units of the ancient *tariqas*, the new centralized ones, which were consciously missionary in spirit, were widespread. Again, unlike the ancient orders, their followers shared a common devotional life.

The structure of the orders varied, for example in the number of offices and in the names adopted for them. They, however, also had much in common. The heart of every *tariqa* was its shaykh, who was believed

1 Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 134.

2 ‘Abd al-Majid (1949), i, 245.

to be divinely authorized to teach and guide people in their worldly life and in the hereafter. In return for his guidance, he received great respect and absolute authority.

All the *ṭariqas* were agreed that an aspirant who desired a safe arrival at his goal (i.e. perfect knowledge of God) should put himself under the guidance of a shaykh. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī I quotes one of the early Sufi teachers, Abū Yazīd al-Bistāmī (d. 260/874-5):

He who has no shaykh, his shaykh is Satan.<sup>3</sup>

Al-Mīrghānī distinguished between three grades (*marātib*, sing. *martaba*) of shaykh. The first and the most sublime was that of *shaykh al-tahqīq*, namely one who had attained complete spiritual truth and was qualified to guide aspirants towards that goal. The *shaykh al-tahqīq* had certain attributes, duties and rights (see p. 127). The second category was the *shaykh al-tabarruk*, a general title adopted by al-Mīrghānī for his representatives, who derived their position and *baraka* from him. Al-Mīrghānī stressed the fact that the *shaykh al-tabarruk* was not a true shaykh like the *shaykh al-tahqīq*, but merely a representative who was to be called *khalifa*, *nā’ib* or *naqīb*, according to his position in the *ṭariqa*'s hierarchy. Al-Mīrghānī repeatedly reminded his representatives that they were not independent shaykhs and that they should repress any tendency on the part of the followers to call them such. The *shaykh al-tabarruk* was also expected to remind his adherents that he did not possess *madad* (divine assistance) and that they were to seek it from the head of the order alone. Al-Mīrghānī concluded his instructions to the *shaykh al-tabarruk* that laxity in observing them would result in expulsion from the order.<sup>4</sup>

The last grade in al-Mīrghānī's category of shaykhs was that of *shaykh al-qirā'a*, i.e. a teacher of the Quran or other Islamic sciences. Somewhat paradoxically, al-Mīrghānī stated that the *shaykh al-qirā'a* was to confine his teaching only to the Quran and *‘ilm* and not to instruct people in Sufism.<sup>5</sup>

Al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd w. Badr of the Qādiriyya also distinguished between those shaykhs responsible for teaching and those for spiritual

3 Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, *al-Hibāt al-muqtabasa li-iżhār al-masā'il al-khamṣa*, in *al-Rasā'il al-Mīrghāniyya*, 23.

4 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Zuhūr al-fā'iqa*, in *al-Rasā'il al-Mīrghāniyya*, 49-52.

5 *Ibid.*

guidance. Al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd referred to the former as *shuyūkh al-ta‘līm* and to the latter as *shuyūkh al-ifāda wa’l-tarqiya*.<sup>6</sup>

Several titles, apart from shaykh, were used for the heads of ḥarāqas. Al-Mīrghānī in addition to *shaykh al-taḥqīq*, also used *murshid*, “spiritual guide”, or *murabī*, “educator”.<sup>7</sup>

According to al-Mīrghānī, the shaykh of a ḥarāqa was usually known for his righteousness and good will. He combined the Sharia with *haqīqa* (Sufism) and was authorized by God and the Prophet to teach and guide people. Moreover:

If he speaks, it is by God. If he grants supernatural help [*madad*], it is from God. And if he receives it, it is for God.<sup>8</sup>

The shaykh was believed to be divinely guided and incapable of sin. Whatever his actions, even if they were in open contravention of the Sharia, they had to be understood within the context of his infallibility. Thus the term *imām* appears in the biographies of, for example, Shaykh Idrīs w. al-Arbāb and Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī I, presumably in the same sense as the infallible *imām* of the Shī‘a.<sup>9</sup>

The various ḥarāqas formulated sets of rules that defined the rights and duties of their members and regulated relations among themselves and with the outside world. These rules reflected the absolute authority of the shaykhs, who expected the total submission of their adherents. Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib and al-Mīrghānī warned the followers of all ḥarāqas against arguing with their spiritual masters, for:

He who says to his shaykh “why?” will never succeed [sc. in any endeavour].<sup>10</sup>

The rules also authorized the shaykh to control his follower’s private lives. Members were not expected, for example, to marry or travel without first obtaining their master’s permission.<sup>11</sup> We saw earlier the

6 Muḥammad b. Aḥmad al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd Badr, *K. sirāj al-sālikin*, Cairo 1920, 8.

7 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Zuhūr al-fā’iqā*, 49; *idem*, *al-Hibāt al-muqtabasa*, 28.

8 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Hibāt al-muqtabasa*, 27.

9 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 50; see also Muḥammad ʻUthmān b. ʻAlī al-Mīrghānī, *Majallat al-Faṭḥ*, no.1, Ramadān 1402/June-July 1982, 10-11.

10 Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib b. al-Bashīr, *al-Hikam al-musammā bi’l-nafas al-rahmāni fī’l-ṭawr al-insāni*, Cairo 1955, 161; see also al-Mīrghānī, *al-Hibāt al-muqtabasa*, 24.

11 Aḥmad b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān al-Raṭbī, *Minḥat al-ashāb ... in al-Rasā’il al-Mīrghāniyya*, 66.

case of a Khatmiyya senior representative in the Shāyqiyya region, <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Ḥalīm al-Naqīb, whose death upon his arrival in Egypt was attributed to his refusal to seek his master's permission to go there.

The adherent was required to show respect to his shaykh; he was enjoined to sit in his presence "as if he were performing the prayers",<sup>12</sup> that is, cross-legged with his hands on his knees. Furthermore, he was not to sit on his master's prayer-mat, to use his private *ibriq* (water container for ablution), or to lean on his stick. The family of the shaykh was also entitled to respect from the adherents of the order. The belief in the equality of all the members of the Mīrghānī family made them (including those who were living outside the Sudan) beneficiaries of gifts, favours and respect.

Paradoxically, the title "shaykh" was never adopted for the founder of the Khatmiyya or for any member of his family. Al-Mīrghānī was, for instance, referred to as *al-sayyid*, *al-ustādh*, *al-imām* and *al-khatim*. Another example is his son al-Ḥasan, whose name was generally preceded by *al-sayyid* and, sometimes, *al-ustādh*.<sup>13</sup>

In the Ismā'iliyya ḥarīqa, "shaykh" was reserved exclusively to describe Ismā'īl al-Walī, the founder of the order. His successor was referred to as *khalīfat al-ustādh* or *al-khalīfa al-mutawalī*, i.e. the *khalīfa* in charge of the order.<sup>14</sup>

### *Succession to the Office of Shaykh*

Eligibility for the office of shaykh was almost entirely by descent from the founder. Succession was almost exclusively in the male line, although it could be transmitted through females. The shaykh usually nominated his successor before his death. The system of succession in the Mikāshfiyya branch of the Qādiriyya in the Gezira was that if the former shaykh had been married to more than one wife, the right of the succession went first to the eldest son of the first wife and then to that of the second wife, and so on. However, heads of ḥarīqas were not al-

12 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Hibāt al-muqtabasa*, 29.

13 For examples, see *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 1, 4, 73 and 77, and al-Mīrghānī, in *Majallat al-Faṭḥ*, 2, 5 and 10.

14 Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 148.

ways succeeded by their eldest sons.<sup>15</sup> Several examples have been given of shaykhs who died without nominating their successors; these usually led to serious disputes among the followers.

In the Mahdist period, electing a successor was not simply an internal affair of the order. Upon al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd’s death in January 1885, his family received a letter from the Mahdi in which he expressed his condolences and appointed Ahmad, the eldest son of the deceased shaykh, as a successor.<sup>16</sup> Similarly the Mahdi wrote to the descendants of Shaykh Idrīs w. al-Arbāb on 17 Rabī‘ II 1302/3 February 1885, nominating ‘Alī Ḥamad Muḥammad Barakāt to succeed their previous shaykh.<sup>17</sup>

The new shaykh was believed to inherit the position, *baraka* and *sirr*, “secret [of the Path]”, of his predecessor. This latter belief was further developed by al-Mīrghānī, who called himself *al-khatim*, (the “seal [of all the saints]”, *khatim al-awliyā’*), and named his first son Muḥammad *sirr al-khatim*. This son is believed to have passed on the same “secret” to his own son, Muḥammad *sirr al-khatim* II.<sup>18</sup>

In the Qādiriyya the new shaykh inherited certain items known as *ālāt* (lit. “tools”), which were considered to be the physical symbols of continuity of authority.<sup>19</sup> The ‘Arakiyyūn branch of the Qādiriyya is an example: the successor usually inherited his predecessor’s *sajjāda* or prayer-mat, *rakwa* or *ibrīq* (water container for ablution); a *sibha alfiyya*, a large rosary consisting of a thousand *lālōba* seeds from the *hijlij* (*Balanites aegyptiaca*) tree, and a Y-shaped stick called *shi‘ba*. He also received the *jubba* or gown and *kūfiyya* (headdress) of Ḥabīb Allāh al-‘Ajāmī, al-‘Arakī’s Sufi master, together with the latter’s own *jubba*. Furthermore, the new shaykh also inherited a short and thick iron spear known as *umm kraysha*, and wooden shoes or *karkab* to be used in the *dhikr* ritual. Other items included wooden stools (sing. *kakar*), the standards of the order (*rāyāt*), and, finally, the *karrāb* or waist-band.<sup>20</sup>

15 One interesting example of a female who succeeded a deceased shaykh is the daughter of Shaykh ‘Alī Abū Dilayq. See Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 72.

16 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 264-5, no. 535.

17 *Sanad ... al-Muḥammadiyya*, ms., Bergen KH 322. 15/29.

18 NRO, Intel. 2/32/270, p. 15, and Osman, thesis (1978), 22.

19 Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 323-4, and ‘Abd al-Majīd (1949), i, 248.

20 Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 208 and 324.

## The Hierarchy

There is considerable variation in the titles adopted by the various orders for the office immediately below that of shaykh. The Khatmiyya used *nā'ib*, "deputy"; his office was considered to be the most important in the hierarchy in that he assisted the shaykh in administering the *ṭariqa*.<sup>21</sup> The parallel official in the Ismā'iliyya was called *wazīr*, in the other *ṭariqas*, however, he was simply called *khalīfa*.<sup>22</sup>

In the Khatmiyya, below the office of *nā'ib*, came that of *khalīfat al-khulafā'*, lit. "the *khalīfa* of the *khalīfas*" or senior *khalīfa*. This office, however, was also adopted by the Ismā'iliyya, who borrowed much from the Khatmiyya organizational structure, in the time of Muḥammad al-Makki b. Ismā'il al-Walī.<sup>23</sup> The *khalīfat al-khulafā'* was authorized to lead and supervise all religious and secular activities of the order in his locality. He was also required to hold regular meetings with the *khalīfas* under his jurisdiction and to consult them on the affairs of the *ṭariqa*. In cases of disagreement, a vote would be taken. However, the *khalīfat al-khulafā'* had the casting vote. He also had the right to take decisions on urgent matters without seeking his *khalīfas*' counsel. Another office, which was also peculiar to the Khatmiyya, was *al-nā'ib al-ṣāmm*, "the deputy-general", whose duty it was to take over in the *khalīfat al-khulafā'*'s absence or illness.

Below the offices of *khalīfat al-khulafā'* and his deputy came the local *khalīfas* or representatives, who were known in the Khatmiyya as *khulafā' al-balad* or *al-nāhiya*. Like other officials, these *khalīfas* were entitled to their followers' respect and obedience. If one of the adherents disobeyed his *khalīfa*, the matter would be raised with the *khalīfat al-khulafā'*, who was authorized to reprimand the adherent in the presence of a number of the *khalīfas*. The rest of the followers would be enjoined not to talk or associate with the disobedient follower. The errant adherent, however, would be given a chance to express his sorrow and to repent. If he continued to show no sign of regret, the *khalīfat al-khulafā'*

21 Al-Mirghani, *Minwāl al-ṭariqa*, in *al-Rasā'il al-Mirghaniyya*, 94.

22 Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 148.

23 Al-Mirghani, *Minwāl al-ṭariqa*, 94, and Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 94-5.

and his assistants would use their authority to expel him from the order.

Below the office of *khalīfa*, the Khatmiyya and the Ismā‘īliyya had the rank of *umanā‘* (sing. *amīn*), “trustee”. Although, in the Khatmiyya, this office came immediately after that of the *khalīfa*, they in fact enjoyed much greater religious prestige in the order. Their duties were limited to the religious affairs of the *tariqa* and they were authorized to investigate the religious performance of all the officials, including the *khalīfat al-khulafā‘*, and to report any laxity to the head of the order himself. The *umanā‘* in the Ismā‘īliyya *tariqa* comprised seven officials whose duty it was to inspect the daily performance of devotions. Unlike the *umanā‘* of the Khatmiyya, those of the Ismā‘īliyya were not authorized to report cases of laxity to the head of the order, but to an official called *naqīb* or to his deputy, *wakīl al-naqīb*.

An office which existed in the hierarchies of all the *tariqas* was that of *muqaddam*. This title, which was originally used by Islamic armies for the leader of a detachment, was borrowed by the Sufi orders. Its place in the different hierarchies, however, varied considerably. In the Tijāniyya, for instance, it ranked immediately below the office of *khalīfa* and the person invested with it was licensed to initiate followers.<sup>24</sup> By contrast, the *muqaddam* of the Khatmiyya was not authorized to preach and his function was administrative. He was required to receive the visitors of the order and to arrange for their food and accommodation.

Another office common to both the Khatmiyya and Ismā‘īliyya was the *naqīb*. Al-Mīrghānī created this office on the analogy with the twelve *naqībs* appointed by the Prophet among the *Anṣār* in Medina.<sup>25</sup> The main function of the *naqīb* was to arrange for the daily prayers and the *dhikr*. He was also expected to exhort the followers to observe the devotions of the order and the prescribed time for their performance. Furthermore, he had to work with the *khalīfat al-khulafā‘* of his locality and act as a liaison between him and his *khalīfas*. The Ismā‘īliyya adopted the title *naqīb al-umanā‘* for the head of the board of trustees mentioned earlier. He was assisted by a *wakīl* or deputy and his status was apparently higher than that of the *naqīb* of the Khatmiyya. The *naqīb al-umanā‘* was not responsible for arranging prayers or sessions of

24 Abun-Nasr (1965), 18.

25 Al-Raṭbī, *Minhāt al-ashāb*, 74-5.

*dhikr*, that duty was entrusted by Muḥammad al-Makkī to an official called *shaykh al-dhikr*.

The organization of the Khatmiyya included another office unique to it, namely that of the *ḥukkām* (sing. *ḥākim*, “judge”). The incumbents of this office were entrusted with the duty of advising members of the *ṭariqa* on legal matters and were also authorized to intervene in disputes.

In the Ismā‘iliyya, the office which came immediately below that of the *amīn* was the *wā‘iz* or preacher. He was responsible for the sanctity of the mosque and for organizing the followers at times of prayers. Another office peculiar to the Ismā‘iliyya was that of *al-rā‘ī* or protector of the rights or “etiquette” of the *ṭariqa*. His main duty was to implement disciplinary measures against members found guilty of violating the order’s rules.

Among the lower echelons of the organization of the *ṭariqas* were the attendants of mosques and shrines, *khuddām al-jawāmi‘* and *ḥurrās al-ādīha*. The former were required to sweep and clean the mosque in their locality and the latter had to guard the shrines of the order, clean them and be certain that visitors observed the rules of visitation (*ziyāra*). The Khatmiyya authorized its local *khalīfas* to appoint a number of followers as *khuddām hadāyā* (lit. “servants of gifts”), whose duty it was to collect offerings and gifts from the adherents and to make them ready for a personal representative of the head of the order known as *mandūb* or emissary. Female members could hand over their gifts to female voluntary officials known as *ḥuwārāt*. The *khalīfa* had the right to dismiss any of these officials in case of laxity and to replace him or her with a more responsible follower.<sup>26</sup>

The different *ṭariqas* included some individuals with defined roles who had no fixed rank in the hierarchy. These included, for instance, the *mandūb*, “emissary”; the *mādīh*, “chanter of religious songs”; *munshid*, “chanter of canticles”, who were also known in the Sammāniyya as *shu‘ār*. Others included the drummers and the bearers of the standards (*rayāt*) of the *ṭariqas*.<sup>27</sup>

Below the formal hierarchies came the mass of the *murīdīn* or adherents. The titles adopted for these followers again vary considerably. The Qādiriyya, for instance, referred to them interchangeably as *hīrān* (sing. *ḥuwār*, lit. “a young camel”) or *fuqarā’* (sing. *faqīr*, i.e. the one who is

26 Al-Mirghānī, *Minwāl al-ṭariqa*, 95, and interview 9.

27 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 27; Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), *jīm*, n. 1, and Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 148.

spiritually poor).<sup>28</sup> These titles were also employed for the students of religious schools, reflecting the inseparability of Sufism and orthodoxy in Sudanese Islam. The followers of the Khatmiyya, like those of all the new *ṭariqas*, were known as *ikhwān* or "brethren".

The adherents of all *ṭariqas* may be divided into two categories: the adepts and lay-members. The former constituted only a small group in each order. In the Khatmiyya, for example, they were divided into two groups, namely the "elect", *al-khawāṣṣ*, and "the elect of the elect", *khawāṣṣ al-khawāṣṣ*.<sup>29</sup> Some of the adepts lived almost permanently in the centres of the *ṭariqas*. These were usually known as *mulāzimīn*, a term that implies constant attendance and personal service by these followers for their shaykhs.<sup>30</sup> As we noted elsewhere, the *mulāzimīn* of the Khatmiyya included voluntary attendants called *awlād al-bayt*. The various orders formulated disciplinary rules for their followers. These regulations, as we have seen, defined the relationship between the adherents and their spiritual masters. Our concern here is to discuss how these rules regulated the common life of the followers of a particular *ṭariqa* and defined their relations with outsiders. This, however, requires an account of the social constituency of the *ṭariqas*.

### *The Social Constituency of the Order*

Sufism and orthodoxy cannot be divorced from each other in Sudanese Islam. In this sense, the hypotheses of Geertz and Gellner of dividing Islam in Morocco into two opposing models of "orthodox urban" and "mystic rural" are inapplicable to the Sudan.<sup>31</sup> The Sufi brotherhoods, which dominated the Sudanese religious landscape, drew their members from all walks of life, from both town and countryside. These members included sultans and rulers (in the case of Qādiriyya during the Funj period), religious teachers, *qādīs*, tribal chiefs, merchants, farmers,

28 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 283-4, and Osman, thesis (1978), 37.

29 Al-Mirghānī, *al-Zuhūr al-fā'iqa*, 52-3.

30 *Ibid.*, and Osman, thesis (1978), 32.

31 See further C. Geertz, *Islam Observed. Religious Development in Morocco and Indonesia*, Chicago 1971, and E. Gellner, *Saints of the Atlas*, London 1969; for a critique of their model, see V.J. Cornell, "The logic of analogy and the role of the Sufi Shaykh in post-Marinid Morocco", *IJMES*, xv (1983), 67-93.

nomads, and finally, government officials. Women, children and slaves could also be members; the latter were also frequently given to religious men as an endowment in the Sudan. Women did not participate in the ceremonies of their *ṭariqa*, but demonstrated their allegiance by attending the rituals as observers and making gifts to the head of the order and members of his family. The adherence of fathers to the *ṭariqas* often determined that of their children; many families in the Sudan have been loyal to their *ṭariqas* for generations.<sup>32</sup>

Most of the senior representatives in the *ṭariqas* were drawn from families and individuals of superior religious and social status. Occasionally, people of humble origin were also appointed. On one occasion the founder of the Khatmiyya invested a slave owned by a woman with the office of *khalifa*.<sup>33</sup>

Sufi *ṭariqas* in the Sudan and elsewhere in the Muslim world played significant unifying roles by cutting across the social backgrounds of their followers and bringing them together into associations of mutual help. A follower, by virtue of his initiation, could seek advice, hospitality and assistance from his fellows, especially in cases of hardship.<sup>34</sup> Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī I, exhorted his adherents to live together as brothers:

the brotherhood of the *ṭariqa* is similar to that of kinship.<sup>35</sup>

He also urged his followers to visit each other frequently and to exchange letters with their fellows in other areas. Furthermore, all the followers were expected to be present at the centres of the order on the last Friday of every month, to meet and participate in a communal recital of the *rātib*, a collection of devotions composed by the founder.<sup>36</sup>

The *ṭariqas* may be divided on the basis of their attitudes towards outsiders into two categories, tolerant and intolerant. Thus the founder of the Khatmiyya asserts:

32 Trimingham (1949), 206, and Osman, thesis (1978), 45.

33 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 13-14.

34 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Hibāt al-muqtasaba*, 32; Trimingham (1971), 225-6; M. Gilsenan, *Saints and Sufis in Modern Egypt. An Essay in the Sociology of Religion*, Oxford 1973, 88, and Osman, thesis (1978), 47.

35 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Hibāt al-muqtasaba*, 32.

36 Al-Mīrghānī, *Minwāl al-ṭariqa*, 94.

I remind you, O community of aspirants, that our *tariqa* is the greatest of all *tariqas* and the closest to God.<sup>37</sup>

Despite this, he recognized the spiritual validity of other orders and permitted his followers to combine their devotions with those of his own. He repeatedly reproached all those who did not acknowledge *tariqas* other than their own. Al-Mīrghānī also allowed his adherents to venerate and visit living and dead shaykhs of other orders and urged them to behave with modesty and respect towards their followers.<sup>38</sup> We have already seen how the adherents of the Khatmiyya endeavoured to put these instructions into practice (see, for instance, pp. 80-1).

By contrast, an intolerant *tariqa* such as the Tijāniyya considered its followers as an exclusive and superior class of Muslims and its shaykh, Ahmad al-Tijānī, the seal of the whole body of saints. It did not permit pluralism of allegiance nor did it allow its devotions to be combined with others; disobedience would lead to a state of disbelief (*kufr*). Again in contrast to other *tariqas*, the Tijāniyya insisted that its followers should not visit non-Tijāniyya shaykhs living or dead.<sup>39</sup>

The *tariqas*, as part of their disciplinary code, also regulated the dress of their affiliates. Certain ways of dress became associated with particular orders. The Qādiriyya, for instance, usually wore patched *jubbas* and coarse garments. Shaykh Khōjalī, however, who combined the Qādiriyya with the Shādhiliyya, used to dress, following the example of Abū'l-Hasan al-Shādhili, in fine clothes. The *Tabaqāt* states that when it was remarked to Shaykh Khōjalī that the Qādiris only wore *jubbas* and patched clothes, he replied,

My clothes proclaim to all human beings "We are in no need of you" but their clothes say, "We are in need of you".<sup>40</sup>

The founder of the Khatmiyya expressed his dislike of the patched *jubbas* and the dress of the dervishes. He frequently urged his followers to appear decently dressed. He also established the tradition of bestow-

37 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Hibāt al-muqtabasa*, 26.

38 Ibid., 33, and al-Rātbī, *Minhāt al-ashāb*, 73.

39 *Shurūt al-tariqa al-Tijāniyya*, ms., NRO, Misc., 1/22/246. See also Abun-Nasr (1965), 39; C.E. Farah, "Social implications of a Sufi disciple's etiquette", in *Proceedings, VIth. Congress of Arabic and Islamic Studies*, ed. F. Rundgren, Uppsala/Leiden 1972, 52, and K. Dwyer, *Moroccan Dialogues. Anthropology in Question*, London 1982, 45.

40 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 193-4.

ing a special dress upon his senior representatives. Currently, the followers of the Khatmiyya prefer to wear turbans and *jallābiyyas* with special collars. There is a general belief among the Khatmiyya that this type of *jallābiyya* was introduced from the Hijāz and that it was first worn by al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī, hence his nickname Abū Jallābiyya.<sup>41</sup> Another example is the followers of the Ahmadiyya Idrīsiyya, who in a slight variant of the practice of the *Anṣār* of the Sudanese Mahdi, usually leave the loose ends of their turbans, known as 'adhabāt (sing. 'adhaba), hanging down behind their heads.<sup>42</sup>

Each *tariqa* had its own standard or flag, *rāya*, which, as was shown in the previous chapter, was prominently displayed in the internal and public ceremonies of the orders. The shapes, colours and inscriptions written on the flags of the different *tariqas* vary considerably. These flags, however, shared some common characteristics. For example, they usually bore the *shahāda*, or the formula "There is no God but God; Muhammad is the messenger of God", the name of the *tariqa* and that of its founder.<sup>43</sup>

The flag of the Khatmiyya is, however, very elaborate. It consists of four colours: red, black, white and green. These different colours apparently demonstrate the all-embracing nature of the order's doctrinal position. When this flag came into use is not easy to establish. Some informants claimed it was introduced by the founder. Others stated it was made by his son and successor al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī and it bears the formula:

*Lā ilāh illā Allāh; al-amān al-amān*

*Muhammad rasūl Allāh al-sultān al-sultān;*

which is an extract from one of his famous devotional works.<sup>44</sup>

41 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 67, and interview 11.

42 Al-Ahmādī, *Kitāb al-Idāh*, ms., f. 3, and interview 22, and al-Tuhāmī, *Risālat al-Dīn al-naṣīḥa*, ms., ff. 83-7.

43 NRO, Intel., 2/32/270, p. 53; SAD, Durham, 195/7/2, *The Magzub Tarika in the Sudan*, by Naum Shukeir (Na'ūm Shuqayr); see NRO, Intel., 2/32/263, and Barclay (1964), 186.

44 Interviews 10 and 11.

## Institutions Linked to the Orders

The *ṭariqas* drew their local representatives mainly from among established religious teachers. Consequently, the different religious centres of these holy men, *khalwas*, *zāwiyas*, *masīd* and *masjīds*, came to be integrated into these *ṭariqas*. The *Tabaqāt*, as Professor Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan has noted, fails to make clear the difference in function of these various institutions.<sup>45</sup> This is presumably due to considerable functional overlapping.

Because it was widespread and because of the social role of its central figure, the *faqīh*, the most important *ṭariqa*-linked institution was the *khalwa* or Quranic school.<sup>46</sup>

Although the usual meaning of *khalwa* is the place where the Sufi mystic goes into retreat, in the Sudan it describes the place where the Quran and Islamic sciences were taught. The origin of this usage lies in the nature of Islam in the Sudan. The holy man who propagated Islam in most of the country combined *‘ilm* or the esoteric Islamic sciences with Sufism and naturally used the same place to teach both.

Teaching in a *khalwa* was at two levels: the first, known as *nār al-Qur’ān*, “the fire of the Quran”, was devoted to the memorization of the Quran; the second, *nār al-‘ilm*. They were so called because the students studied by the light of a fire.<sup>47</sup> The *faqīh*, who was, of course, the central figure, was assisted in teaching the students of the first level by several *‘urafā’* (sing. *‘arīf*). These were students who had finished the first level but did not intend to proceed to the second.<sup>48</sup> There was no age limit for admission to the *khalwa*. The pupils, irrespective of their age, were divided into the seniors, *al-ḥīran al-kibār*, and juniors, *al-ḥīran al-ṣīghār*. Moreover, no fees were paid by these students to their teacher.<sup>49</sup>

45 Hasan (1975), 83.

46 Trimingham (1949), 117, and Mohammed Omer Beshir, *Educational Development in the Sudan, 1898-1956*, Oxford 1969, 6.

47 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 282 and 460, and Muṣṭafā, thesis (1977), 103.

48 ḨAbd al-Majīd (1949), ii, 35.

49 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 308-9, for the adult Shaykh ḨAbd al-Qādir b. Idrīs (who was illiterate) joining the *khalwa* of Shaykh al-Aṣdar of Nūrī. See

The physical structure may be illustrated by the *khalwa* of al-Ghurayba, just south of Kūrtī.<sup>50</sup> This *khalwa* was attached to the mosque of the village which has been in existence since as far back as 888/1483-4. It consists of the *faqīh*'s private room, a row of cells for the pupils, two classrooms called respectively *Qur'āniyya*, where the Quran was taught, and *'alāmiyya*, where *'ilm* was taught. The former is, however, known in the Gezira as *al-jāmi'ca*, a term that denotes congregation.

Outside the *khalwa* there was an open area known as *al-buq'a* (lit. "the spot"), where the early morning and evening lessons were taught. The *khalwa* has a special room with a shelf hanging from the ceiling known as *al-kabas* (*al-rōshān* in the Gezira) for keeping the wooden tablets (sing. *lawḥ*) of the students at the end of their lessons. Because of its social function, the *khalwa* also has rooms for visitors and travellers.

Some *khalwas* - as, for instance, those of Hasan Muḥammad Balōl in Qarī, al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī at Qubbat Khōjalī and Aḥmad al-Ja'ali at Kadabas - had grottos (sing. *ghār*) built by these holy men for individual worship.

The *khalwas* in the Sudan have never had a standard curriculum. It was the individual *faqīh* who made up the syllabus and chose those texts that appealed or were accessible to him. Most of the books derived from the curriculum of al-Azhar in Cairo, although a number of Sudanese scholars wrote and taught their own commentaries. In addition to the Quran, *tajwīd*, *tawhīd*, *fiqh* and Sufism were also taught.<sup>51</sup>

The *khalwa* of al-Ghurayba possessed a considerable number of printed books and manuscripts. The latter included *Sharḥ al-Tatā'i 'alā Khalīl*, a commentary on the *Mukhtaṣar* of Khalīl b. Ishāq by

also Abdalla al-Tayyib, "The changing customs of the riverain Sudan", *SNR.*, iii, 1964, 13; Beshir (1969), 7; Aḥmad al-Bīlī, *al-Ta'lim fī'l-khalwa fī'l-Sūdān*, Khartoum 1974, 3; Hasan (1975), i, 84, and Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 54.

50 The following description is based on a visit to al-Ghurayba in September 1982. See also al-Bīlī (1974), 12, and al-Mu'taṣim Aḥmad al-Hājj, "al-Khalāwī fī'l-Sūdān, nuzumuḥā wa-rusūmuḥā hattā nihāyat al-qarn al-tāsi'ī 'ashar", MA thesis, Omdurman Islamic University 1982, 112.

51 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 283-4, 351-2 and 360. See also Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), 277-86, and Hasan (1975), i, 135-40. For the curriculum of al-Azhar, see Mansūr 'Alī Rajab, *al-Azhar bayn al-mādī wa'l-hādir*, Cairo 1946, 46-9.

Muhammad Ibrāhīm al-Tatā'ī; *Sharḥ al-kabīr ʻalā Khalīl*, one of two commentaries on the *Mukhtaṣar* by Tāj al-Dīn Bahrām al-Damīrī (d. 1402); and, finally, *Sharḥ ʻalā Khalīl* by ʻAlī Muhammad al-Ajhūrī (d. 1560). The *Sharḥ al-Tatā'ī* was, according to its colophon, copied for the *khalwa* in 963/1555-6 by a certain Ahmad b. Ibrāhīm b. al-Ṭayyib al-Maṭarāwī; the *Sharḥ Bahrām* was copied by Muhammad Sirāj al-Dīn b. ʻAlī al-Ḥājj Bilāl, (a son of the founder of the *khalwa* and a great-grandfather of al-Naqīb, a senior representative of the founder of the Khatmiyya in the Shāyqiyya region) in 971/1563-4, and the *Sharḥ al-Ajhūrī* by Muhammad b. ʻĀmir al-Dalhamūnī in 1122/1710-11.<sup>52</sup>

Despite these books, the *faqīh* at al-Ghurayba usually taught from memory, dictating the syllabus, lesson by lesson, to the students who wrote it down on their wooden tablets. After they had memorized the lesson, the tablets were wiped clean.<sup>53</sup>

The ties of the *khalwa* of al-Ghurayba with the Khatmiyya were established when Muhammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī I visited al-Dabba in 1814-15 (see above p. 59). Because of its position as a centre for the *ṭariqa*, the latter's ceremonies and rituals were held at the *buq̄a* and the students were taught its devotions. Thus the famous *mawlid* (see Glossary) of the founder, *al-Asrār al-rabbāniyya*, commonly known as *al-mawlid al-ʻUthmānī*; his poem in praise of the Prophet, *al-Nūr al-barrāq fī madh al-nabī al-miṣdāq*; and his collection of prayers, the *rātib*, known as *al-Anwār al-imtarākīma*, were taught to the students, who had finished the first memorization of the Quran, in exactly the same way as the other works.<sup>54</sup>

The *khalwa* had and has other functions in addition to its religious and educational ones. It played a social role by serving as a centre of hospitality with a resthouse for visitors, travellers and traders. The *Ṭabaqāt* gives several names of holy men in the Shāyqiyya region who were famous for their hospitality. These included Muhammad w.

52 The mss. are in the possession of the current (1982) *faqīh* and *khalīfa*, Ahmad ʻAbd al-Rahmān Muhammad Khayr, known as al-Ṣayyādī.

53 Interview 6. Compare the Ḥamadtūiyāb *khalwa* at Nūrī, see Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 284. On the significance of memory in Islamic education, see further D. Eickelman, "The art of memory: Islamic education and its social reproduction", *Comparative Studies in Society and History*, xx/4, (1978), 485-516, and *idem*, *The Middle East. An Anthropological Approach*, New York 1981, 240 and *passim*.

54 Interviews 9, 11 and 20.

<sup>c</sup>Adlān al-Shāyqī of Tanqāsī and two members of the Ḥamadtūiyāb holy family of Nūrī, namely <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Madanī, known as Abū Nirān, and Madanī b. Muḥammad al-Nāṭiq.<sup>55</sup> The *Tabaqāt*, however, gives greater information on the *khalwas* in the central Sudan. The *khalwas* of Shaykh Idrīs w. al-Arbab and his son Ḥamad, for example, used to serve respectively 60 and 120 plates of food every day. The same source also gives a striking description of how food was served at the *khalwa* of Ḥasan w. Hassūna at the end of a day in Ramadān. The process of having the food served by 240 slave girls and women, who were well-dressed and adorned with gold and ivory, shows the wealth of this holy man and also demonstrates his well-organized system.<sup>56</sup>

The *khalwa* was a place of refuge or sanctuary too; the community of Dabbat al-Fuqarā', for instance, enjoyed such a status during the Funj regime.<sup>57</sup> It also functioned as a place for settling disputes, hearing complaints, and issuing *fatwas* or legal opinions. The *khalwa* was moreover a medical centre where people with physical and psychological illnesses could come for treatment. The various means adopted for curing these illnesses included writing amulets, preparing *mīhāya* (i.e. water used for washing some Quranic verses off a wooden tablet and then given to the sick person to drink) and the making of incantations (sing. *‘azīma*).<sup>58</sup>

The account above shows the multi-functional character of the *khalwa*. However, it also raises the question of how the institution was financed. Since this matter is discussed in detail below (pp.146-8) it is sufficient to mention here that the *khalwa*'s financial and other support derived from several sources. These included, for example, gifts from the pupils' parents, grants of land from the community, grants from political authorities, pious endowments from well-to-do families and individuals, *zakāh* and, finally, offerings in fulfilment of vows (*nadhr*).

55 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 286, 354 and 360.

56 *Ibid.*, 57, 142-3 and 158.

57 T. Krump, *Hoher und Fruchtbarer Palm-Baum des Heiligen Evangelij*, Augsburg, 1710 (translation by Jay Spaulding), typescript, 254.

58 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 283-4. For examples of prescriptions for curing illnesses, see Bergen NO 145. 7/1 to 7/3, *waṣfas* for the cure of semi-paralysis or hemiplegia, wind and migraine. See also Trimingham (1949), 119-20; Osman, thesis (1978), 90, and Abdullahi el Tom, "Religious men and literacy in Berti society", Ph.D. thesis, St. Andrews University 1983, 59-111.

Another *ṭariqa*-linked institution in the Sudan and elsewhere in the Muslim world is the *zāwiya*. The original meaning of this term is the corner of a building where a Christian monk used to have a cell for his private worship. The term, however, was adopted by Muslims for a *ṭariqa* centre where prayers and religious activities were performed. But the *zāwiya*, which is smaller and distinct from the mosque could not house the congregation for the Friday prayers, which had to be held in a Friday mosque (*jāmi'*).<sup>59</sup>

Physically, a *zāwiya* could be no more than a single room or, as in the case of the Sanūsiyya's *zāwiyas* in the Libyan desert, a very elaborate group of buildings.<sup>60</sup> In addition to their religious function, the *zāwiyas*, like the *khalwa* in the Sudan and the *khanqāh* elsewhere, had social and educational functions.<sup>61</sup>

These roles may be illustrated by the *zāwiyas* of the Khatmiyya, especially in the eastern Sudan. Al-Mīrghānī expressed his concern about the ignorance of the people of the Tāka region and felt it was his mission to educate them.<sup>62</sup> He thus established several *zāwiyas* in the region and taught in them himself.<sup>63</sup> Trimingham argues that the *zāwiyas* of the eastern Sudan were used as centres for advanced Islamic sciences where students were provided with lodgings. He reserves the term *khalwa* for the schools where young children memorized the Quran.<sup>64</sup>

The various *ṭariqas* also operated within the framework of the mosque. This religious institution has been in the Sudan and elsewhere in the Muslim world not only a place of worship but also a centre for teaching *'ilm*.<sup>65</sup> The combination of Sufism and *'ilm* by a number of

59 Shorter Encyclopedia of Islam, 658-8; ERE, x, 717-20; M. Lings, *A Moslem Saint of the Twentieth Century. Shaikh Ahmad Al-'Alawi*, London 1961, 13, argues that "To translate *zāwiyah* by 'monastery' would no doubt lead to misunderstanding, none the less the monastic orders are the nearest equivalent in Christianity to the Sufi brotherhoods in Islam, although the Sufis are not celibates". See also Trimingham (1971), 18.

60 Evans-Pritchard (1949), 16-7, and N.A. Ziadeh, *Sanūsiyyah. A Study of a Revivalist Movement in Islam*, Leiden 1958, 69.

61 Trimingham (1971), 18.

62 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Zuhūr al-fā'iqa*, 48, and Voll, thesis (1969), 123.

63 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., ff. 33-4.

64 Trimingham (1949), 118.

65 Shorter Encyclopedia of Islam, 330-53, and Ahmad Shalabi), *History of Muslim Education*, Beirut 1954, 48.

Sufi teachers led many mosques to be automatically integrated into the orders. The mosque of the Ḥamadtūiyāb of Nūrī, for instance, functioned as an important Qādiriyya and, at a later stage, Khatmiyya centre in the region. Other examples are the mosques of the ‘Irāqāb and Kawārīr religious clans of Nūrī which became significant local centres of the Khatmiyya.<sup>66</sup> Further examples are the mosques of al-Kurū and Duwaym wad Ḥājj, which were instrumental in propagating the teachings of Ibn Idrīs through his student, Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd.<sup>67</sup>

The ṭariqas generally tended to operate within a number of institutions apart from the mosque. In contradistinction, the sons and descendants of Ibn Idrīs used the latter as their main centre for teaching. In this they were probably maintaining Aḥmad's practice, since, according to Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, he used the mosque as his centre.<sup>68</sup>

The ṭariqas also made use of another centre of learning, namely the *masīd*. This term, which denotes the place where ‘ilm was taught, is merely a dialectical variant of the classical word *masjid*, “mosque”; the term is not unique to the Sudan but was also common in Morocco and Sicily.<sup>69</sup>

The most celebrated *masīds* in the Sudan were those of Aḥmad w. ʿIsā and his son Ibrāhīm, in the Gezira. The former was integrated into the Khatmiyya at the time of al-Mīrghānī's visit to the Gezira in 1817-18. Another example is the *masīd* of al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd w. Badr of Umm Ǧubbān which propagated the Qādiriyya. This *masīd*, like that of Kutrānj, was a comprehensive religious centre with *khalwas*, lodgings and a kitchen. Physically and functionally, the Sudanese *masīd* echoes the Egyptian *khanqāh*.<sup>70</sup>

No *masīds* comparable to these of the Gezira existed in the Shāyqiyya region. This is also true for Dār Fūr, where the *masīd* was a

66 Bergen NO 163.8/6; *Manāqib al-sayyid ʿAlī al-Mīrghānī* (1390/1970), 10, and interviews 7, 19 and 20.

67 *K. fī dhikrat al-sayyid Ghulām Allāh*, ms., f. 43, and interview 2.

68 Al-Hajrasī (1314/1915-6), 91, and Karrār, thesis (1977), 94.

69 ʿAbd al-Majīd (1949), i, 82, n. 1; al-Āmīn (1395/1975), 14 n. 3, and al-Ḥājj, thesis (1982), 123.

70 ʿAbd al-Majīd (1949), iii, 23-5; al-Āmīn (1395/1975), 23; Idrīs Salim El-Hassan, “On Ideology. The Case of Religion in Northern Sudan”, Ph.D. thesis, University of Connecticut 1980, 119. On the Egyptian *khanqāh*, see Tawfiq al-Ṭawīl, *al-Taṣawwuf fī Miṣr ibbān al-ṣaṣr al-Ūthmānī*, Cairo 1946, 39-40, and Trimingham (1971), 18.

simple physical structure, often no more than a small shed (*rākūba*) or a shady tree.<sup>71</sup> In some areas, its function was more social than religious.<sup>72</sup>

A holy man, whether a member of a *ṭariqa* or not, plays a number of different roles within his community. His sanctity and its value to the community is, however, believed to survive or transcend his death. His *baraka* is believed to emanate from his grave and the places where he lived.<sup>73</sup> It is presumably because of the belief in *baraka* and its transcendence of death that each *ṭariqa* developed its own cult of saints. The tombs or *qubbas* (lit. "dome"), of these holy men were and still are a conspicuous feature of the Sudanese religious landscape. According to a recent study, the region of Dongola alone has more than ninety-nine such tombs.<sup>74</sup> After the saint's death his tomb became an integral component of his community's life.<sup>75</sup> Some saints, however, enjoyed religious prestige over a wide geographical area. Although al-Ḥasan al-Μīrghānī was buried in Kasala, his name was invoked for help in places as far away as Nūrī in the Shāyqiyya country.<sup>76</sup>

The tombs were usually built by sons or followers; the tomb of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd was built by Muḥammad al-Dandarāwī, one of his students, although it was renovated several times by other followers of al-Rashīd or through votive offerings from ordinary people.<sup>77</sup> It also used to receive a costly covering for the grave (*kiswa*) from Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd's nephew, Shaykh Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ, in Mecca.<sup>78</sup>

The *Kitāb al-ibāna* notes that the Khatmiyya, for instance, had a number of lesser shrines known as *baniyyāt* (sing. *baniyya*, lit. "a small building"). These were usually rectangular buildings of mud, with or without a roof. An example of such a shrine is that of Umm Kalthūm, a daughter of al-Μīrghānī, in Shendi.<sup>79</sup>

71 O'Fahey (1980), 120, and al-Ḥājj, thesis (1982), 125.

72 El Tom, thesis (1983), 25.

73 Trimingham (1949), 144-5.

74 'Abd Allāh (1978) mimeograph, 40.

75 J.S. Trimingham, *Islam in Ethiopia*, London 1952, 247-8.

76 Ahmad ʻUthmān Ibrāhīm, *Min ash-ṣār al-Shāyqiyya*, Khartoum 1965, 14-5, 52-3 and 66.

77 Interview 2.

78 Bergen NO 155. 7/11.

79 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 17; see also ff. 12 and 18.

The ṭariqas also had another type of shrine known as *bayān* (lit. “revealing”), meaning where a particular holy man had revealed himself. Such shrines were usually enclosed with flags (*rāyāt* or *bayāriq*) and became places of local pilgrimage.<sup>80</sup>

The *qubbas* and other shrines, like all religious centres, were honoured as places of refuge and sanctuary. People also used them as places where they could deposit their goods for safekeeping.<sup>81</sup>

The tombs of famous holy men and women had caretakers to clean them, to take charge of visitors and to collect gifts and offerings. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī I exhorted his followers to visit tombs frequently because that would remind them of the Day of Judgement. He also urged them to help the *ḥāris* of the shrine by observing the rules of “visitation”, *ziyāra*. Obviously, the visitor should avoid laughing or sitting on the grave.<sup>82</sup> He should also recite the *Fātiḥa* for the soul of the deceased holy man. He should then make his petition and conclude his visit by making a gift in cash or in kind (known as *zuwāra*) to the saint.<sup>83</sup> The tombs and shrines also served as places where ceremonies for the anniversaries of the birth (*mawlid*) and death (*ḥawliyya*) of the holy man were held.

### Hierarchy: The Naḍīfāb Community of Abū Rannāt Island, a Case Study

The Naḍīfāb were a holy clan who lived on Abū Rannāt Island in the Shāyqiyya region from about the beginning of the seventeenth century until 1917, when the encroachment of the Nile forced them and the inhabitants of the island to desert it and move to live at Tanqāsī al-Ruways, just opposite on the eastern (locally known as the west) bank. The island, and indeed the new settlement at Tanqāsī al-Ruways, occupied a strategic position, being just north of the famous Shāyqiyya region trading-centre of Tanqāsī, commonly known as Tanqāsī al-Sūq.<sup>84</sup>

80 Trimingham (1949), 143, and Ibrāhīm (1965), 56.

81 MacMichael (1922), ii, 287.

82 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Faṭḥ al-mabrūk*, 41.

83 J.W. Crowfoot, “Wedding customs in the northern Sudan”, *SNR*, v, 1922, 15; Trimingham (1949), 144, and Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 119.

84 Shuqayr (1903), i, 86.

The pedigree of the Nađifāb shows that they were of Şawārda origin and that their ancestor Şārid was a brother of ‘Abd al-‘Azīz, the “founding father” of the Maħas.<sup>85</sup> According to oral tradition, as part of the general Maħas diaspora, which began in the sixteenth century, members of the Şawārda began to migrate to the Shāyqiyya region which, apart from the fertility of its soil, was known for its hospitality to men of learning. These immigrants included Shaykh Hidirbī, who settled at Abū Dōm near modern Marawī, and *al-ħājj* ‘Amāra, who chose to live at al-Kurū. Both of these holy men married locally and received gifts of land and date-palms.<sup>86</sup> The descendants of these two religious teachers were to become the prominent representatives of the Khatmiyya in the Shāyqiyya area.<sup>87</sup>

Our main concern here is with the descendants of *al-ħājj* ‘Amāra, who lived, died and was buried at al-Kurū. Six of his great-grandsons, known as the Awlād Fāṭima, played a considerable religious role in the area. Among these was Ibrāhīm, nicknamed al-Nađif, “the clean”, known colloquially as al-Nađif, the “founding father” of the Nađifāb. His cousin Shaykh Jiqaydī was the founder of the Awlād Jiqaydī, who, like several other religious families on Abū Rannāt Island, operated under the umbrella of the Nađifāb.

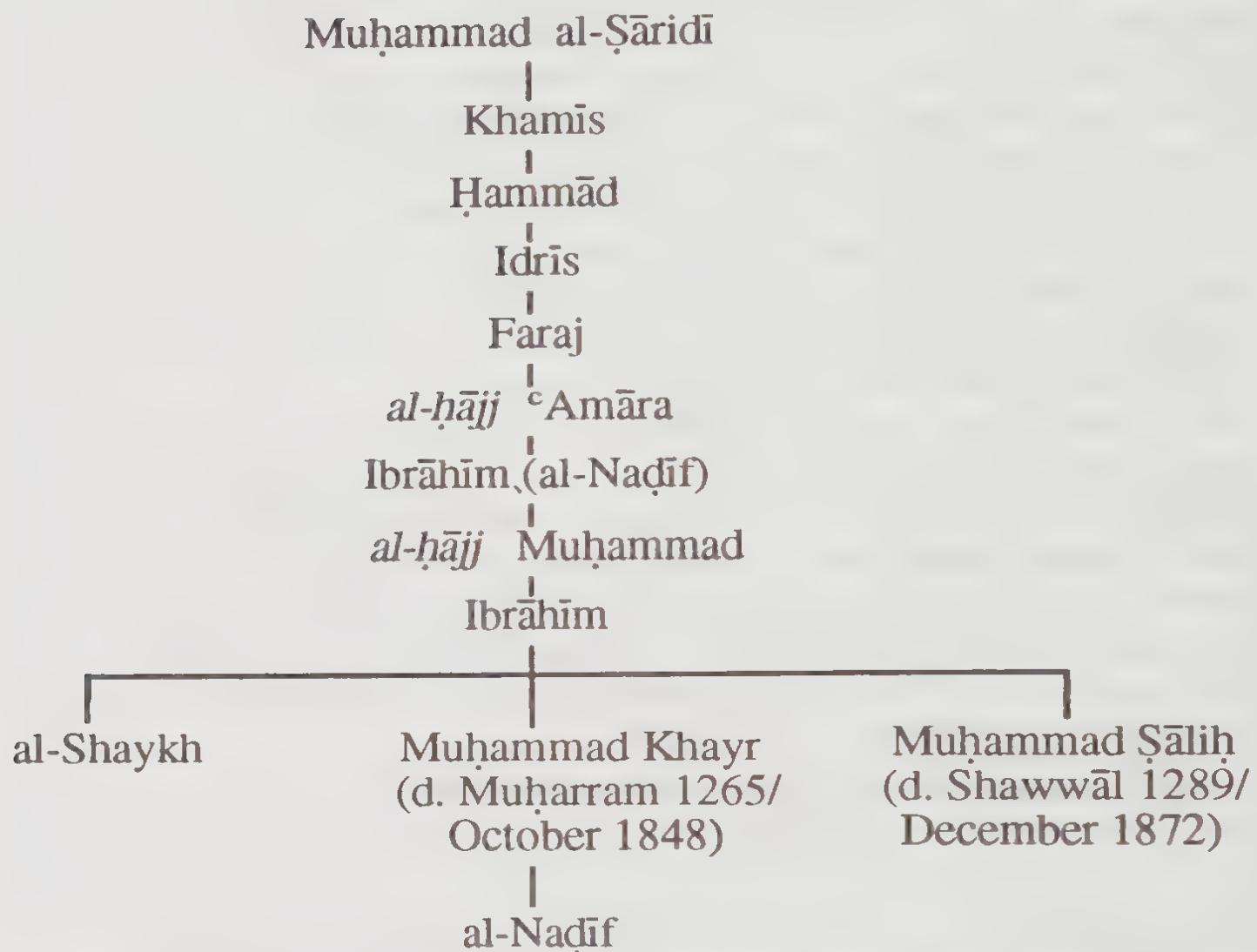
The Nađifāb used the mosque as their religious centre. It was not until about the latter half of the seventeenth century that Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Nađif established the *khalwa* of the Nađifāb on the island. He was famous for his mastery of the seven alternative readings(*riwāyāt*) of the Quran, hence his title *qāri’ al-riwāyāt al-sab’ā*.<sup>88</sup> *Al-ħājj* Muhammad established at his *khalwa* the tradition of issuing *ijāzās* (certificates) to the students who had successfully completed the memorization of the Quran and had mastered the rules and methods of its intonation. For instance, he issued an *ijāza*, dated Rajab 1160/July-

<sup>85</sup> *Nasab al-Nađifāb*, ms., Bergen NO 130. 6/5, and MacMichael (1922), ii, 24.

<sup>86</sup> Interviews 5 and 10.

<sup>87</sup> *Ibid.*; see also NRO, Misc., 1/27/283, Endowment (*waqf*) of land by *faqīh* Ibrāhīm b. *al-ħājj* Muhammad, for his sons and their issue, and 1/27/460, *Šulh*, concerning the appointment of Muhammad Şāliħ al-Nađif as *khalīfa* of the Nađifāb, 4 Muħarram 1265/30 November 1848.

<sup>88</sup> NRO, Misc., 1/27/314, Marriage contract (*ṣadāq*) for Fāṭima bt. Ḥamad b. Muhammad, from her husband, Muhammad b. Muhammad Şāliħ al-Nađif, 10 *Rabi’ I* 1279/ 5 September 1862. and interview 5.

DIAGRAM 7. *The Nađifāb*

August 1747, to his son, *faqīh* Ibrāhīm, certifying that he had memorized the Quran perfectly.<sup>89</sup>

It was in the time of Ibrāhīm's grandsons, Muḥammad Khayr and Muḥammad Sāliḥ, and their cousin Muḥammad Hammād w. Jiqaydī, that the ties of the Nađifāb with the Khatmiyya were established. The founder of the Khatmiyya sent them *ijāzas* from al-Dabba in 1814-15, appointing them *khalīfas* without actually meeting them (see p. 59). The community of Abū Rannāt elected Muḥammad Khayr as the senior *khalīfa* of the order.<sup>90</sup> He also acted as the leader of the Nađifāb clan. As a *ṭariqa* representative, however, he was under the jurisdiction of the *ṭarāqāb* of Nūrī.

<sup>89</sup> Bergen NO 139.6/14, *Ijāza*; from Muḥammad b. *al-faqīh* Ibrāhīm, *nasl al-hajj ḥāfiẓ Amāra*, for his son, Ibrāhīm, *Rajab* 1160/July-August 1747.

<sup>90</sup> Interviews 5 and 10.

Muhammad Khayr al-Nađīf continued as the supreme *khalīfa* for about thirty-three years, until his death on 3 Muḥarram 1265/ 29 October 1848. When the news of his death reached the Khatmiyya regional headquarters at Nūrī, a delegation headed by *khalīfat al-khulafā*<sup>91</sup> Abd al-Ḥamīd Muhammad Ṣāliḥ al-‘Irāqī and consisting of his brother *khalīfa* Abd al-Rahmān and his uncle *khalīfa* al-Ṣādiq Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Āḥmar al-‘Irāqī, travelled to Abū Rannāt to offer their condolences to the Nađīfāb.<sup>92</sup> On the following day, *khalīfat al-khulafā*<sup>93</sup> Abd al-Ḥamīd al-‘Irāqī and his companions held a meeting with the Nađīfāb to discuss the question of electing a successor to the deceased *khalīfa*.

The discussion, however, grew long and, like all succession disputes, culminated in the division of the Nađīfāb into two factions. One of these declared that the *khalīfa* had to be al-Nađīf, a son of the deceased *khalīfa*. The other, however, supported Muhammad Ṣāliḥ, a brother of the late *khalīfa*. Al-‘Irāqī, his companions and a number of mediators (*ajāwīd*) suggested that the successor should be Muhammad Ṣāliḥ. This was because the late *khalīfa* used to entrust him with the affairs of the mosque and the Friday prayers, as well as those of the two ‘īds. The *khalīfat al-khulafā* and their mediators concluded their argument by saying that al-Nađīf was not Muhammad Ṣāliḥ's equal in that respect. The two groups, finally, agreed to the proposal, and Muhammad Ṣāliḥ al-Nađīf was acknowledged as the *khalīfa* of the order and head of the Nađīfāb.

According to oral sources, the civil administration of Abū Rannāt in the time of Muhammad Ṣāliḥ was under the village head (*shaykh al-balad*) Tāḥa w. Muḥārī, who was a follower of the Khatmiyya and connected by marriage with the ‘Irāqāb of Nūrī.<sup>92</sup>

Muhammad Ṣāliḥ al-Nađīf, was, apart from his duties as a Khatmiyya representative and head of the Nađīfāb, the *ma’dhūn* (the officially authorized to perform marriages) of the island.<sup>93</sup>

Ṣāliḥ al-Nađīf's period of office saw al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī's visit to Abū Rannāt. The Nađīfāb, like other followers of the Khatmiyya, showed their loyalty to the order by granting estates and date-palms to members of the Mīrghānī family. They also used to collect gifts to send to the headquarters of the order in the eastern Sudan.

91 The following is based on NRO, Misc., 1/27/460.

92 Interviews 10 and 19.

93 NRO, Misc., 1/27/381, Marriage contract.

The Nađīfāb also performed the traditional role of holy men in their community. They were leaders in prayer, teachers, mediators, healers and they issued legal opinions.<sup>94</sup> For their role as religious teachers, the Nađīfāb received gifts from their pupils' parents. These, according to the economic and social status of the donors, usually consisted of date-palms or the produce of a *hōd* (see Glossary) or more from the *sāqiya*-land. The *khalwa* (Quranic school) and the mosque were also endowed with charitable gifts (*waqf*). The people of Abū Rannāt, like those of other communities in the region, used to endow the *khalwa* and mosque with a collective *waqf* of land known as *‘urāda*. This was a strip of fertile land extending along the bank of the Nile and lying immediately above the *jarf* land (the slope of the Nile bank down to the main water course).<sup>95</sup>

As Spaulding notes, holy men usually possessed landed properties that were scattered outside their own localities. This is further illustrated by the example of Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Nađīf, who possessed estates in al-Zūma, al-Kuray and Abū Dōm.<sup>96</sup>

The Nađīfāb, like other holy men, also possessed a number of slaves.<sup>97</sup> The *Tabaqāt* too provides several examples of holy men and religious institutions that received *waqfs* of slaves. *Al-ḥājj Sa‘īd*, a grandson of Dā‘ūd b. ḨAbd al-Jalīl who invited the Qādirī Shaykh Tāj al-Dīn al-Bahārī to visit the Sudan (see pp. 21-2), had a dream in which the Prophet ordered him to build a mosque for Daf‘ Allāh, a nephew of ḨAbd Allāh al-ḤArakī. *Al-ḥājj Sa‘īd* shipped stone from the village of Bānkiyū, built the mosque and endowed it with twelve slaves, male and female, and five *faddāns*.<sup>98</sup> It was usually slaves and students who worked the agricultural land of religious teachers.<sup>99</sup>

The holy man was also entitled to a portion (usually a *ḥod*) of the produce of the *sāqiya*-land. This was because of the belief that he could protect the *sāqiya* and oxen that pulled it against the evil eye or evil

94 NRO, Misc., 1/27/413, Settlement of a dispute concerning the inheritance of the property of Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Nađīf, 26 *Jumādā I* 1291/11 July 1874.

95 Interviews 10 and 11.

96 Jay Spaulding, *The Heroic Age of Sinnār*, East Lansing 1985, 254, and NRO, Misc., 1/27/413.

97 NRO, Misc., 1/27/413.

98 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 209.

99 *Ibid.*, 283.

underworld spirits.<sup>100</sup> In the Mahas area, however, the share of the holy man in the produce of the *sāqiya* was called in the Nubian language *atī mashī*. A farmer who had, for instance, one ox was expected to give one eighth of the sorghum, wheat and barley that his *sāqiya* had produced.<sup>101</sup> Moreover, holy men also received the *zakāh* (Islamic tax) on livestock and that on the produce of agricultural land.<sup>102</sup>

According to Spaulding, the wealth of the Nađifāb may be seen in the fact that Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Nađif offered his wife bridewealth of 1,000 *riyāls* at a time when the average among well-to-do families was 700.<sup>103</sup> It is presumably because of their wealth and their gifts that ʻAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb al-Mīrghānī, in a letter of 29 Dhū'l-Qaḍā 1324/14 January 1907, addressed the Nađifāb as "the people of pious endowments" (*ahālī al-awqāf*).<sup>104</sup>

On 24 Shawwāl 1280/3 April 1864, Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ wrote his will, in which he entrusted his son Muḥammad with the affairs of the mosque, leading the five daily prayers, the *dhikr* and the teaching of the Quran. He also authorized his son to lead Friday prayers and those of the two *ʻīds*. This, however, had to be done in consultation with his other brothers and the notables of the community, to avoid unnecessary disputes. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ also in the same document transferred the rights to his share in a considerable number of date-palms scattered among different *sāqiyas* (agricultural units) in the region in order to use their produce to meet some of the expenses of accommodating guests and students. He continued by endowing the mosque with a number of date-palms, "for the sake of God and his Prophet".<sup>105</sup>

The Nađifāb maintained close relations with a number of religious families in the region with whom they also shared property. These families included the ʻIrāqāb and the Ḥamadtūiyāb of Nūrī, the family of

100 Muḥammad Ibrāhīm Abū Salīm, *al-Sāqiya*, Khartoum 1980, 188-9 and 191.

101 *Ibid.*, 169.

102 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 58-60, and Abū Salīm (1980), 170.

103 See Spaulding (1985), 254-8. He refers to NRO, Misc., 1/27/428.

104 NRO, Misc., 1/27/396, Letter from ʻAbd Allāh Mahjūb al-Mīrghānī, to *khalīfa* Muḥammad ʻAlī al-Nađif, 29 Dhū'l-Qaḍā 1324/14 January 1907.

105 NRO, Misc., 1/27/413.

Ḥidirbī at Abū Dōm near modern Marawī and the Misaykāb family of religious men and traders of Tanqāsī al-Ruways.<sup>106</sup>

The Naḍīfāb also maintained a famous scholar of the *Irāqāb* who lived on Tulbunāb Island (now part of Tanqāsī), namely Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Tuhāmī. An adherent of a *ṭariqa* was expected to seek his shaykh's permission before performing certain acts. A letter from Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naḍīf to al-Tuhāmī dated 21 Rabi<sup>c</sup> I 1283/3 August 1866 shows how the latter's failure to seek permission when he intended to travel to Egypt resulted in misunderstanding. Al-Tuhāmī, however, wrote back to the Naḍīfāb apologizing for what had happened, saying that he had abandoned the idea of travelling. He concluded by affirming that he would not undertake any act in the future without seeking their consent.<sup>107</sup>

Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ's period in office saw the death of al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī and the transfer of the headship of the order to Muḥammad *Ūthmān* II. The Naḍīfāb loyalty to the Khatmiyya did not wane; the new head, like his predecessor, received great respect and gifts.<sup>108</sup> Shortly afterwards, on 21 Shawwāl 1289/22 December 1872, Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ died and was succeeded as a *khalīfa* by his son, Muḥammad, who remained in office until his death on 7 Dhū'l-Qaḍā 1295/2 November 1878. His period saw the death of the Khatmiyya senior representative in the Shāyqiyya region, *Abd al-Ḥamīd* b. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-*Irāqī*, and the transfer of office of *khalīfat al-khulafā'* to his nephew Muḥammad *Ūthmān* b. Muḥammad Khayr b. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-*Irāqī*.<sup>109</sup>

Muḥammad b. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ was succeeded by his brother al-Shaykh. It was during his tenure in office that the Mahdist revolution broke out in 1881. He survived the upheavals that followed, dying on 5 Ṣafar 1319/13 July 1901, shortly after the beginning of Condominium rule in the Sudan.<sup>110</sup>

106 NRO, Misc., 1/27/383; 1/27/392, Letter from Aḥmad Muḥammad *Ūthmān* al-*Irāqī*, to *khalīfa* (Aḥmad) Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naḍīf and others, 24 Rajab 1321/16 October 1903, and 1/27/460.

107 NRO, Misc., 1/27/374, Letter from Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naḍīf and his sons to al-Ḥasan b. *al-khalīfa* al-Tuhāmī Bān al-Naqā, 21 Rabi<sup>c</sup> I 1283/3 August 1866.

108 Interview 10.

109 Interview 19.

110 NRO, Misc., 1/27/413.

## 7

## INITIATION AND RITUAL

*The Stages of Initiation*

Doctrinal differences between the orders were minimal; most of their teachings were based on the Quran and the *sunna*.<sup>1</sup> What makes a *ṭariqa* distinctive is the form and method of its rituals and practices, such as initiation and *dhikr*, or remembrance of God.

Since it is impossible to treat here all the rituals and practices of the various orders in detail, a comparison between those of the Qādiriyya, the dominant order in the central Sudan, and the Khatmiyya, the main *ṭariqa* in the Shāyqiyya region, is attempted instead.

This section begins with an account of the rituals of initiation and investiture. It then gives an analytical description of both the private and communal *dhikrs*. The section, however, also discusses other rituals and practices such as the “spiritual retreat” (*khalwa*) and *hawliya*, the celebration of the anniversaries of the deaths of shaykhs and members of their families.

The initiation or, as it is variously called, *akhḍh al-‘ahd*, “the taking of the compact”; *akhḍh al-wird*, “the taking of the litany”; *akhḍh al-ṭariq* or *al-ṭariqa*, “the taking of the order”; and, finally, *akhḍh al-bay‘a*, “the taking of the oath of allegiance”, was in theory obligatory for all those who wished to join the orders.<sup>2</sup>

The formulae of initiation for the different *ṭariqas* show slight variations in wording and structure. In the Qādiriyya, the neophyte and his shaykh would perform the ablutions and sit facing Mecca, as if they were about to pray. The shaykh would then ask the neophyte to repent of all his previous sins, in accordance with the Quranic verse (60:12). The neophyte would then perform two *rak‘as* and kneel before his shaykh resting his knees against the latter’s. The shaykh, holding the neophyte’s right thumb, would ask him to repeat after him the

1 Karrār, thesis (1977), 21-44.

2 Trimingham (1971), 81-2.

*ta<sup>c</sup>awwudh*, i.e. the formula, *a<sup>c</sup>ūdhu bi-llāh min al-shayṭān al-rajīm*, “I take refuge in God from the Devil, the cursed”; the *basmala*, and the *Fātiḥa*. Having completed these, they continued by reciting the formula of *al-istighfār*, i.e. “I ask forgiveness of the Mighty God”; and then said “May God bless our master Muḥammad”, twice.

The shaykh would then ask the aspirant to close his eyes and open “the eyes of his heart” and concentrate on the meaning of the litanies which he was about to dictate to him (*yulaqin*). Having received the litanies, the aspirant would declare his acceptance of the act of initiation by saying,

I have accepted Allah as my God, Islam as my religion, Muḥammad as the Prophet and Messenger and our shaykh as a guide.

He then would recite the *āyat al-mubāya<sup>c</sup>a* (Quran 48:10) and kiss his shaykh’s hand.

The initiation would conclude with a joint recital of the *Fātiḥa* by the shaykh and his *murīd*; the aspirant had now become an adherent.<sup>3</sup>

In the Khatmiyya, however, the aspirant was required to perform a ritual ablution on a Wednesday and perform two *rak<sup>c</sup>as*. While performing the first, he was to recite the *Fātiḥa* and the *Kāfirūn* (Quran:109) and during the second the *Fātiḥa* and *al-Naṣr* (Quran:110).

The aspirant would then, as in the Qādiriyya, sit before his shaykh and they would clasp their right hands. The shaykh would ask the aspirant to repeat after him the following formula:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. May God bless our master Muḥammad, his family and companions and grant him salvation. O God, I have repented before you and have accepted my master, sayyid Muḥammad <sup>c</sup>Uthmān al-Mīrghānī, as a shaykh in this life and in the hereafter. O God, confirm my love for him and his order in this life and the one to come, by the right [*haqq*] of our master Muḥammad and the right of the *Basmala* and the *Fātiḥa*.

The aspirant then recited *al-<sup>c</sup>Aṣr* (Quran:103).

The shaykh repeated silently,

May God confirm upon you righteousness, patience and the Muḥammadiyya order,

3 Nūr al-Dā<sup>2</sup>im (1954), 103.

and declared to the aspirant that he had been accepted as an adherent of the Khatmiyya.<sup>4</sup>

The *murīd* would then be instructed by word of mouth (*talqīn*) in the *dhikr* of the order. The process of receiving the *dhikr* was, however, a gradual one. The new initiate would receive only a simple form of *dhikr* and a minor version of the basic litanies of the order known as *al-asās al-ṣaghīr*.<sup>5</sup> This latter is a collection of prayers and invocations based almost entirely on the Quran and the sayings of the Prophet.

The *murīd* who demonstrated his seriousness would be allowed to receive an advanced form of *dhikr* known as the *dhikr* of the *khawāṣṣ*, or the “chosen”. This required the same rituals as in the first initiation. The *murīd* performed his ritual ablution on a Wednesday and the two *rak‘as*, reciting the same Quranic chapters as in the initiation. He would then read the oath of allegiance (*bay‘a*) to the founder of the order and recite the *Fātiḥa* silently. This having been completed, the *murīd* repeated the *tahlīl*, i.e. the formula of “There is no God but God”, 7,000 times.

According to the same source, the *murīd* was to wash himself ritually again and recite the *Ikhlāṣ* (Quran:112) 100,000 times. On the following Wednesday, he would perform a ritual ablution and repeat the *basmala* 12,000 times.

Having completed these introductory rituals (*muqaddimāt*), the *murīd* would go to his shaykh, who would dictate the *dhikr* and instruct him in the major basic litanies of the Khatmiyya known as *al-asās al-kabīr*.<sup>6</sup>

Another ritual which, like initiation, entailed the swearing of an oath of allegiance to the head of the order was the investiture, *tanṣīb* or

4 Muḥammad ʿUthmān al-Mīrghānī, *Majmū‘ al-awrād al-kabīr*, Cairo (1358/1939), 125.

5 Muḥammad ʿUthmān al-Mīrghānī I composed two collections of litanies and invocations known as *al-Asās al-ṣaghīr* and *al-Asās al-kabīr*. The term *asās* (lit. “foundations”) means the basic litanies of the order. The minor version, *al-Asās al-ṣaghīr*, was intended for all who joined the order. The other version, *al-Asās al-kabīr* or the major basic litanies, is a very elaborate version of the former. It consists of three phases (*awjuh*, lit. “faces”): *ṣughrā*, *wusṭā* and *kubrā* and was intended for the chosen adherents (*al-khawāṣṣ*); see *K.al-ibāna*, ms., f. 91, and *al-Nafāḥāt al-Makkiyya*, in *Majmū‘at al-nafāḥāt al-rabbāniyya*, 43.

6 Al-Mīrghānī (1358/1939), 62-3.

*takhlīf*. This ceremony took place when a *murīd* who had attained advanced knowledge in the affairs of the order was invested with an office within its hierarchy.

The investiture rituals were more elaborate in the Qādiriyya than in other orders. The *Tabaqāt* confirms that the Qādiriyya used to invest their new *khalīfas* with the *khirqa* (frock) or the *jubba*.<sup>7</sup> Moreover, the Ya‘qūbāb branch of the Qādiriyya made use of some of the Funj symbols of royal authority, such as the horned-cap (*al-ṭāqiyā umm qiraynāt*) and the *kakar* (or wooden stools) in the ceremony of investiture.<sup>8</sup>

Although Tāj al-Dīn al-Bahārī, who introduced the Qādiriyya into the Sudan, did not issue written *ijāzas* to his initiates, this practice was later introduced by some Sudanese Sufi shaykhs. ‘Abd Allāh al-‘Arakī, for instance, appointed his brother Muḥammad, known as Abū Idrīs, as a *khalīfa*, invested him with the *khirqa* and issued him an *ijāza* certifying that he was authorized to initiate people into the Qādiriyya.<sup>9</sup>

By contrast, the ritual of investiture in the Khatmiyya order was simple. The Khatmiyya, like all the new *tariqas*, did not adopt the custom of investiture with the frock or the *jubba*; indeed the founder of the order had expressed his distaste for the *jubba* or patched clothes. The *murīd* elected to an office in the hierarchy would simply sit before his shaykh as in the normal initiation ceremony and read the oath of allegiance (*bay‘a*) described above and then receive his *ijāza*.<sup>10</sup>

However, al-Mīrghānī did appoint a number of *khalīfas* and issued them *ijāzas* without even meeting them. He relied entirely on the reputation of these religious figures for learning and righteousness.

7 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 66-7.

8 A.J. Arkell, “Fung origins”, *SNR*, xv/2, 1932, 201-250; Trimingham (1949), 219, and al-Shāṭir Buṣaylī ‘Abd al-Jalīl, *Ma‘ālim ta‘rīkh Sūdān Wādī’l-Nīl*, Cairo 1955, 119.

9 Ibn Dayf Allāh (1974), 66-7.

10 Interview 11; see Appendix B for an *ijāza* issued by Muḥammad ‘Uthmān al-Mīrghānī.

## The Ritual Life

The most important ritual in the *ṭariqas*, however, was, and still is, the *dhikr*. The original meaning of this term as it appears in the Quran<sup>11</sup> is “remembrance” (of God). In the *ṭariqas*, however, the term has acquired a specialized meaning, namely the repetition of God’s names and attributes in a variety of special ways.

Each *ṭariqa* had, and has, two types of *dhikr*: the *dhikr al-waqt*, “the *dhikr* of the time”, which was performed after the regular five daily prayers, and a communal one known variously as the *dhikr* of the circle (*al-ḥalqa*), the *hadra*, “presence”, or *layliyya* (sessions of *dhikr* on specified nights).

Sufi shaykhs repeatedly stressed the significance of *dhikr* and exhorted their adherents to observe it. One example is Ibn Idrīs, who says of the *dhikr*:

The supreme nourishment of my soul is the remembrance [*dhikr*] of God. Even to give it up for a moment, is impossible for me.

As an analogy, Ibn Idrīs cites the fishes which must live in water and die if they leave it.<sup>12</sup> His student al-Mirghānī equally urged his followers to perform the *dhikr* and quoted a number of Prophetic sayings that praise its practice, especially within the “circle” or *ḥalqa*.<sup>13</sup>

As we have seen, the Qādiriyya in the Sudan and elsewhere in the Muslim world was a widely-diffused order and its various branches did not share a common devotional life. For this reason, we shall use the Kabbāshī branch of the Qādiriyya, which had and has a number of followers in the Shāyqiyya region, as an example to illustrate the role of *dhikr* among one Qādiriyya branch.

Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī, who was a prolific Sufi writer and poet, composed a number of prayers and invocations to be repeated a prescribed number of times by his followers, individually or collectively, after the

11 For example, Quran, verses 18:24; 33:41; 73:8, and 76:25. See also Abū ʿAbd Allāh Muḥammad al-Ghazālī, *Iḥyā ʿulūm al-dīn*, Cairo (n.d.), iv, 595-8, and L. Gardet, “Dhikr”, *EI*<sup>2</sup>, ii, 223.

12 Ibn Idrīs, *al-ʿIqd al-naṭīṣ*, 22-3.

13 Al-Mirghānī, *al-Hibāt al-muqtabasa*, 35. See also al-Raṭbī, *Minḥat al-ashāb*, 76.

regular daily prayers. These included, for instance, three prayers for the Prophet, entitled *Faṭḥ al-futūḥ*, *Sirr al-asrār* and *Šalāt al-irshād*. He also composed five litanies (*ahzāb*) based on the Quran and the sunna:

- 1) *Hizb al-jallāl*,
- 2) *Hizb al-anwār*,
- 3) *Hizb al-dā’ira*,
- 4) *Hizb al-ḥamd*, and
- 5) *Hizb al-salām*.<sup>14</sup>

However, he used to urge his followers to repeat the following form of *dhikr* after the morning and sunset prayers:

- 1) *al-Istighfār* (asking for God's forgiveness): 7 times.
- 2) *Bismillāh al-karīn wa-lā ḥawla wa-lā quwwa ilā bi’llah*: 3 times.

Al-Kabbāshī, like other Qādirī shaykhs, also had longer litanies that were repeated with the aid of a thousand-bead rosary, *misbāḥa alfiyya*. These included, for example, the following:

- 1) the *basmala*, to be repeated 1,500 times.
- 2) the *Tahlīl* (the formula of, “There is no God but God”). This formula could be repeated any number of times between 12,000 and 71,000, depending mainly on the capacity of the adherent.
- 3) a prayer for the Prophet known as *al-Šalāt al-ummīya* (lit. “the illiterate prayer”), to be repeated 1,000 times.<sup>15</sup>

By contrast to the Qādiriyya, the Khatmiyya like other new *tariqas*, shared a common devotional life. The founder of the order and several of his sons and descendants were prolific writers on a wide range of Islamic subjects. These works included collections of devotions known as *musabba’āt*. They were so called because they were divided according to the seven days of the week. These *musabba’āt* were further divided into five sections in accordance with the five daily prayers.<sup>16</sup>

It has to be noted, however, that this order of devotional prayer was not unique to the Khatmiyya. It is likely that al-Mīrghānī borrowed it

14 Al-Kabbāshī, *Inshiqāq al-qamar*, 32-3. These devotional works are preserved in ms. in possession of al-Kabbāshī’s family at the village of al-Kabbāshī.

15 This prayer was widely used in the Sudan. It is called *al-ummīya* because the adjective *ummī*, “illiterate”, appears in its formula, which reads as follows, “O God, bless our lord Muḥammad, the illiterate (*ummī*) Prophet”. See Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), 292, and interview 21.

16 Al-Mīrghānī (1358/1939), 77-96.

from his master, Ibn Idrīs.<sup>17</sup> The same system was also copied by Ismā‘il al-Walī, al-Mīrghānī's former student.<sup>18</sup> Al-Mīrghānī I, like other Sufi shaykhs,<sup>19</sup> stated that half of the *dhikr* of this *ṭarīqa* was “remembrance in the heart”, *dhikr bi’l-qalb*, and the other half, “upon the tongue”, *bi’l-lisān*. He added that he had based his *dhikr* on “the remembrance in the heart” of the Naqshbandiyya and that “upon the tongue” of the Qādiriyya and Shādhiliyya.<sup>20</sup>

It is clear in the literature of the Khatmiyya that the minor *asās* (*ṣaghīr*) constituted a common factor in all litanies that were repeated after the five daily prayers.<sup>21</sup> Unlike other orders in the Sudan, the Khatmiyya had a wide range of *dhikr al-waqt*. These may be divided into three categories. The first includes the works of the founder, his sons and descendants.<sup>22</sup> The second comprises the devotions which the founder had received from his teacher, Ibn Idrīs. These latter included the formula:

There is no God but God, Muḥammad is the Messenger of God in every glance and breath as much as the knowledge of God can contain.<sup>23</sup>

We stated earlier that Ibn Idrīs claimed that, of all saints, God had bestowed the above *dhikr* upon him alone. Ibn Idrīs also urged his student al-Mīrghānī, when in the Sudan, to teach it to those he initiated. Al-Mīrghānī also kept up the tradition of reciting and teaching his teacher's litanies, known as *aḥzāb al-tajalliyāt al-ilāhiyya*, after he had divided them into sections (sing. *subq*).<sup>24</sup>

The third category of the Khatmiyya's devotions included works by other Sufis which were universally used. We have already seen the example of the *Dalā'il al-khayrāt*. Other examples are the two famous litanies of al-Shādhilī known as the *Hizb al-bahr*, “litany of the sea”, and the *Hizb al-barr*, “litany of the land”,<sup>25</sup> and a prayer for the Prophet

17 Karrār, thesis (1977), 21-8.

18 Ibrāhīm, thesis (1980), 155-6.

19 Nūr al-Dā'im (1954), 84-6 and 90.

20 *al-Nafāḥāt al-Makkiyya*, in *Majmū'at al-nafāḥāt*, 7.

21 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 91, and al-Mīrghānī (1358/1939), 126.

22 Voll, thesis (1969), 153-61 and *passim*; Hasan (1975), i, 138-40, and Karrār, thesis (1977), 143-54.

23 *Sanad al-ṭarīqa al-Khatmiyya*, ms, Bergen, No 126. 6/1.

24 *Kitāb al-ibāna*, ms., f. 98.

25 Muḥammad ʿUthmān al-Mīrghānī, *Majmū'at fath al-rasūl*, Cairo 1367/1948, 213-26.

commonly known as the *Ṣalāt Ibn Mashīsh*.<sup>26</sup> Further, the Khatmiyya, like both the Qādiriyya and the Idrisiyya, recited a litany known as *al-Hizb al-sayfī*, “the litany of the sword”, which is attributed to ‘Alī, the Prophet’s cousin.<sup>27</sup> Finally, although the Khatmiyya had its own *mawlid* or litany for the birth of the Prophet, its followers also used to recite that of al-Barzanjī (d. 1766) at the celebration of the Prophet’s birthday (*mawlid al-nabī* or *al-mawlid al-nabawī*).<sup>28</sup>

Since it is impossible to describe all of these devotions in detail, a set of those repeated after the sunset prayers (*al-maghrib*) may serve as an example. This set consisted of the repetition of the following formulae:

- 1) “There is no God but God. Alone and has no associate. He is the Kingdom and His is the Praise; and He has power over all things”: 10 times.
- 2) the minor *asās*.
- 3) the *rātib*, known as *al-Anwār al-mutarakima*.
- 4) the prayer for the Prophet, known as *al-Ṣālat al-ummiyya*: 10 times.
- 5) the *Istighfār*: 100 times.
- 6) the *Tahlīl*: 2,000 times.

The *murīd*, however, had to say after every 100 times the *tahlīl* in the form, “Muhammad is the Messenger of God in every glance and breath as much as the knowledge of God can contain.”

Having completed the litanies listed above, the *murīd* then had to recite the *Ikhlāṣ* (Quran:112) a 1,000 times, followed by the formula: *Hayy, Qayyūn*, (“Living, Eternal”; names of God), the same number of times. The *murīd* concluded by repeating another prayer for the Prophet, known as *al-ṣalāh al-dhātiyya*, a 100 times.<sup>29</sup>

<sup>26</sup> This was a famous prayer for the Prophet written by Muḥammad <sup>‘</sup>Abd al-Salām b. Mashīsh al-Maghribī (d. 625/1228), (see Trimingham (1971, 47-8 and 87) on which <sup>‘</sup>Abd Allāh al-Mahjūb, a grandfather of the founder of the Khatmiyya, wrote a commentary (*sharḥ*) entitled *al-Nafahāt al-qudsiyya min al-ḥadra al-<sup>‘</sup>Abbāsiyya fī sharḥ al-ṣalāt al-mashīhiyya* (see GAL, ii, 386, S II 523), *Majmū<sup>‘</sup>at al-nafahāt al-Makkiyya*, 129.

<sup>27</sup> <sup>‘</sup>Abd al-Majīd (1949), i, 147, and Karrār, thesis (1977), 27.

<sup>28</sup> Interview 10. This *mawlid* of al-Barzānjī was widely used in the Muslim world, see Trimingham (1971), 206 and 208.

<sup>29</sup> Al-Mīrghānī (1358/1939), 48-9.

The founder of the Khatmiyya also composed litanies and supplications to be recited by individuals or collectively during the five holy months (*al-ashhur al-ḥurm*), i.e. Muḥarram, Rajab, Sha‘bān, Ramadān and Dhū'l-hijja. These litanies were short formulae built upon a pattern of phrases, each to be repeated a 1,000 times.<sup>30</sup>

The doctrines of the various Sufi orders were directly or indirectly influenced by Shī‘ī ideas and practices. This may be illustrated by the fact that the ṭariqas, like the Shī‘a, used to hold a special ceremony on the anniversary of the death of al-Husayn b. ‘Alī, the grandson of the Prophet, on the tenth Muḥarram (‘Āshūra).<sup>31</sup> Thus the founder of the Khatmiyya formulated a number of supplications known as *adhkār ‘āshūra*, each to be repeated thirty-three times after the sunset prayers.<sup>32</sup> The Khatmiyya also had a specific set of invocations to be said after the *ṣalāt al-tarāwīḥ* (prayers performed during the nights of Ramadān).<sup>33</sup>

Each ṭariqa had two types of *dhikr*, the *dhikr al-waqt* and the *dhikr al-ḥalqa*. In both the Qādiriyya and the Khatmiyya, the latter was said aloud. The *dhikr* sessions of the Qādiriyya were generally known as *layliyya* rather than *ḥadra*, and were, like those of the Khatmiyya and other orders, held on Sunday and Thursday evenings.<sup>34</sup>

The *layliyya* of the Qādiriyya was usually held at the order's local centre; the participants performed their ablutions and sat in a circle in the middle of which the flag of the order had been raised. The *muqaddam* opened the *layliyya* which began with the recitation of the *mawlid*. Since the Qādiriyya did not possess their own *mawlid*, they recited that of al-Barzanjī.<sup>35</sup> The participants then stood up to perform the *dhikr*, which consisted of seven short formulae each of which formed a phase or "round" of *dhikr*, *martaba* or *ṭabaqa*.

30 *Ibid.*, 130.

31 Interviews 11 and 22.

32 Al-Mīrghanī (1358/1939), 71-1.

33 *Ibid.*, 72-4.

34 Trimingham (1971), 206, and interview 21. Although the *layliyyas* and *ḥadras* were, and are, actually held on Sunday and Thursday evenings they are called *laylat al-Ithnayn* (Monday night) and *laylat al-Jum‘a* (Friday night) meetings because the Muslim day starts immediately after sunset; see Trimingham (1949), 215.

35 Trimingham (1971), 206 and 208, and interview 21. This *mawlid* is also used by another order that does not possess its own *mawlid*, namely the Ahmadiyya Idrisiyya; interview 22.

Having completed one *ṭabaqa*, a group of four or five *munshids* (chanters) would enter the circle and begin to perform various other types of *dhikr*, the most famous of which was the *dhikr al-ṣayḥa* (literally “shout”) a cry for God's succour. The way this *dhikr* was performed is interesting; the *munshids*, standing at a distance from each other, chanted with a special intonation the verses of a particular religious ode (*qaṣīda*).<sup>36</sup> According to one source, the *dhikr al-ṣayḥa* originated among the *Ya‘qūbāb* branch of the *Qādiriyya*, which later changed its spiritual allegiance to the *Sammāniyya* under the influence of Ahmad al-Ṭayyib (see p. 46).<sup>37</sup> This is presumably why this type of *dhikr* was also adopted by the *Sammāniyya*, where those who performed it were commonly known as *Shu‘ār*.<sup>38</sup>

The followers of the *Kabbāshī-‘Arākī* branch of the *Qādiriyya* among the *Shāyqiyya* used to recite, during the intervals between the different phases (*qarb*) of the *dhikr*, some religious poems composed by, for example, al-*Busīrī* and ‘Abd al-*Rahīm al-Bur‘ī*, whose works were widely used throughout the Muslim world.<sup>39</sup> The adherents of this *Qādirī* branch also used to read the poems of a number of Sudanese Sufi poets. These included the works of Ibrāhīm al-*Kabbāshī*, who composed a number of songs of praise (*madā‘iḥ*) to the Prophet. He also wrote a *madīḥ* in which he devoted a considerable section to an account of the Prophet's ascent to Heaven (*al-mi‘rāj*). This poem was (and still is) recited by the followers at the annual celebration of the Prophet's ascent on the eve of 27 Rajab (*laylat al-mi‘rāj*).<sup>40</sup>

Other poems that were used by this branch included those of Abū Nafīsa and al-‘Ubayd Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ.<sup>41</sup>

One of the main characteristics of the *Qādirī* *dhikr* was the employment of musical instruments. It is not clear when this custom, which provoked criticism from the *‘ulamā’*,<sup>42</sup> became established in the Sudan. According to one source, musical instruments were introduced during the Funj period by a *Qādirī* shaykh, one Salmān al-Ṭawwālī,

36 Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), p. *jīm*; Ḥasan (1972), 39.

37 Al-Bashīr (1976), 25.

38 Qarīb Allāh, thesis (1965), p. *jīm*.

39 NRO, 7/1/10, p. 12, Abū Salīm; see also Trimingham (1971), 24 and 44, and interview 21.

40 Al-Kabbāshī, *Inshiqaq al-qamar* (1971), 24-6; interview 21.

41 Interview 21.

42 Trimingham (1971), 195.

known as al-Zaghrāt (standard Ar. *al-żaghrād*, meaning the one who utters trilling sounds).<sup>43</sup>

The same source, however, states that it was in fact shaykh ʻAbd al-Qādir Abū Kisāwī (1818-81), a student of the Qādirī shaykh al-ʻUbayd w. Badr, who consolidated the use of musical instruments in the *dhikr*. He, for instance, employed African drums (*nōba*) and tambourines (*ṭār*), whose use was eventually borrowed not only by other Qādirī branches but also by other orders such as the Ismāʻiliyya.<sup>44</sup>

It is clear from a study of the Mikāshfiyya branch of the Qādiriyya in the Gezira that another African musical instrument, namely the *ṣājāt* (flat pieces of iron), was utilized in the *dhikr* of the Qādiriyya.<sup>45</sup> These instruments were presumably adopted by the Qādiriyya, the oldest order in the Sudan, to attract followers who were used to drums and rhythmic music.

It is evident from the *Tabaqāt* that the Qādiriyya had two types of communal *dhikr* that differed in the method of ejaculating the names of God, the *karīr* and the *razīm*. The former was a heavy type of *dhikr* with a special method of intonation known as *karīr*, or the sound made by a pigeon; by contrast, the *razīm* was a lighter and quieter form of *dhikr*.<sup>46</sup>

The *dhikr* sessions of the Qādiriyya, like those of the Khatmiyya (and indeed all *tariqas*), apart from the regular *layliyya*, were also held on a number of religious occasions. These included, for example, the *ḥōliyyas* (cl. Ar. *ḥawliyya*) or anniversaries of the deaths of the head of the branch and of famous members of his family. On such occasions, the *dhikr* was usually held near the tomb of the deceased holy man or woman. Other occasions were the eve of the 27 Rajab (*laylat al-miṣrāj*), commemorating the Prophet's ascent to Heaven; the eves of the two *ʻīds* (Ramadān Bayram and Kurban Bayram); and the *mawlid* or the anniversary of the birth of the Prophet, 12 Rabīʻ I.<sup>47</sup>

The congregational *dhikr* of the Khatmiyya, the *layliyya* or more commonly the *ḥadra*, like that of the Qādiriyya, was held twice a week, on Sunday and Thursday evenings.<sup>48</sup> Each of these sessions was called

<sup>43</sup> Al-Bashīr (1976), 26. On the *zaghrāt*, see Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 219-22.

<sup>44</sup> Al-Bashīr (1976), 26, and Ibrahim, thesis (1980), 156-7.

<sup>45</sup> Osman, thesis (1978), 130.

<sup>46</sup> Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 328.

<sup>47</sup> Interview 21.

<sup>48</sup> Al-Mīrghānī (1358/1939), 74.

ḥadra, because of the belief that the Prophet would be present whenever it was held.

The Khatmiyya used to hold their *dhikr* at the *buq'a* of the Quranic school (*khalwa*), in the *zāwiya* or in the mosque. The participants would form a circle or a number of rows according to the space available.<sup>49</sup> It was the *naqib*'s task to arrange the *dhikr* and to ensure the observance of its rules by the followers. These rules, known as *ādāb al-dhikr*, required that those who wished to participate were, as we have seen with the Qādiriyya, in a state of complete ritual cleanliness. They also had to keep their eyes closed and bear their shaykh's image in their mind throughout the different phases of the *dhikr*.

The same source shows that the participant was also expected to perfume himself. Further, the place of the *ḥadra* was to be fumigated with incense and the flag of the order, as in the Qādiriyya, was to be raised in the middle.<sup>50</sup>

Since Trimingham has given a detailed description of the *layliyya* of the Khatmiyya our description here is intended only to complement his. The structure of the *ḥadra* of the Khatmiyya was similar to that of the Qādiriyya. A fundamental difference is that the Khatmiyya recited their own *mawlid*, commonly known as *al-mawlid al-‘Uthmānī*. The founder of the order states in the introduction to his *mawlid* that he saw a vision in which the Prophet ordered him to compose a *mawlid* rhyming in *hā'* and *nūn*. Al-Mīrghānī adds that the Prophet promised to be present whenever it was recited and that invocations would be answered by God when the section on the Prophet's birth and the conclusion of the *mawlid* were recited.<sup>51</sup>

After reciting the *mawlid*, the *khalifa* would open the *dhikr*, which would begin while the participants were sitting on the floor. They would, however, stand up while repeating the names of God.<sup>52</sup>

The *Majmū‘ al-awrād* lists several *dhikr* for the use of the Khatmiyya. The most frequently used, however, were those selected and arranged by al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. These were:<sup>53</sup>

49 Al-Raṭbī, *Minḥat al-ashāb*, 76, and interview 19.

50 Al-Raṭbī, *Minḥat al-ashāb*, 75-7, and interview 19.

51 Muḥammad ‘Uthmān al-Mīrghānī, *Mawlid al-nabī, al-musammā al-asrār al-rabbāniyya*, Cairo 1350/1931, 7-8.

52 Interview 19.

53 Al-Mīrghānī (1358/1939), 74.

|    |  |     |       |
|----|--|-----|-------|
| 1) | <i>Lā Ilāh illā Allāh, al-amān al-amān</i><br><i>Muhammad rasūl Allāh,</i><br><i>al-Sulṭān al-Sulṭān</i> | 10  | times |
| 2) | the <i>Tahlīl</i>  | 50  | "     |
| 3) | "There is no Adored save God"  | 50  | "     |
| 4) | "There is no Ever-living save God"   | 50  | "     |
| 5) | "He is God"  | 100 | "     |
| 6) | "Allāh"  | 500 | "     |
| 7) | "God is Eternal"   | 100 | "     |
| 8) | "Living, Eternal"  | 154 | "     |

As in the Qādiriyya, the Khatmiyya *dhikr* session was marked by series of intervals during which were recited songs of praise to the Prophet composed by al-Mīrghānī, members of his family or other adherents.<sup>54</sup> Songs of praise to the founder and members of his family were also chanted.

Having completed the repetition of the various formulas of *dhikr*, a group of chanters known as *musafinūn* entered the *ḥalqa* and walked around solemnly (*qadla*) chanting some poems commonly known as *safā'in* (sing. *safīna*, lit. "ship"). These were composed mainly by the founder and his son, Ja'far.<sup>55</sup>

After the *safā'in*, the participants in the *ḥadra* sat on the floor and collectively chanted a poem of the founder.<sup>56</sup> The *ḥadra* would then conclude with a collective recital, "in the heart", of the *Fātiḥa*.<sup>57</sup>

Like the Qādiriyya, the *dhikr* of the Khatmiyya could be held on various occasions. On the eve of 27 Rajab, for example, the followers used to chant the story (*qiṣṣa*) of the *mi'rāj* composed by Ja'far al-Mīrghānī.<sup>58</sup> The *ḥadras* could also be arranged for private occasions such as the naming of a child (*simāya*) or circumcision or on return from pilgrimage.<sup>59</sup> The Khatmiyya, as Trimingham notes, usually kept

54 See for instance, Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, *al-Nūr al-barrāq fī madḥ al-nabī al-miṣdāq*, and Ja'far al-Ṣādiq al-Mīrghānī, *Dīwān Riyād al-madīḥ fī madḥ al-nabī*.

55 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Nūr al-barrāq*, 86-7; Trimingham (1949), 215, and interview 19.

56 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Nūr al-barrāq*, 77.

57 Al-Shāhī, thesis (1971), 321.

58 Al-Mīrghānī, *al-Nūr al-barrāq*, 86-7.

59 Trimingham (1949), 215, and interview 19.

a tight hold on extravagances on the part of its followers during the performance of the *dhikr*.<sup>60</sup>

The Khatmiyya was and still is the only order that chants parts of the founder's poem of praise for the Prophet, *al-Nūr al-barrāq*, at the funerals of its followers.<sup>61</sup>

The Khatmiyya, like all the new orders and in contrast to the Qādiriyya, did not stress worship through strenuous physical effort. This may be illustrated by the practice of entering into spiritual retreat; the *Tabaqāt* gives several examples of Qādirīs who used to go on prolonged retreats, living only on a few dates and *qarād* seeds (the pods of the *Acacia adansonii*).<sup>62</sup> Ḥamad al-Nahlān's retreat, for instance, lasted for thirty-two months.<sup>63</sup>

By contrast, the Khatmiyya discouraged prolonged retreats; its period of *khalwa* was very brief, between three to seven days. Again in contrast to the Qādiriyya, it was permissible for an adherent of the Khatmiyya during his retreat to eat bread, seed-oil, sugar and barley. He was, however, only to eat only vegetarian food during his retreat.<sup>64</sup>

60 Trimingham (1949), 212 and 217. See also al-Raṭbī, *Minhāt al-ashāb*, 77.

61 Yūsuf al-Khalīfa Ḥabd al-Rahmān, *al-Jawāb al-kāfi fi'l-ijāba 'an asī'lat fuhūm al-muslimīn 'āmmatan wa-ahl al-ṭurūq al-ṣūfiyya khāṣṣatan*, Cairo (n.d.), 24.

62 Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 163.

63 *Ibid.*, 61-3.

64 Al-Mīrghānī (1358/1939), 64 and 66.

## CONCLUSION

The *tariqas* in the Sudan operated on two different levels. They carried out their missionary activities among those who were already Muslim and converted them to Sufism. However, they also functioned in areas on the frontiers of Islam, in the western Sudan and the southern parts of the Gezira where they converted non-Muslims to Islam.

One example of those who undertook missionary work among non-Muslims is <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Mawārzi, known as Abū'l-Ma<sup>c</sup>ālī, a Sudanese student of Ibn Idrīs. He converted a considerable number of pagan Nuba of southern Kordofan to Islam.<sup>1</sup> The Nuba mountains of Kordofan also saw the missionary activities of Ismā<sup>c</sup>il al-Walī and his student, Badawī Abū Ṣafiyya. The latter, who was known for his hostility to the Turco-Egyptian Government, led a holy war against the Nuba, converting many to Islam.

The Sufi brotherhoods in the Sudan drew their followers from different social classes and ethnic groups in both the urban and rural areas. Thus the brotherhoods played a significant unifying role by cutting across the different social backgrounds of their followers and bringing them together into associations of mutual solidarity. The Khatmiyya *tariqa* was to appeal to merchants such as Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ Shādūl, the Kawārta family and the Hawwāra *jallāba*; to learned groups and individuals such as Aḥmad w. <sup>c</sup>Isā, the <sup>c</sup>Irāqāb, Ḥamadtūiyāb and the family of Suwār al-Dhahab; and to nomads such as the Banī <sup>c</sup>Āmir and Shukriyya of the eastern Sudan.

Furthermore, the Shāyqiyya region, which is one of the main strongholds of the Khatmiyya in the Sudan, was, and still is, inhabited by people of different ethnic origins. The Khatmiyya, as indeed all the *tariqas*, therefore functioned as an organization that transcended ethnic boundaries and so, directly or indirectly, paved the way for the first Sudanese quasi-national movement, the Mahdiyya.

In this context, the Mahdist revolution should not be seen as a break with what went before. In fact the Mahdiyya had, indeed, its roots within the Sudanese Sufi context. Muḥammad Aḥmad was a Sammānī Shaykh and a follower of the teachings of Ibn Idrīs before manifesting himself as the Mahdi.

1 See further Karrār, thesis (1977), 69-70.

Muhammad Ahmad made use of the Sufi network in the Sudan to mobilize people for his cause. Hence his earliest contacts in the early stages, that is before his public manifestation of his movement, were with influential Sufi figures in Kordofan, including members of the Khatmiyya. His first letter concerning the Mahdiyya was addressed to a Sufi Shaykh, namely Muhammad al-Tayyib w. al-Basir of the Sammaniyya.<sup>2</sup>

The Mahdi, like most Sufis, believed in *karāmāt*. It is presumably because of his awareness of their significance in Sudanese religious life that he made use of them in support of his claim to the Mahdiship.<sup>3</sup> The Mahdi also asserted that his Mahdiyya was unique and that it would not come again. It combined the ideas of the infallible (*maṣūm*) *imām* of the Shī'a and the inspired (*mulham*) *imām* of the Sufis.<sup>4</sup>

With the spread of his movement, however, the Mahdi began to lay emphasis on the ideas of the Salafiyya movement. He abolished the *madhhabs* and called for a return to the origins (*uṣūl*) of the faith, the Quran and the *sunna*, as the basis of the Islamic community.<sup>5</sup>

The Mahdi, who was endeavouring to unite all Muslims, may have felt that loyalties to the numerous shaykhs of *tariqas* would hamper his efforts. Thus the banning of the *tariqas* in the middle of 1301/the beginning of 1884 was justified by the Mahdi on five grounds.

First, he had been authorized (*bi-tafwīd*, presumably by the Prophet) to abolish them. Furthermore, he added that the founders of the *tariqas* and *madhhabs* had known that he would have the authority to do so upon his manifestation as the Mahdi. Thirdly, if the founders of these *tariqas* and *madhhabs* had been alive in his time, they would have joined his cause. All are obliged to abandon the *tariqas* and the *madhhabs* and join his "Way". Finally, his *madhab* was the Quran and *sunna*.<sup>6</sup>

However, Mahdist policy towards the orders was complex. Although the present study has suggested that it should be understood within the framework of those who supported and those who opposed the Mahdiyya, further research is required.

2 Abū Salīm (1970), 18.

3 See, for example, Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 28, no. 50.

4 Muhammad Ibrāhīm Abū Salīm, *Mashūm al-khilāfa wa'l-imāma fī'l-Mahdiyya*, mimeograph, Khartoum, n.d., 2.

5 Abū Salīm, ed. (1969a), 62.

6 Abū Salīm, mimeograph (1969), 207, no. 406.

The present monograph has shown that the *tariqas* were, and still are, organizations of a multi-functional character. In addition to their religious, educational, political and socio-economic functions, they also played a cultural role. The coming of these *tariqas* led to the flourishing of written and oral religious poetry. Even women, who did not participate in the ceremonies of their orders and usually demonstrated their allegiance by attending these rituals as observers and by making gifts, composed songs of praise to the head of the order and the members of his family.<sup>7</sup>

The cultural influence of the *tariqas* may further be seen in the great number of Sufi technical terms that have found their way into popular sayings and secular songs.<sup>8</sup>

Although the *tariqas*, especially the Khatmiyya, were overshadowed by the Mahdist revolution, they rapidly regained their vitality and importance in Sudanese religious and political life after the destruction of the Mahdist state by the Anglo-Egyptian forces in 1898.<sup>9</sup>

7 See further, for example, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm al-Shūsh, *al-Shi'r al-ḥadīth fī'l-Sūdān*, vol. i, Cairo 1962, 9-35; Ibrāhīm (1965); Tāḥā, thesis (1967), 27 and 80-94, and Ḥasan (1972), *passim*.

8 Tāḥā, thesis (1967), 104-22 and 201-35.

9 On the Sufi brotherhoods in the twentieth century, see, for example, Voll, thesis (1969); Warburg (1971), 89-119; Karrār, thesis (1977); El-Hassan, thesis (1980), and al-Shāhī (1981), 13-24.

## APPENDIX A

# MUHAMMAD AL-MAJDHŪB, “THE YOUNGER”

Muhammad b. Ahmad Qamar al-Dīn b. Ḥamad al-Majdhūb, known as al-Ṣaghīr “the younger”<sup>1</sup> (1210/1795-6 to 1247/1831-2), was born and spent his early years at al-Matamma, where he memorized the Quran and learnt to read and write under Shaykh Ahmad al-Rayyāḥ. Al-Majdhūb later moved to al-Dāmar, the Majādhīb centre, where he was initiated into the Shādhiliyya by his father Ahmad Qamar al-Dīn. Al-Majdhūb then returned to al-Matamma where he rejoined his master Ahmad al-Rayyāḥ. While in al-Matamma, he was initiated by al-Mīrghānī into the Khatmiyya ṭarīqa.<sup>2</sup> Afterwards al-Majdhūb returned to al-Dāmar, where he succeeded his father as *al-faqīh al-kabīr*, who, according to Burckhardt, who visited the area in 1814, was the effective ruler of al-Dāmar.<sup>3</sup> When al-Dāmar, together with most of the Ja‘aliyyūn region, was destroyed in the harsh campaign by Muhammad *al-daftardār* in 1823 in reprisal for the assassination of Ismā‘īl Pasha, al-Majdhūb al-Ṣaghīr fled to Sawākin and thence to Mecca.<sup>4</sup> He stayed in Mecca for some seven years, during which he first joined Muhammad al-Madānī who initiated him into the Shādhiliyya for a second time. Al-Majdhūb and his teacher joined Ibn Idrīs for a number of years. Ibn Idrīs is said to have been impressed by al-Majdhūb, saying to his students that al-Majdhūb received his *‘ilm* directly from God.<sup>5</sup>

1 The author of the present book is aware of the fact that *Shaykh* al-Majdhūb was never called al-Ṣaghīr by his family. This nickname, however, is widely accepted in the Sudan.

2 *Kitāb al-Ibāna*, ms., f. 14.

3 Burckhardt (1822), 236.

4 SAD 195/7/2 and NRO, Intel., 2/32/263. According to the *Kitāb al-Ibāna*, ms., f. 4, and *Makḥṭūṭa*, 111, he accompanied al-Mīrghānī to the Hijāz.

5 *Mukhtasar manāqib al-sayyid Muhammad al-Majdhūb*, ms., f. 14, NRO, Misc., 1/67/1188 and 1/82/1315; al-Rashīd (1974), 63-4 & 97, and Karrār, thesis (1977), 57-9.

While in Medina, al-Majdhūb is said to have seen a vision in which he was ordered by the Prophet to abandon the Khatmiyya and return to the order of his grandfather, the Shādhiliyya.<sup>6</sup> In about 1830, he returned to Sawākin, where he established a zāwiya and preached the Shādhiliyya, which he revitalized in the light of the teachings of Ibn Idrīs. He called his ṭariqa “al-Muḥammadiyya al-Shādhiliyya al-Majdhūbiyya”. But the ṭariqa is commonly known in the Sudan as *al-Majdhūbiyya al-Mujaddada* (“the renewed Majdhūbiyya”) to distinguish it from the “ancient” Majdhūbiyya, the order of his grandfathers.

In 1831, after the Ja‘aliyyūn were granted amnesty by the Turco-Egyptian authorities, al-Majdhūb returned to al-Dāmar, where he stayed until he died in 1832. After his death his nephew Shaykh Muḥammad al-Ṭāhir, to whom the zāwiya of Sawākin had passed in al-Majdhūb’s lifetime, became the main representative of the Majdhūbiyya in the eastern Sudan. He was a rival to the Khatmiyya in the eastern Sudan and joined the Mahdist forces under the leadership of ‘Uthmān Dīqna.

6 *Makhtūṭa*, 111.

persevere in the unsullied remembrance [*dhikr*] of Him, [as I also charge him] to remember me in his righteous prayers, in his private retreats and his public worship. May God’s blessings be upon our Lord Muḥammad to the extent of the glory of his essence.

## APPENDIX B A KHATMIYYA *IJĀZA*

*Document A (Bergen NO 140. 6/15)*

### *Translation*

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful.

With Him is help in the beginning and the end, and God bless His Chosen One with His essence, attributes and names. Praise be to God Who has linked our spiritual descent [*sanad*] with His Chosen One; for the sublimity of every spiritual descent lies in its origin. And Thanks be to Him who has made the paths to His presence [*ḥadrātihi*] innumerable, and blessings and peace be upon him who is our support in our affairs and upon his family and all the diligent followers of his way.<sup>1</sup>

Hereafter: the one who has this name [*kunya*] from the chosen one, namely the father of Muḥammad, ʿAbd Allāh, Jaʿfar and Zaynab, Muḥammad ʿUthmān al-Mīrghānī al-Makkī al-Khatīm, may God lead him to the springs of purity.

This is a major and comprehensive *ijāza* in the most glorious path of the esoteric and exoteric. I say herewith, entering the fray with the help of God and His messenger, their sword, by God's might, being unsheathed against those who oppose me that I state I have named as my deputy and have given authority to my devoted chosen and bosom friend, my trustworthy and faithful companion, my sincere friend and close companion, my friend and devoted and obedient follower, the *khalīfa* Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naẓīf. We have granted him authority in my path and have given it to him along with those noble exoteric sciences in which I am qualified, as those whom I have mentioned and others granted me authority in the two paths. May God confirm me and him and you and all of my children, companions, and beloved friends in both disciplines. I charge him to fear God in all his breaths and to

1 *man ṭarīqahi jadd = man jadda fī ṭarīqīhi.*

persevere in the unsullied remembrance [*dhikr*] of Him, [as I also charge him] to remember me in his righteous prayers, in his private retreats and his public worship. May God's blessings be upon our Lord Muhammad to the extent of the glory of his essence.

## GLOSSARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>abkār</i> (sing. <i>bikr</i> )            | lit. “first-born”, “eldest”; the original followers (sc. of an order).  |
| <i>ādāb al-dhikr</i>                         | the rules that regulate the <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.).  |
| <i>‘adhaba</i> (pl. <i>‘adhabāt</i> )        | tassel hanging down from turban.  |
| <i>ahālī al-awqāf</i>                        | “the people of the pious endowments”; those who make pious endowments to the <i>tariqas</i> (q.v.).   |
| <i>ahl Allāh</i>                             | lit. “the people of God”.   |
| <i>ahl al-hadīth</i>                         | “people of the Tradition”; scholars who emphasized the Traditions of the Prophet in opposition to the schools of Law ( <i>madhhab</i> , q.v.): <i>EP</i> , i, 258-9 (J. Schacht). |
| <i>ahwāl</i>                                 | see <i>ḥāl</i> .  |
| <i>ahzāb al-tajalliyāt al-ilāhiyya</i>       | “the litanies of the divine manifestations”; two litanies written by Ibn Idrīs.   |
| <i>ajāwīd</i> (sing. <i>jawād</i> )          | mediators; elders who act as mediators in a dispute.  |
| <i>akhḍh al-‘ahd</i>                         | the act of taking the compact, i.e. joining a <i>tariqa</i> (q.v.).   |
| <i>akhḍh al-bay‘a</i>                        | the act of taking the oath of allegiance.   |
| <i>akhḍh al-ṭariqa</i> (or <i>al-ṭariq</i> ) | the act of joining a brotherhood; cf. <i>akhḍh al-wird</i> .  |
| <i>akhḍh al-wird</i>                         | the act of taking the litany; synonymous with <i>akhḍh al-ṭariqa</i> .  |
| <i>al-‘alāmiyya</i>                          | the place in the <i>khalwa</i> (q.v.) set aside for the teaching of <i>‘ilm</i> (q.v.).   |
| <i>ālāt</i>                                  | lit. “tools”; the ritual instruments inherited by a Qādirī shaykh from his predecessor.   |

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <i>‘ālim</i> (pl. <i>‘ulamā’</i> ) | religious scholar.  |
| <i>‘amal</i>                       | performance, action, or practice: cf. <i>EP</i> , i, 426-9.   |
| <i>amān</i>                        | safe-conduct; pardon: cf. <i>EP</i> , i, 429-30.  |
| <i>‘āmil</i>                       | administrative agent, representative, or commissioner: cf. <i>EP</i> , i, 435-6.  |
| <i>‘āmil ‘umūm</i>                 | general agent.  |
| <i>amīn</i> (pl. <i>umanā’</i> )   | commissioner, trustee; office-holder in the Ismā‘iliyya <i>tariqa</i> (q.v.).   |
| <i>amīn bayt al-māl</i>            | the administrator of the treasury; a term used in the Mahdist state.  |
| <i>amīn khatm al-Mahdi</i>         | the keeper of the Mahdi’s seal.   |
| <i>amīr maṭba‘at al-hajar</i>      | director of the lithograph press used by the Mahdist state.   |
| <i>amīr al-mu‘minīn</i>            | the Commander of the Faithful; Caliph.  |
| <i>ansār</i>                       | “Companions”; a term originally used for the Medinan followers of the Prophet. The term was used by the Sudanese Mahdi in imitation of the Prophet. |
| <i>al-aqrab</i>                    | lit. “the nearer” (in terms of time); the second.   |
| <i>ardabb</i>                      | a measure of capacity; approximately 180 litres.  |
| <i>al-‘arsh</i>                    | the throne ( <i>sc.</i> of God).  |
| <i>asās</i>                        | lit. “foundation”; the basic litany of a <i>tariqa</i> (q.v.).  |
| <i>al-Asās al-kabīr</i>            | the major version of the basic litanies of the Khatmiyya.   |
| <i>al-Asās al-ṣaghīr</i>           | the minor version of the basic litanies of the Khatmiyya.   |
| <i>al-ashhur al-ḥurum</i>          | the five Muslim holy months, namely Muḥarram, Rajab, Sha‘bān, Ramadān and Dhū'l-ḥijja.  |

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>‘Āshurā’</i>                       | the tenth of Muḥarram (the first Islamic month); the anniversary of the death of al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī, nephew of the Prophet: <i>EP</i> , i, 705.             |
| <i>al-‘asr</i>                        | the afternoon prayers; the name of Quran, 103.   |
| <i>awlād al-bayt</i>                  | lit. “the boys of the house [sc. of the Mīrghanī]”, who voluntarily offered their services as attendants to the male members of the Mīrghanī household.    |
| <i>awqāf</i>                          | see <i>waqf</i> .  |
| <i>awrād</i>                          | see <i>wird</i> .  |
| <i>āyat al-mubāya‘a</i>               | the Quranic verse of the pledge of allegiance: Quran, 48:10.   |
| <i>azīma</i> (pl. <i>azā’im</i> )     | incantation.   |
| <i>banāt al-bayt</i>                  | lit. “the girls of the house [sc. of the Mīrghanī]”, who voluntarily offered their services as attendants to the female members of the Mīrghanī household. |
| <i>baniyya</i> (pl. <i>baniyyāt</i> ) | a small rectangular building of mud usually without a roof.  |
| <i>baraka</i>                         | this term has two main meanings: 1) heritable beneficent force of divine origin; 2) benediction or blessing.   |
| <i>bāshī-būzuq</i><br>(Turkish)       | irregular cavalry.   |
| <i>basmala</i>                        | the formula “In the Name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate”.   |
| <i>bay‘a</i>                          | oath of allegiance.  |
| <i>bayān</i> (pl. <i>bayanāt</i> )    | lit. “revealing, manifestation”; by extension, the place where a holy man has revealed himself in a dream or vision.                                       |
| <i>bayraq</i> (pl. <i>bayāriq</i> )   | flag; see also <i>rāya</i> .   |

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>buq̄a</i>                   | open space in the <i>khalwa</i> (q.v.), where the Quran is taught and <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.) sessions are held.   |
| <i>daftardār</i>               | “keeper of the records”; Mamluk title held by Muḥammad bey Khusraw.  |
| <i>Dalā'il al-khayrāt</i>      | “the signs of the good [deeds]”, the title of al-Jazūlī’s famous religious poem: <i>EP</i> , ii, 527-8.  |
| <i>dār</i> (pl. <i>diyār</i> ) | acknowledged territory of ethnic group.  |
| <i>al-daraja al-kawniyya</i>   | according to the <i>Tabaqāt</i> , 207, the creative powers attained by a saint of the middle rank.   |
| <i>darb</i>                    | see <i>martaba</i> .   |
| <i>al-dhākir</i>               | one who remembers (God).   |
| <i>dhikr</i>                   | remembrance or invocation of God: <i>EP</i> , ii, 223-7.   |
| <i>dhikr al-halqa</i>          | the communal invocation of God in which the participants sit or stand in a circle ( <i>halqa</i> ).  |
| <i>dhikr al-karīr</i>          | a type of Qādirī <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.) with a special method of forceful intonation resembling the sound made by a pigeon.   |
| <i>dhikr bi'l-lisān</i>        | remembrance (sc. of God), “upon the tongue”, i.e. verbally.  |
| <i>dhikr bi'l-qalb</i>         | remembrance (sc. of God), “in the heart”, i.e. silently.   |
| <i>dhikr al-ṣayḥa</i>          | lit. “the invocation of the shout”; it is practised by the Ya <sup>c</sup> qūbāb branch of the Qādiriyya and the Sammāniyya. It opens with a loud cry for God’s succour. |
| <i>dhikr al-waqt</i>           | lit. “the invocation [sc. of God] of the time”. These are sets of invocations to be repeated a prescribed number of times after the five canonical daily prayers.        |
| <i>faddān</i>                  | measurement of land, equalling 4,200.833 m <sup>2</sup> .  |
| <i>fakī</i>                    | Sudanese colloquial form of <i>faqīh</i> .   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>faqīh</i> (pl. <i>fuqahā</i> <sup>2</sup> ) | one who is versed in jurisprudence; a jurist; frequently used in the Sudan with the anomalous pl. of <i>fuqarā</i> <sup>2</sup> .   |
| <i>faqīr</i> (pl. <i>fuqarā</i> <sup>2</sup> ) | one who is poor in the presence of God. Although this term is generally confined to Sufis, in the Sudan it is frequently used for holy men in general.  |
| <i>faqīra</i>                                  | a female <i>faqīr</i> .   |
| <i>far</i>                                     | branch.   |
| <i>farajīyya</i>                               | a kind of robe.   |
| <i>fath</i>                                    | lit. “opening”; illumination of inspiration; see <i>kashf</i> .   |
| <i>Fātiha</i>                                  | lit. “opening”; the name of the first chapter in the Quran.   |
| <i>fijayja</i>                                 | small plot of cleared land.   |
| <i>fiqh</i>                                    | Islamic law, jurisprudence.   |
| <i>fitna</i>                                   | sedition.   |
| <i>fuqarā</i> <sup>2</sup>                     | see <i>faqīr</i> .  |
| <i>ghār</i>                                    | “cave”, retreat for personal devotions. Several holy men made artificial caves or grottos, in imitation of the Prophet who used a cave on Ḥirā <sup>2</sup> Mountain for religious devotions before the manifestation of his prophethood: <i>EP</i> , iii, 462. |
| <i>al-ghawth</i>                               | lit. “the succour”; a Sufi rank, being those who exist by virtue of the <i>qutb al-aqṭāb</i> (q.v.).  |
| <i>ghawthīyya</i>                              | the rank or state of <i>al-ghawth</i> .   |
| <i>hadīth</i>                                  | a tradition going back to the Prophet Muḥammad based upon a chain of transmission.  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>ḥadra</b> (pl. <i>ḥadrāt</i> )          | lit. “presence” ( <i>sc.</i> of God or His Prophet, Muḥammad); a session of a communal <i>dhikr</i> ( <i>q.v.</i> ) or a recital of litanies by members of a Sufi brotherhood.   |
| <b>ḥadrāt al-rasūl</b>                     | a gathering of the saints in the presence ( <i>ḥadra</i> ) of the Prophet.   |
| <b>al-ḥājj</b>                             | pilgrim; title of one who has performed the pilgrimage to Mecca.   |
| <b>ḥākim</b> (pl. <i>ḥukkām</i> )          | “judge”; among the Khatmiyya the title of an official who was entrusted with the duty of advising members on legal matters and who was also authorized to intervene in disputes. |
| <b>ḥāl</b> (pl. <i>aḥwāl</i> )             | state; spiritual state; a transitory state, as opposed to <i>maqām</i> ( <i>q.v.</i> ).  |
| <b>ḥalqa</b> (pl. <i>ḥalaqāt</i> )         | circle; synonym: <i>dā’ira</i> .   |
| <b>ḥāris</b> (pl. <i>ḥurrās</i> )          | keeper, guard, attendant.  |
| <b>ḥawliyya</b> (Sud. Ar. <i>ḥōliyya</i> ) | from <i>ḥawl</i> or “year”, meaning the anniversary of the death of a holy man or woman.   |
| <b>Hayy, Qayyūm</b>                        | “Living”, “Eternal”: two of the ninety-nine names of God.  |
| <b>al-ḥīrān al-kibār</b>                   | senior students at a Quranic school.   |
| <b>al-ḥīrān al-ṣīghār</b>                  | junior students at a Quranic school.   |
| <b>hizb</b>                                | “group”; “division”: in the latter sense, one sixteenth of the Quran; in Sufism, “litany”: <i>EP</i> , iii, 513-14.  |
| <b>Hizb al-anwār</b>                       | “the litany of the lights [ <i>sc.</i> of the Prophet]”; composed by Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī.  |
| <b>Hizb al-bahr</b>                        | “the litany of the sea”, a famous litany composed by Abū’l-Ḥasan al-Shādhilī.  |
| <b>Hizb al-barr</b>                        | “the litany of the land”, a famous litany composed by Abū’l-Ḥasan al-Shādhilī.   |
| <b>Hizb al-dā’ira</b>                      | “litany of the circle”, composed by al-Kabbāshī.   |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Hizb al-ḥamd</i>                                     | “the litany of praise [sc. to God]”, composed by al-Kabbāshī.  |
| <i>Hizb al-salām</i>                                    | “the litany of peace”, composed by al-Kabbāshī.  |
| <i>al-Hizb al-sayfi</i>                                 | “the litany of the sword”, attributed to <sup>c</sup> Alī b. Abī Ṭālib, the Prophet’s cousin.  |
| <i>ḥōd</i> (cl. Ar. <i>ḥawd</i> )                       | small piece of agricultural land, usually rectangular in shape.  |
| <i>ḥuwār</i> (cl. Ar. <i>ḥiwār</i> , pl. <i>ḥirān</i> ) | lit. “a young camel”; student at a Quranic school or a follower of a Sufi shaykh.  |
| <i>ḥuwāra</i> (pl. <i>ḥuwārāt</i> )                     | a female member of the Khatmiyya who voluntarily offers her service as a link between the female members of the Mīrghānī family and the female followers of the order. |
| <sup>c</sup> <i>ibāya</i> (cl. Ar. <i>ibā'a</i> )       | cloak-like woollen wrap.   |
| <i>ibrīq</i> (also <i>rakwa</i> )                       | water container used for ritual ablutions.   |
| <sup>c</sup> <i>īd</i>                                  | “festival”; the two main <sup>c</sup> <i>īds</i> , namely <sup>c</sup> <i>īd al-fitr</i> (1 Shawwāl) and <sup>c</sup> <i>īd al-adhā</i> (10 Dhu'l-hijja).              |
| <sup>c</sup> <i>idda</i>                                | legally prescribed period during which a woman is not allowed to remarry after being divorced or widowed.  |
| <i>idhn</i>   | permission.  |
| <i>idhn nabawī</i>                                      | Prophetic permission.  |
| <i>ijāza</i>  | licence or authorization to teach a specified text or to initiate followers into an order.   |
| <i>ijmā'</i>  | consensus: <i>EP</i> , iii, 1023-6.  |
| <i>ijtihād</i>  | the action of applying independent judgement in legal or theological matters: <i>EP</i> , ii, 1026-7.  |
| <i>ikhlās</i>   | lit. “faithfulness”; the name of the Quranic chapter 112.  |
| <i>ikhwān</i>   | “brethren”; fellow members of a brotherhood.   |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>‘ilm</i> (pl. <i>‘ulūm</i> )           | knowledge; Islamic sciences.  |
| <i>‘ilm rabbānī</i>                       | “divine knowledge”; knowledge or learning that is inspired directly by God. A synonymous phrase is <i>‘ilm ladunī</i> .   |
| <i>imām</i>                               | leader; leader of a public prayer; spiritual and temporal leader in Shī‘a Islam: <i>EP</i> , iii, 1163-9.   |
| <i>indhār</i> (pl. <i>indhārāt</i> )      | “warning”; letters sent by the Sudanese Mahdi to those who did not freely support his cause.  |
| <i>ism Allāh al-a‘zam</i>                 | the most exalted name of God. This name is believed to be more sublime than the ninety-nine names of God. The Shī‘a believe that God made use of this name when he created the world. Although this name is generally considered to be known only to the prophets, knowledge of it was claimed by holy men as proof of their claim to the <i>wilāya</i> (q.v.). |
| <i>istighfār</i>                          | the act of asking God for forgiveness.  |
| <i>istiqāma</i>                           | righteousness.  |
| <i>jāh</i>                                | “rank, dignity”; a term used in the Sudan to denote the privileged or tax-exempt status granted by rulers to holy men.  |
| <i>jallāba</i> (sing.<br><i>jallābī</i> ) | itinerant merchants.  |
| <i>jallābiyya</i>                         | a long shirtlike garment, usually made of cotton.   |
| <i>jāmi‘</i> (pl. <i>jawāmi‘</i> )        | mosque where the public prayer is performed on Fridays.   |
| <i>jarf</i>                               | the slope on the river bank down to the river.  |
| <i>jibba</i> or <i>jubba</i>              | a long outer garment with long wide sleeves.  |
| <i>jihād</i>                              | a) <i>jihād al-nafs</i> ; struggle against one’s carnal self, otherwise <i>jihād akbar</i> . “greater <i>jihād</i> ”; b) <i>jihād</i> ; holy war as a religious duty against non-believers, otherwise <i>jihād aṣghar</i> . “minor <i>jihād</i> ”.  |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>jihādiyya</i>                                     | troops usually of slave origin, employed by both the Turco-Egyptian and Mahdist regimes.  |
| <i>al-kabas</i> (or <i>al-rōshan</i> )               | a shelf hanging from the ceiling of a room at the Quranic school set aside for storing the wooden tablets (Sud. Ar. <i>lōh</i> ) of the students at the end of their lessons. |
| <i>kakar</i>   | wooden stool.   |
| <i>karāma</i> (pl. <i>karamāt</i> )                  | charisma; miracle, especially of a saint.   |
| <i>karkab</i>  | wooden shoes.   |
| <i>karrāb</i>  | a piece of cloth or leather tied around the waist to secure the <i>jibba</i> (q.v.) during the <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.).   |
| <i>kashf</i>   | “uncovering”, illumination in mystical sense.   |
| <i>khalīfa</i>                                       | lit. “successor”; deputy or representative of the head of an order.   |
| <i>khalifāt al-khulafā</i> <sup>2</sup>              | the head of the <i>khalīfas</i> ; a senior representative of an order.  |
| <i>khalīfa mustawali</i>                             | the <i>khalīfa</i> actually in charge of an order.  |
| <i>khalq</i>   | people, mankind.  |
| <i>khalwa</i>  | has several meanings:<br>a) spiritual retreat or seclusion;<br>b) the place of spiritual retreat;<br>c) and in the Sudan, it is used of a Quranic school.                     |
| <i>khanqāh</i> ( <i>khānqāh</i> )                    | Sufi centre.  |
| <i>khatim al-awliyā</i> <sup>3</sup>                 | “the seal [i.e. the last] of the saints”; the title of Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī.  |
| <i>khatm</i> (also <i>khatim</i> and <i>khātim</i> ) | the last, the seal, the final.  |
| <i>khaṭwa</i>  | lit. “step”; the ability of a holy man to cover vast distances in an instant.   |
| <i>al-khawāṣṣ</i>                                    | the chosen, the privileged.   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>khawāṣṣ al-khawāṣṣ</i>                                | the elect of the elect, the most privileged among the chosen.  |
| <i>khuddām</i> (sing.<br><i>khādim</i> )                 | servant or attendant.  |
| <i>khuddām al-hadāya</i>                                 | lit. “the servants of the gifts”; adherents of the Khatmiyya whose duty it was to collect gifts for the order. |
| <i>khuddām al-jawāmi</i> <sup>c</sup>                    | the servants of the mosque.  |
| <i>khuṭṭ</i>   | sub-district.  |
| <i>kiswa</i>   | a) the covering of the holy Ka‘ba in Mecca;<br>b) covering for the grave of a holy man or woman.               |
| <i>kūfiyya</i>   | headdress.   |
| <i>kufr</i>  | unbelief, blasphemy.   |
| <i>lawḥ</i> (Sud. Ar. <i>lōh</i> ;<br>pl. <i>alwāḥ</i> ) | a) writing wooden tablet;<br>b) chapter.   |
| <i>al-lawḥ al-mahfūz</i>                                 | “the Guarded Tablet”, which is believed to be preserved beneath the Throne of God.                             |
| <i>laylat al-mi‘rāj</i>                                  | see <i>al-mi‘rāj</i> .   |
| <i>layliyya</i>  | <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.) session held on specified nights.  |
| <i>madad</i>   | supernatural help, divine assistance.  |
| <i>madā‘iḥ</i> (sing.<br><i>madīḥ</i> or <i>madḥa</i> )  | eulogies; religious songs of praise.   |
| <i>madḥ</i>  | commendation, praise, glorification.   |
| <i>madhab</i> (pl.<br><i>madhāhib</i> )                  | school of law in Islam; sometimes used in the phrase, <i>madhab al-taṣawwuf</i> .                              |
| <i>ma‘dhūn</i>   | a Muslim authorized to perform marriages.  |
| <i>mādiḥ</i>   | eulogist; chanter of religious songs of praise.  |
| <i>madrasa</i>   | school.  |

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>al-Mahdī</i>                      | “the divinely guided”; the person who will appear before the end of time to re-establish justice on earth.   |
| <i>al-Mahdī al-muntazar</i>          | “the expected Mahdī”.  |
| <i>majlis</i>                        | council, assembly, gathering.  |
| <i>al-Majlis al-ṣūfī al-aclā</i>     | the High Sufi Council in Cairo.  |
| <i>majlis ʿumanā’ al-Mahdī</i>       | the council of the Mahdi’s commissioners.  |
| <i>makk</i> (pl. <i>mukūk</i> )      | ruler.   |
| <i>malāmatiyya</i>                   | lit. “the blameworthy”; those who held an antinomian position in Islam, “who combined virtue with vice”.   |
| <i>malik</i>                         | king, sovereign.   |
| <i>manāqib</i>                       | lit. “virtues”; hagiography.   |
| <i>mandūb</i> (pl. <i>manādib</i> )  | emissary.  |
| <i>maqām</i> (pl. <i>maqāmāt</i> )   | place; rank; permanent spiritual status in the Sufi hierarchy; the opposite of <i>hāl</i> .  |
| <i>maqdūm</i> (pl. <i>maqādīm</i> )  | commissioner appointed for a fixed term or purpose by the Dār Fūr Sultan.  |
| <i>martaba</i> (pl. <i>marātib</i> ) | grade; a stage or phase in the communal <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.); its synonyms are <i>darb</i> and <i>ṭabaqa</i> .  |
| <i>masīd</i>                         | a dialectical variant of the cl. <i>masjid</i> , “mosque”; used also for a Quranic school. In some parts of the Sudan, however, its function is more social than religious or educational. |
| <i>maṣṣūn</i>                        | “infallible, sinless”.   |
| <i>mawlā</i>                         | master.  |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>mawlid</i> (col. <i>mūlid</i> ,<br>pl. <i>mawālid</i> ) | birthday of:<br>a) the Prophet on 12 Rabi' I, known as <i>mawlid al-nabī</i> or <i>al-mawlid al-nabawī</i> ; or of<br>b) a saint.<br>The term is also used of religious poems recounting the life of the Prophet. |
| <i>midd</i> (cl. Ar. <i>mudd</i> )                         | a measure of grain.   |
| <i>mihāya</i>  | the water used for washing off Quranic verses written on wooden tablet ( <i>lawh</i> ); the water is considered to have medicinal value.  |
| <i>al-mi'raj</i> , <i>laylat al-mi'raj</i>                 | the Prophet's ascent to Heaven, celebrated on 27 Rajab.   |
| <i>misbāha</i> (or <i>sibha</i> )<br><i>alfiyya</i>        | rosary of a thousand beads.   |
| <i>muftī</i>   | a scholar who delivers formal legal opinions ( <i>fatwa</i> ).  |
| <i>muhāfaza</i>  | province.   |
| <i>mu'jiza</i> (pl.<br><i>mu'jizāt</i> )                   | a miracle worked by a prophet, in contrast to <i>karāma</i> (q.v.).   |
| <i>mukhtaṣar</i>   | lit. "abridgement, synopsis"; in the Sudan, it almost invariably refers to the Mālikī lawbook, the <i>Mukhtaṣar</i> of Khalīl b. Ishāq (d. 776/1374).   |
| <i>mulāzim</i> (pl.<br><i>mulāzimūn</i> )                  | "attendant"; followers or adepts who lived almost permanently at the centre of their orders.  |
| <i>mulham</i>  | inspired.   |
| <i>munshid</i> (pl.<br><i>munshidūn</i> )                  | chanter of religious poems or litanies.   |
| <i>muqaddam</i>  | leader of a local branch ( <i>qisīn</i> ) in the Qādiriyya; in the Khatmiyya, assistant to the <i>khalīfa</i> (q.v.).   |
| <i>muqaddima</i>   | lit. "introduction"; introductory rituals for initiation into the Khatmiyya.  |
| <i>murīd</i>   | aspirant, novice.   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>murshid</i>                         | spiritual guide or director.  |
| <i>musabba'at</i>                      | the term used to describe the devotions (litanies etc.), as divided for use during the seven days of the week.  |
| <i>musafin</i> (pl. <i>musafinūn</i> ) | chanter of <i>safīna</i> (q.v.) in the <i>dhikr</i> sessions of the Khatmiyya.  |
| <i>al-nabī 'Isā</i>                    | the Prophet Jesus.  |
| <i>nadhr</i> (pl. <i>nudhūr</i> )      | votive offering.  |
| <i>nā'ib</i>                           | deputy.   |
| <i>al-nā'ib al-āmm</i>                 | deputy to the head of the Khatmiyya.  |
| <i>naqīb</i> (pl. <i>nuqabā'</i> )     | guardian of the liturgy in a Sufi order.  |
| <i>naqīb al-umanā'</i>                 | the head of the board of <i>umanā'</i> of the Ismā'iliyya <i>tariqa</i> (q.v.).   |
| <i>nār al-ilm</i>                      | lit. "the fire of learning", referring to the second level, after <i>nār al-Qur'ān</i> (q.v.), of education in a religious school.  |
| <i>nār al-Qur'ān</i>                   | lit. "the fire of the Quran", referring to the first level of education in a religious school which was devoted to the memorization of the Quran. It was so called because lessons were conducted by the light from a fire. |
| <i>al-naṣr</i>                         | lit. "victory, triumph"; name of Quran, Chapter 110.  |
| <i>nōba</i> (cl. <i>nawba</i> )        | drum.   |
| <i>nūn</i>                             | the twenty-fifth letter of the Arabic alphabet.   |
| <i>qādī</i>                            | judicial official; judge.   |
| <i>qādī al-Islām</i>                   | senior judge.   |
| <i>qadla</i>                           | walking in a solemn manner.   |
| <i>qal'a</i>                           | "fort, citadel"; in the Sudan it can mean a high and open piece of land.  |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>qāri<sup>2</sup> al-riwāyāt al-sab<sup>c</sup>a</i> | one who has mastered the seven alternative ways of reciting the Quran.  |
| <i>qaṣīda</i> (pl. <i>qaṣā<sup>2</sup>id</i> )         | poem.   |
| <i>qāṭi<sup>c</sup></i> or <i>qāṭū<sup>c</sup>a</i>    | storeroom.  |
| <i>qawā<sup>c</sup>id al-sulūk</i>                     | the rules that regulate the aspirant's progress on the Sufi way.  |
| <i>qiṣṣa</i> (pl. <i>qiṣṣas</i> )                      | story.  |
| <i>qiyās</i>   | inference by analogy.   |
| <i>qubba</i>   | domed tomb of a saint.  |
| <i>quṣṭān</i>  | a long robe with long sleeves, usually made of silk or cotton.  |
| <i>al-Qur<sup>2</sup>āniyya</i>                        | the place where the Quran is taught in the <i>khalwa</i> (q.v.).  |
| <i>quṭb</i>  | lit. “pole or pivot”; head of the hierarchy of saints.  |
| <i>quṭb al-aqtāb</i>                                   | lit. “the pole of the poles”; head of the hierarchy of saints.  |
| <i>quṭb al-shamāl</i>                                  | lit. “the pole of the north”; its meaning is obscure, but it was used of Shaykh al-Qurashī w. al-Zayn of the Sammāniyya.            |
| <i>quṭbiyya</i>  | the state of being a <i>quṭb</i> ; a term used in the Sudan to denote those who had attained an advanced level of Islamic learning. |
| <i>al-rā<sup>c</sup>ī</i>                              | office-holder in the Ismā <sup>c</sup> īliyya; his duty was to protect the rights of the order.                                     |
| <i>rak<sup>c</sup>a</i>                                | the words and acts that comprise a prostration in ritual prayers.   |
| <i>rākūba</i>  | small shelter.  |
| <i>rakwa</i>   | see <i>ibrīq</i> .  |
| <i>Ramadān</i>   | the ninth month of the Muslim calendar, which is the month of fasting.  |

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>rāya</i> (pl. <i>rāyāt</i> )       | flag or standard.  |
| <i>razīm</i>                          | a quiet form of Qādirī <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.).  |
| <i>ribāt</i>                          | frontier-post; a religious centre.   |
| <i>Risāla</i>                         | lit. “letter, treatise”; in the Sudan, it almost invariably refers to the <i>Risāla</i> of Ibn Abī Zayd al-Qayrawānī (d. 389/996).                                     |
| <i>al-rōshān</i>                      | see <i>al-kabas</i> .  |
| <i>ru'yā</i>                          | dream or vision.   |
| <i>safīna</i> (pl. <i>safā'in</i> )   | lit. “ship”; the name of that part of the Khatmiyya communal <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.), during which poems by Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī and his son, Jaʻfar, are recited. |
| <i>sahāba</i>                         | the Prophet's companions.  |
| <i>sājat</i>                          | flat pieces of iron used in the communal <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.) of the Qādiriyya.   |
| <i>Salafiyya</i>                      | an Islamic movement of the nineteenth century, and before a call for a return to the sources of belief, i.e. the Quran and the <i>sunna</i> (q.v.).                    |
| <i>ṣalāt al-tarāwīḥ</i>               | prayers performed during the nights of Ramadān.  |
| <i>sanad</i>                          | chain of spiritual authority.  |
| <i>sāqiya</i>                         | waterwheel; land so irrigated.   |
| <i>saray</i>                          | palace.  |
| <i>shahāda</i>                        | the testimony of faith in Islam; the formula “There is no God but God, and Muḥammad is the messenger of God.”  |
| <i>shaqīqa</i>                        | fractional share in <i>sāqiya</i> land.  |
| <i>sharḥ</i>                          | commentary.  |
| <i>sharīfa</i> (pl. <i>sharīfāt</i> ) | females who claim to descend from the Prophet. A female member of the Mīrghānī family.   |

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <i>shaykh</i>            | lit. “old man”; also<br>a) tribal chief;<br>b) religious teacher;<br>c) head of a Sufi order.  |
| <i>shaykh al-balad</i>   | community or village head.   |
| <i>shaykh al-dhikr</i>   | director of the <i>dhikr</i> (q.v.) in the Ismā‘īliyya order.  |
| <i>shaykh al-qirā'a</i>  | one who teaches the Quran or other Islamic sciences; a common synonym is <i>shaykh al-ta‘alīm</i> .                                  |
| <i>shaykh al-tahqīq</i>  | the one who has attained the stage of realization of “Truth” ( <i>haqīqa</i> ) and is qualified to guide aspirants towards that end. |
| <i>shi‘ba</i>            | Y-shaped stick.  |
| <i>shu‘ār</i>            | a group of chanters who perform the <i>dhikr al-sayha</i> (q.v.) in the Sammāniyya ṭarīqa (q.v.).                                    |
| <i>sibha</i>             | see <i>misbāha</i> .   |
| <i>silsila</i>           | chain of spiritual descent.  |
| <i>simāya</i>            | naming of a child.   |
| <i>sirr al-khatim</i>    | “the secret of the seal [of the saints]”; honorific title used in the Mīrghānī family.   |
| <i>sub‘</i>              | one-seventh; section.  |
| <i>ṣulh</i>              | reconciliation; compromise.  |
| <i>sultān al-awliyā'</i> | the ruler or head of all the saints.   |
| <i>sunna</i>             | custom, saying or act of the Prophet.  |
| <i>al-Ta‘awwudh</i>      | the formula “I take refuge in God from the Devil, the cursed.”   |
| <i>ṭabaqa</i>            | see <i>martaba</i> .   |
| <i>tafsīr</i>            | Quranic exegesis.  |
| <i>al-Tahlīl</i>         | the formula “There is no God but God.”   |
| <i>ṭā‘ifa</i>            | “part, portion”, religious group.  |

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>tajwid</i>                        | the art of reciting the Quran.   |
| <i>takiyya</i>                       | centre belonging to a <i>ṭariqa</i> providing food and accommodation.  |
| <i>takhlīf</i>                       | investiture; the ceremony of investiture as a <i>khalīla</i> (q.v.); synonym, <i>tansīb</i> .  |
| <i>talqīn</i>                        | instruction by word of mouth in the litanies of a particular Sufi order.   |
| <i>tansīb</i>                        | see <i>takhlīf</i> .   |
| <i>taqashhuf</i>                     | asceticism.  |
| <i>taqlīd</i>                        | the unquestioning acceptance of the teachings of one of the <i>madhhabs</i> (q.v.).  |
| <i>ṭar</i>                           | tambourines.   |
| <i>ṭariqa</i>                        | “path or way”; Sufi order or brotherhood.  |
| <i>tarjama</i> (pl. <i>tarājim</i> ) | lit. “translation”; a form of biography.   |
| <i>taṣawwuf fardī</i>                | personal form of Sufism.   |
| <i>tawhīd</i>                        | profession of the unity of God; theology.  |
| <i>tilmīdh</i>                       | pupil or student.  |
| <i>‘ulamā’</i>                       | see <i>‘ālim</i> .   |
| <i>‘ulūm al-ḥaqīqa</i>               | lit. “the sciences of the [divine] Reality”; a term adopted by the Sufis to denote Sufism. A synonym is <i>‘ulūm al-bātin</i> : “the esoteric sciences”. |
| <i>al-‘ulūm al-laduniyya</i>         | see <i>‘ilm rabbānī</i> .  |
| <i>‘ulūm al-ẓāhir</i>                | the exoteric sciences.   |
| <i>umanā’</i>                        | see <i>amīn</i> .  |
| <i>‘umra</i>                         | minor pilgrimage.  |
| <i>‘urāda</i>                        | strip of fertile land extending along the bank of the Nile and lying immediately above the <i>jarf</i> (q.v.) land.                                      |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>ustādh</i>                                  | teacher, master.   |
| <i>uṣūl</i>                                    | “origins, foundations”, specifically the Quran and <i>sunna</i> (q.v.).            |
| <i>wā‘iz</i>                                   | preacher.  |
| <i>wakīl al-nā‘ib</i>                          | assistant to the deputy.   |
| <i>walī</i> (pl. <i>awliyā’</i> )              | saint.   |
| <i>waqf</i> (pl. <i>awqāf</i> )                | pious endowment or charitable gift.  |
| <i>al-wasīla</i>                               | one who acts as an intermediary with God; originally used of the Prophet.          |
| <i>wazīr</i>                                   | minister.  |
| <i>wilāya</i>                                  | the state of being a <i>walī</i> or saint; sanctity.                               |
| <i>wird</i>                                    | “litany”; it is sometimes used to mean a Sufi order or “way”.                      |
| <i>wird al-basmala</i>                         | the litany of the formula of “In the name of God the Merciful, the Compassionate”. |
| <i>yulaqin</i>                                 | see <i>talqīn</i> .  |
| <i>al-zaghrāt</i> (cl. Ar. <i>al-zaqhrād</i> ) | one who makes a shrill sound.  |
| <i>zakāh</i>                                   | Islamic tax.   |
| <i>zāwiya</i>                                  | lit. “corner”; a <i>ṭariqa</i> centre.   |
| <i>ziyāra</i>                                  | lit. “visit”; visitation to the tombs or shrines of holy men and women.            |
| <i>zuwāra</i>                                  | gifts in kind or cash placed at the tombs and shrines of holy men.                 |

# SOURCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY

## *The Sources*

The present book is based on a combination of written and oral sources. These sources, which are complex and varied, fall into several categories, listed below. I, in fact, began to collect data in 1976. Part of the material I collected was incorporated into my MA thesis, entitled *The influence of the Idrisiyya teachings on the Sufi Orders in the Sudan*, University of Khartoum, 1977 (in Arabic).

The present study is also based on field research which I conducted in the Shāyqiyya region between August and September 1982. Armed with letters of introduction from some of my relatives and friends in Khartoum to some senior representatives (*khalīfas*) and followers in the Shāyqiyya region, I visited a number of villages and towns, among which the most important were Karīma, Nūrī, Duwaym Wad Hājj, al-Ghurayba and al-Zūma.

My choice of these places was based on information drawn from both non-Sudanese sources, that is to say the European travellers, as well as those of Sudanese origin, namely the *Tabaqāt* of Wad Dayf Allāh, and the *Kitāb al-ibāna* of Ibn al-Naṣayḥ (both discussed below), on the history of the founder of the Khatmiyya, together with the private archive of the Naṣīfāb family of Abū Rannāt Island, preserved in the NRO, Khartoum. Some informants also recommended to me other potential informants or owners of documents in other places within the region.

I always approached my informants both in my capacity as a researcher intending to write on the evolution of their orders, and as a member of the staff of the NRO in Khartoum. The willingness of the religious families to co-operate with the NRO by depositing or donating original or photographic copies of their private archives may be seen in the continuous growth of the NRO collections of religious documents.

The procedure which I adopted in the field was to photograph some of the relevant documents still in private hands, as well as recording the appropriate oral traditions. I photographed a number of documents concerning a variety of topics. These included, for example, the titles of

some of the books used in the Quranic schools (sing. *khalwa*) of Abū Rannāt Island and al-Ghurayba during the period from the sixteenth to the eighteenth centuries.

The present study also used another set of documents which I photographed in the Shāyqiyya region. These are a number of formulas that were used by holy men in curing various illnesses such as wind, hemiplegia and migraine.

Another type of non-literary documents that I photographed during my field-trip were letters exchanged between the local representatives of the various brotherhoods and their headquarters, and at the local level between the *khalīfas*. The present study has also made use of some letters that I have photographed in Duwaym Wad Ḥājj and that were exchanged between the Duwayhiyya holy clan in the Shāyqiyya region and their branch in Mecca.

A further category of non-literary material which I photographed in the Shāyqiyya region comprises the *ijāzāt* (sing. *ijāza*, certificate or authorization) that were issued by the heads of the different orders to their adherents. Valuable information has been gleaned from these documents. Thus the seal-dates of two *ijāzās*, issued by the founder of the Khatmiyya to two of his senior representatives in the Shāyqiyya area, enabled me to establish the date when al-Mīrghānī first arrived in the Sudan (see example in Appendix B). Furthermore, a number of pedigrees of holy families have also been photographed and used in the present study.

### *The Oral Sources*

This study is also based in part on oral sources drawn from a number of formal interviews and informal discussions both in Khartoum and the Shāyqiyya region. All my informants, whose names are listed at the end of this study, are descendants of prominent holy men. I have, however, also interviewed many ordinary followers, including women, whose names do not appear in the list of informants. These secondary interviews were conducted in order to obtain a more generalized insight into the religious life of the region.

As to the form of the interviews, in most cases I put a question and let the informant answer without interruption; interviews were usually recorded. The same question was frequently directed to different informants in different localities. Most of the informants were willing

to and interested in sharing their information with me. For their adherents, the religious figures who founded or propagated the brotherhoods still have the greatest significance.

During my field-trip I was able to use conversations with informants to confirm and amplify a number of aspects noted briefly in the written sources. One example of this is information on the careers of some of the local representatives of the Khatmiyya in the Shāyqiyya region referred to in the *Kitāb al-ibāna*. Another example is the preaching of the Tijāniyya among the Shāyqiyya by a Mahdist *amīr*, Ahmād al-Huday al-Shāyqī al-Sawārabi, and his battles with the Governor of Dongola, Muṣṭafā Yāwar. Furthermore, my visit to the Naṣīfāb holy family of Abū Rannāt, who possess a large collection of nineteenth-century documents, enabled me to gain a better insight into their documents which give a clear picture of how the Khatmiyya functioned at the local level. They also throw light on the socio-economic status of members of the Naṣīfāb family who were (and still are) loyal adherents of the Khatmiyya.

### *The Literary Sources*

This category comprises first, the *Kitāb al-Tabaqāt* by Ibn Ḏayf Allāh, commonly known as Wad Ḏayf Allāh, a member of a religious family living at Ḥalfāyat al-Mulūk, north of Khartoum North. In the present study, the edition by Professor Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan has been used. Since this valuable source has been analysed by a number of scholars, their conclusions need not be repeated here.<sup>1</sup> It is, however, worth noting that Wad Ḏayf Allāh shows a certain bias in favour of Sufis against jurists. Although several studies of Islam in the Sudan have made use of the *Tabaqāt*, this rich source has still to be fully exploited.

Another major source for the present thesis is the *Kitāb al-ibāna al-nūriyya fī shā'n sāhib al-ṭariqa al-Khatmiyya*, *Khatm ahl al-ṣīrfa sayyidinā wa-ustādhinā al-sayyid Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī*.

The author of this indispensable source for any study of the Khatmiyya in the nineteenth century was Ahmād, known as Ibn Idrīs,

<sup>1</sup> See Ibn Ḏayf Allāh (1974), introduction by Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan; see also Hillelson (1923) 191-230, and Holt, "Traditional historical writing" (unpublished paper, 1969).

b. Muḥammad al-Naṣayḥ, a member of an old-established religious family at al-Dākhila, a section of Atbara town. He was a student and senior representative (*khalīfat al-khulafā*<sup>2</sup>) of Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, son of the founder of the order. Al-Naṣayḥ was also a poet and a Sufi writer. The structure, language and style of the *Kitāb al-ibāna* reflect its author's learning.

The original manuscript of the work was composed and completed in Sawākin on 2 Rajab 1307/22 February 1890. Sawākin was still under Egyptian control, while the rest of the Sudan was under Mahdist rule (1885-1898). Al-Naṣayḥ describes how he came to write the *Kitāb al-ibāna*:

Some Government administrators in the province [muḥāfaẓa] of Sawākin requested verbally, time and time again, information about the most noble *ustādh* and the most exalted refuge, *sayyid Muḥammad ʿUthmān*, the seal [*khatm*] of all the perfect saints, al-Makkī al-Mīrghānī, the founder of the Khatmiyya order and the channel of all knowledge that comes from God [al-*culūm al-laduniyya*]. The inquiry was about his personal affairs, his brotherhood, descendants and suchlike. Their [i.e. the Government administrators] request was answered by a concise account which did not satisfy them. The same request was made again through the *qādī al-Islām* in Sawākin province, our master Shaykh Ibrāhīm ʿAbd al-Samī'. The request was first put to the senior representative of the eminent teacher [i.e. al-Mīrghānī] in Sawākin, Muḥammad al-Ṣāfi ("the pure") who had been given that epithet by the said teacher. The request was then brought before our masters, the Mīrghānī [family], the descendants of *al-ustādh al-khatim*, who were in the port of Sawākin at that time, namely *al-sayyid ʿUthmān Tāj al-Sirr* b. Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim and *sayyid ʿAlī* b. Muḥammad ʿUthmān, the son of the *ustādh*, my master, *sayyid Muḥammad al-Ḥasan*. These, in addition to some *khalīfas*, agreed that an answer to the request should be made.<sup>2</sup>

The original manuscript was widely copied by the senior followers of the Khatmiyya. The author of the present study knows of several copies kept in private hands. There are, however, three versions preserved in NRO, Khartoum under Miscellaneous 1/62/1110, *idem* 1/63/1126 and *amānāt* 1/14/59. References in the present study are given to another version, originally discovered in Eritrea, of which a

2 Ahmad b. Idrīs b. al-Naṣayḥ, *Kitāb al-ibāna*. The passage cited here comes from the NRO ms., misc. 1/62/110, ff. 1-3 (the foliation of this ms. is inaccurate; f. 3 is numbered as f. 31).

copy has been deposited at the Department of History, University of Bergen.

Dr. Abū Salīm has published an analysis of the *Kitāb al-ibāna* based on the first two versions in the National Records Office.<sup>3</sup> He also intends to publish a critical edition of the same manuscript. This will be supplemented by a translation of the manuscript by Professor R.S. O'Fahey and myself.

The author of the *Kitāb al-ibāna* incorporated at the end some of the letters that Muḥammad ʿUthmān al-Mīrghānī had received from his teacher, Aḥmad b. Idrīs al-Fāṣī. Versions of the same letters, together with a number of others exchanged between Ibn Idrīs and some of his principal students, are available in Khartoum (NRO Misc. 1/22/247, and 1/81/1294) in a manuscript entitled *Majmūʿ jawābāt al-sāda al-izām*, which is incorporated into an anonymous biography of Ibn Idrīs entitled *Tarjamat al-ustādh al-aṣzam wa'l-malādh al-afkham ṣāḥib al-Iqd al-nafīs mawlāy al-Maghribī al-sharīf sayyidī al-sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*. Some of these letters have been edited by an Azharī scholar, Ṣāliḥ Muḥammad al-Jaṣfārī, and published at the end of a book entitled *Aṣṭār azhār aghṣān ḥażīrat al-taqdīs*, which is devoted mainly to the miracles of Ibn Idrīs.<sup>4</sup>

Another category of sources used in this study are the *manāqib* (lit. "virtues", hagiography) and *tarājim* (sing. *tarjama*, a type of biography). As Moriah notes,

The average *tardjamah* is not a biography in the European sense, nor is it a concise account of the *shaykh*'s life. Although it has some of the characteristics of a curriculum vitae, many important facts concerning the *shaykh*'s life are usually omitted.<sup>5</sup>

The *tarjama* usually retains some measure of objectivity in comparison with the *manāqib*, in its portrayal of its subject.

By contrast, the *manāqib* is much more hagiographical. The writers of these devotional accounts were not producing scientific biographies for the benefit of future historians, but works for the edification of their

3 Abū Salīm (1968), 36-43.

4 See al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 6-32. The texts and translations of all the extant letters of Ibn Idrīs will be published in *The Letters of Aḥmad ibn Idrīs*, ed. Einar Thomassen and Bernd Radtke (forthcoming).

5 G. Moriah, "The Social Structure of the Sufi Associations in Egypt in the 18th Century", Ph.D. thesis, University of London, 1963, 3.

contemporaries. Even in the case of the *Kitāb al-ibāna*, which may be considered as falling halfway between hagiography and biography there is a tendency to present a conventional picture of the holy men described, crediting them with the standard virtues and spiritual powers.

Common to all this devotional literature is the presentation of holy men as workers of miracles or *karāmāt* (sing. *karāma*), such as predicting the future, succouring in moments of distress, punishing those who oppose them, changing stones into silver and gold or resurrecting the dead; all acts establishing the sanctity (*wilāya*) of the holy men.

An adherent of a brotherhood would not question the validity of these *karāmāt*. This may be illustrated by the comment of the author of the *K. al-ibāna* on one of al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī's miracles:

We were astonished at what he said, although we did not doubt its veracity; for such things often happen to holy men and women and are recorded in their writings and works about miracles.

The ability of holy men to perform *karāmāt* was widely acknowledged by both Sufis and jurists.<sup>6</sup> The significance of *karāmāt* in Sudanese religious life may be seen in the definition of the stages of *wilāya* given by an eighteenth century Sudanese religious notable, Idrīs w. al-Arbāb:

There are three categories of saints, higher [*culya*], middle [*wuṣṭa*] and lower [*sughra*]. The lower entails that the saint can fly in the air, walk on the surface of the water, and has powers of clairvoyance. The middle is that God gives him creative powers [*al-daraja al-kawniyya*], which means that he says to a thing "Be" and it is, and this is the category to which my "son" Daf<sup>c</sup> Allāh<sup>7</sup> belongs. The highest degree is the *qutbāniyya*.<sup>8</sup>

The early Sufis were aware of the sensitivity of the issue of miracles. Several of them stated that a true saint should hide his supernatural deeds.<sup>9</sup> Furthermore, they distinguished between prophetic and saintly

6 Muḥammad b. Ḩabd al-Wahhāb is one example of a non-Sufi who recognized *karāmāt*; see, Ibn Ḥajar (1395/1975-6), 59.

7 He is referring to Daf<sup>c</sup> Allāh b. Muḥammad Abū Idrīs; see Ibn Ḥayf Allāh (1974), 206-7.

8 *Ibid.* 207.

9 One example of these early Sufis is al-Qushayrī. See Trimingham (1971), 26.

miracles by referring to the former as *mu'jizāt* (sing. *mu'jiza*, which is usually translated as "miracle") and the latter as *karāmāt*.<sup>10</sup>

Al-Kalābādhī (d. c.380/990) stated that a certain Sufi said,

The miracles accorded to the saints come to them they know not whence, whereas the prophets know [the origin] of the marvels, and speak in confirmation of them. This difference is due to the fact that with saints there is a danger that they may be tempted [by their miracles] as they are not divinely preserved, whereas with prophets, in view of the fact that they are under God's protection this danger does not exist.<sup>11</sup>

Ibn Idrīs al-Fāsī is another example of a Sufi and scholar who expressed his distaste for *karāmāt* and also for having them recorded by his students.

Righteousness [*al-istiqāma*] is the ultimate goal of the *karāma*, and we are, praise be to God, following the straight path which was followed by our example, the Messenger of God, may God's blessing and peace be upon him. As to these favours [sc. of God, i.e. miracles], they are like shadows that come and go. They are of no importance on the path to God except for those who are imperfect. For the perfect, his good fortune lies in having the Quran as his ethos [*khulquhu*], as had the Messenger of God, may God's blessing and peace be upon him.<sup>12</sup>

Muhammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī II used to remind his followers that man was only a vehicle for these *karāmāt* and that it was God who actually performed them. It was the students who compiled and interpreted the deeds of their spiritual masters as *karāmāt*. Despite Ibn Idrīs' distaste for *karāmāt*, some of his students (for example, Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd) collected some of them in a manuscript.<sup>13</sup>

The performance of *karāmāt* is closely associated with the belief that all holy men are possessors of *baraka* ("blessing", or "spiritual charisma"). This belief in its turn is linked to the claim by most holy men to Sharifian origin, that is descent from the Prophet Muhammad.

I am aware that other scholars may well interpret the *karāmāt* in an entirely different way from that of adherents of the brotherhoods. Nevertheless I have not presumed to pass judgement on the validity of

10 *Ibid.* 26.

11 Al-Kalābādhī (1400/1980), 89-90; the transl. is from Arberry (1935), 59-60.

12 *Tarjamat ... al-ustādh Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, ms., f. 11.

13 See al-Rashīd (1394/1974), 6-32.

such deeds, but rather have tried to present them as an integral part of the traditions and world-view of the orders under study.

The sources and bibliography are divided as follows:

- A. Oral Sources
- B. Written Sources

The latter are divided as follows:

- B. 1 Manuscripts and letters in private hands
- B. 2 Manuscripts in Public Collections
- B. 3 Archives
- B. 4 Theses, mimeographs, conference papers and forthcoming works
- B. 5 Arabic printed primary sources
- B. 6 European primary sources
- B. 7 Secondary literature

In a number of instances, manuscripts and other documents are listed under sections B.1 and 2 that have been consulted but not directly cited in the thesis.

Where the name of the author is unknown, the work is listed alphabetically under its title.

#### *A. Oral Sources<sup>14</sup>*

1. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Hamid Idris <sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh: Maqal, north of Karīma, 6.9.1982.
2. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān al-Rashīd, a descendant of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd: Duwaym wad Hājj, al-Rijayla, 1.9.1982.
3. Abū'l-<sup>c</sup>Abbās <sup>c</sup>Ali <sup>c</sup>Isā al-Aḥmādī, Dandarāwī *khalīfa*: Karīma, 15.9.1982.
4. *al-khalīfa* Aḥmad Muḥammad al-Amin Tāhā, a descendant of Shaykh Khōjalī: Khartoum North, 30.7.1982.
5. Aḥmad al-Ḥasan Aḥmad, a descendant of Muḥammad Ṣalīḥ al-Naṣīf: Abū Rannāt Island, 30.8.1982.
6. Aḥmad Muḥammad Khayr al-Tōm: al-Ghurayba, south of Kūrtī, 3 and 4.9.1982.
7. Aḥmad Muḥammad al-Ṣādiq al-Karūrī: Nūrī, 2.9.1982.

14 The interviews are referred to by their number in the footnotes.

8. Ahmād Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Amīn, *imām* of the mosque of al-Qurayr: al-Qurayr, 18.9.1982.
9. The late Dr. Ahmād ʻUthmān Ibrāhīm, a grandson of Shaykh Muḥammad w. Ibrāhīm of al-Arāk, north of Karīma: Department of History, Faculty of Education, University of Khartoum, 10.7.1982.
10. ʻAlī Muḥammad al-Shaykh Jiqaydī, a member of the Naḍīfāb family of Abū Rannāt Island, Kobar: Khartoum North, 5.10.1982.
11. ʻAwāḍ Muḥammad al-Darwīsh, a grandson of Shaykh Muḥammad al-Darwīsh: al-Zūma, north of Karīma, 9.9.1982.
12. Ḥasan ʻUthmān Ibrāhīm, a grandson of Shaykh Muḥammad w. Ibrāhīm of al-Arāk, 6 and 7.9.1982.
13. *al-khalīfa* al-Ḥibr al-Kabbāshī, a grandson of Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī: al-Kabbāshī village, north of Khartoum North, 17.10.1982.
14. Dr. Ibrāhīm Karsanī, a descendant of Wad al-Karsanī of the Shāyqiyya region, Faculty of Economics, University of Khartoum. The interview took place in Bergen, 10.11.1983.
15. *shaykh* Idrīs Muḥammad ʻAbd al-ʻAl al-Idrīsī, head of the Idrīsiyya ṭarīqa in the Sudan (d. 1982): Omdurman, May 1976.
16. Jaʻfar Sālim Diʻaymāwī: al-Jirayf, north of Nūrī, 27 and 29.9.1982.
17. al-Khaḍīr Ḥusayn al-Malik: Kūrtī, 5.9.1982.
18. Dr. al-Mikāshīfī Ṭāhā, a descendant of Shaykh Ibrāhīm w. al-Kabbāshī and editor of the latter's *Inshiqāq al-qamar*: hillat al-Kabbāshī, 27.10.1982.
19. *al-khalīfa* Muḥammad ʻAbd al-Ḥamīd al-ʻIrāqī: Nūrī, 26 to 29.8.1982 and 2.9.1982.
20. *ustādh* Muḥammad Ahmād ʻAbd al-Raḥmān al-Nāṭiq, a descendant of Shaykh Madanī al-Nāṭiq b. ʻAbd al-Raḥmān w. Ḥamadtū, 27.8.1982.
21. Muḥammad and Ahmād ʻUbayd Allāh Karr, the present (1982) *khalīfas* of the Qādiriyya ṭarīqa in Karīma: Karīma, 16.9.1982.
22. Muḥammad al-Tuhāmī al-Ḥasan, senior *khalīfa* of the Ahmadiyya Muḥammadiyya Idrīsiyya ṭarīqa: Khartoum, 18 and 28.11.1982.

23. *khalīfa* Sahal ʻAlī w. al-Tīkal: al-Zūma, north of Karīma, 8.9.1982.
24. Shaykh Sīd Aḥmad al-Rashīd Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ, a descendant of Shaykh Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd: Ḥalfāyat al-Mulūk, July 1977 (see *Karrār* (1977), 76).
25. Ṣiddīq Shaykh ʻAbd al-Rahmān, a descendant of ʻAbd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū: Nūrī, 12.9.1982.
26. *Letter*, dated 20.7.1984 from ʻAlī Muḥammad al-Shaykh Jiqaydī, a member of the Naḍīfāb clan of Abū Rannāt Island, presently (1982) living at Kobar in Khartoum North (see above no. 5).

## B. Written Sources

### B. 1. Manuscripts and Letters in Private Hands

1. al-Ahmadī, ʻAlī ʻIsā: *K. al-Īdāḥ li-ahl al-falāḥ*, ms. in the possession of the author's son and successor, Abū'l-ʻAbbās ʻAlī ʻIsā, at Karīma.
2. *Manāqib al-ḥājj ʻAbdullāhi al-Dufārī*, ms. in the possession of al-Dufārī's descendants at al-Sajjāna, Khartoum.
3. *Manāqib al-shaykh Aḥmad al-Jaʻalī*, ms. in the possession of al-Jaʻalī's descendants at al-Kadabās (see *Sudanow*, vii/3, March 1982, 38).
4. *Nasab al-Bīliyāb*, ms. in the possession of Muḥammad al-Ḥasan Sīd Aḥmad al-Bīlī, Khartoum.
5. *Nasab al-Ḥamadtūiyāb*, ms. in the possession of Ṣiddīq Shaykh, a descendant of ʻAbd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū, Nūrī.

### B. 2. Manuscripts in Public Collections

Abū Bakr b. Abū'l-Maʻalī: *Madīḥ*, in praise of *al-sayyid* Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghanī, Bergen NO 136. 6/11.

Abū Bakr w. al-Mut̄ārīq: *Madīḥ*, in praise of *al-sayyid* Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghanī, Bergen NO 137. 6/12.

Ibn al-Naṣayḥ, Aḥmad "b. Idrīs" b. Muḥammad: *al-Daʻawī al-munazzaha li-rūḥ al-nabī ... wa-ahl baytihi Sādatinā al-Marāghina*. Bergen, NO 158. 8/1.

- *Kitāb al-ibāna al-nūriyya fī sha'�n ṣāḥib al-ṭarīqa al-Khatmiyya*. NRO, misc., 1/63/1126; NRO, *Amānāt*, 1/14/59, and Bergen, accession number 240. Cited as *Kitāb al-ibāna*. Unless otherwise specified, references are given to the Bergen version; see Abū Salīm (1968), 36-44 for an analysis of the two NRO mss.
- *Manāqib al-sayyid Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī*. NRO, misc., 1/64/1159.

*K. fī dhikrat al-sayyid Ghulām Allāh wa-dhikrat Awlād Jābir wa-dhikrat al-Sāda al-Rikābiyya wa-man tanasal minhum*. NRO, misc., 1/18/208.

*Majmū' jawābāt al-sāda al-ṣīzām*, incorporated in *Tarjamat al-ustādh Aḥmad b. Idrīs*. NRO, misc., 1/81/1294.

*Makhtūt ta'rikh dūkhūl al-ṭarā'iq li'l-Sūdān*. NRO, Intel., 2/32/261.

*Manāqib wa-karāmāt sayyidi al-shaykh Ibrāhīm al-Rashīdī, tilmīdh wa-khalīfat al-sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*. NRO, misc., 1/15/179.

*Manāqib al-sayyid al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī*. Bergen, NO 171. 11/1.

*al-Mīrghānī, Ja'far al-Ṣādiq b. Muḥammad ḫUthmān: Lu'lu'at al-huṣn al-sāti'a fī ba'ḍ manāqib dhī 'l-asrār al-lāmi'a wa'l-fuyudāt al-wahbiyya al-nāfi'a sayyidi Muḥammad ḫUthmān al-Mīrghānī*. Bergen, accession number 258.

*Mukhtaṣar manāqib al-sayyid Muḥammad al-Majdhūb*. NRO, misc., 1/67/1188 and 1/82/1315. There are several published versions: Cairo, n.d.; Cairo, 1319/1901-2, and Khartoum, n.d.

*Nasab al-Naḍīfāb*. Bergen, NO 130. 6/5.

*Nisbat al-Duwayhiyya*. Bergen, NO 152. 7/8.

*Nisbat al-shaykh ḫAbd al-ṣArākī*. NRO, misc., 1/15/83 [copy, Bergen]. *Ṣādiq ḫAbd al-Maḥmūd: Qaṣīda*, in response to a letter from Shaykh al-Daqlāshī. Completed 12 Dhu'l-Qaḍā 1249/23 March 1834. Bergen, NO 127. 6/2.

*Sanad, Ismā'īl b. ḫAbd Allāh (al-Walī)*. Bergen, KH 322. 15/29.

*Sanad wa-ijāza kubrā, al-ṭarīqa al-Khatmiyya*. 28 Rabī' II 1310/19 November 1892. NRO, misc., 1/22/248.

*Sanad al-ṭarīqa al-Aḥmadiyya al-Muḥammadiyya*. Bergen, KH 228. 12/3.

*Sanad al-ṭarīqa al-Khatmiyya*. Bergen, NO 126. 6/1.

*Sanad ḫariqāt ... al-sayyid Muḥammad ḫUthmān al-Mīrghānī*. Bergen, NO 128. 6/3.

*Shurūt al-ṭarīqa al-Tijāniyya*. NRO, misc., 1/22/246.

*Ta'rikh al-khulafā' (of al-Ghurayba)*. Bergen, NO 169. 9/3.

*Tarjamāt al-sayyid Muḥammad ʿUthmān al-Mīrghānī*. NRO, misc., 1/63/1126.

*Tarjamāt al-ustādh Aḥmad b. Idrīs*. NRO, misc., 1/81/1294.

al-Tuhāmī, Muḥammad al-Ḥasan: *R. al-Dīn al-naṣīḥa aw al-Nūr al-ṣāti*<sup>c</sup> *wa'l-hiṣām al-qāti*<sup>c</sup>. Completed 20 Rabī<sup>c</sup> II 1294/12 May 1874. Bergen, accession number 237.

al-Walī, Ismāʻil b. ʿAbd Allāh: *Sanad*. Bergen, KH 322. 15/29.

--- *K. al-`uhūd al-wāfiyya al-jaliyya fī kayfiyyat ḥifat al-ṭariqa al-Ismāʻiliyya*. NRO, misc., 1/82/1319.

### B. 3. Archives

a. *Bergen: Photographic Collection, Department of History, University of Bergen, Norway*

#### a. 1. Northern Province (NO)

The following item was photographed by the author at Abū Rannāt Island, 1982:

NO 139. 6/14 *Ijāza*; from Muḥammad b. al-faqīh Ibrāhīm, *nasl al-ḥājj* ʿAmāra, for his son, Ibrāhīm, that he has completed the memorization of the Quran. Rajab 1160/July-August 1747.

The following items were photographed at Duwaym wad Ḥājj, 1982:

NO 145. 7/1 *Waṣfa*; for the cure of semi-paralysis or hemiplegia (*fālij*). Undated.

NO 146. 7/2 *Waṣfa*; for the cure of wind (*rīḥ*). Undated.

NO 147. 7/3 *Waṣfa*; for the cure of migraine (*shaqīqa*). Undated.

NO 155. 7/11 Letter from the Duwayḥiyya of Duwaym Wad Ḥājj to al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Rashīd in Mecca; 21 Ṣafar 1329/21 February 1911.

The following item was photographed by the author in Nūrī, 1982:

NO 163. 8/6 Letter from Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, to the Ḥamadṭūiyāb of Nūrī. 10 Rabī<sup>c</sup> I 1283/23 July 1866.

The following item was photographed by the author at al-Ghurayba, 1982:

NO 167. 9/1 Letter from Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, to the people of al-Ghurayba. Dhū'l-Ḥijja 1272/August-September 1856.

a. 2. Nile Province (NI)

The following items were photographed by Dr. Anders Bjørkelo in al-Matamma, 1980:

NI 298. 15/26 a+b Lithographed appeal from Muḥammad *sīr al-khatim* al-Mīrghānī to ʻAbd Allāh Ḥamza and his brothers to support the Turco-Egyptian regime. Signed. 8 Dhū'l-Qaḍā 1302/27 November 1885.

NI 369. 15/97 Letter from Ja᷇far b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī to Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. 10 Rabi᷇ II 1272/20 December 1855.

b. Cairo: Egyptian National Archives (ENA).

Case no. 265 copy of an Arabic dispatch, *ḥamrā*, no. 154. Letter from Ismāʻil b. ʻAbd Allāh al-Walī. 4 Dhū'l-Ḥijja 1254/18 February 1838. (ʻAbd al-Majīd [1949], ii, 19).

*daftar*, no. 1282 șādir ʻarḍuḥālāt turkī. Dispatch from *nāzir al-dākhliyya* to *kātib al-dīwān al-khidawīyya*. 16 Rajab 1286/22 October 1869. (ʻAbd al-Majīd [1949], iii, 176).

*daftar*, no. 1864 *ma᷇iyya*, p. 23. From the *mudīriyya* of Dongola to *al-ma᷇iyya al-saniyya*. 19 Rajab 1289/22 September 1872. (ʻAbd al-Majīd [1949], iii, 184).

*daftar*, no. 1886 *Awāmir ʻArabī*, p. 16. A noble order from Cairo to the province of Kordofan concerning al-Walī, his sons and students. 13 Shawwāl 1273/8 June 1856.

*ma᷇iyya turkī*, case *Hā*/2, p. 42 (old number, case 46). A letter from Ja᷇far Pasha Mazhar to the Khedive Ismāʻil concerning a monthly subvention to the sons of al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī. 8 Ramaḍān 1268/12 December 1869. (ʻAbd al-Majīd [1949], iii, 178).

*sijill* (formerly *daftar*), no. 583, p. 16, doc. no. 12, 21 Sha᷇bān 1286/26 November 1869. *Irāda* to *nāzir al-dākhliyya*. (ʻAbd al-Majīd [1949], iii, 172).

c. *Sudan Archive, School of Oriental Studies, University of Durham, England (SAD)*

SAD 195/7/2 The Magzub Tarika in the Sudan, by Naum Shukeir (Na‘ūm Shuqayr); see NRO, Intel., 2/32/263.

d. *National Records Office, Khartoum (NRO)*

Departmental Reports 11/1/4, C.A. Willis, “The Religious Confraternities”. A shortened version of this report was published as Willis (1921), 175-94.

Intelligence (Intel.) 2/32/261, English title, “A general note on Tarikas in the Sudan”; contains Ar. ms. *Makḥṭūṭ ta’rīkh dūkhūl al-ṭarā’iq li’l-Sūdān*.

Intel. 2/32/262 H.A. MacMichael, “Notes on the Tijania Tarika”.

Intel. 2/32/263 “The Magzub Tarika in the Sudan (Na‘ūm Shuqayr)”; see SAD 195/7/2.

Intel., 2/32/266 “The Kadria Tarika-Dongola.”

Intel., 2/32/270 “Tarikas in the Sudan.”

Intel., 6/7/22 “A short history of the Idrisia Tarika and its connection with Senussia.”

Kassala, 2/124/523 “Religion- Tarikas.”

Northern Province, 1/19/127 “Abu el-Hasan Abd el-Mutaal”.

Northern Province, 1/25/259 “The Idrisia Tarika.”

Northern Province, 1/25/263 “Religion-Tarigas”.

Majmū‘at Abī Salīm, 7/1/10, Abū Salīm, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm, *al-Tā’ifiyya fī’l-Sūdān*, typescript.

Miscellaneous (Misc.) 1/27/361 to 1/27/468 constitute an archive of 107 nineteenth-century legal and private documents concerning the affairs of the Naḍīfāb family of Abū Rannāt Island.

Misc. 1/27/371 Letter from Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, to various members of the Naḍīfāb community; undated.

Misc. 1/27/374 Letter from Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naḍīf and his sons to al-Ḥasan b. *al-khalīfa al-Tuhāmī Bān al-Naqā*. 21 Rabī‘ I 1283/3 August 1866.

Misc. 1/27/376 Letter from *al-ḥājj* Muḥammad b. Wah... to *al-khalīfa* Muḥammad b. al-Ṣādiq; undated.

Misc. 1/27/381 Marriage contract (*şadāq*) for Fātīma bt. Muḥammad b. ʻAbd al-Ḥamīd, from her husband, Ḥājj Ḥasan b. ʻAwḍa. 1269/1852-3.

Misc. 1/27/383 Endowment (*waqf*) of land by *faqīh* Ibrāhīm b. *al-ḥājj* Muḥammad, for his sons and their issue. Undated; incomplete.

Misc. 1/27/386 Letter to Muḥammad Āghā, *ḥākim khutṭ al-Šāyqiyya*, 1298/1880-1.

Misc. 1/27/392 Letter from Aḥmad Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-ʻIrāqī to *khalīfa* [Aḥmad] Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naḍīf and others. 24 Rajab 1321/16 October 1903.

Misc. 1/27/396 Letter from ʻAbd Allāh Maḥjūb al-Mīrghānī to *khalīfa* Muḥammad ʻAlī al-Naḍīf. 29 Dhū'l-Qaḍā 1324/14 January 1907.

Misc. 1/27/413 r. & v. Settlement of a dispute concerning the inheritance of the property of Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naḍīf. 26 Jumādā I 1291/11 July 1874.

Misc. 1/27/314 Marriage contract (*şadāq*) for Fātīma bt. Ḥamad b. Muḥammad, from her husband, Muḥammad b. Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naḍīf. 10 Rabī‘ I 1279/5 September 1862.

Misc. 1/27/460 *Sulh*, concerning the appointment of Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Naḍīf as *khalīfa* of the Naḍīfāb. 4 Muḥarram 1265/30 November 1848.

#### B. 4 Theses, Mimeographs, Conference Papers and Forthcoming Works

ʻAbd Allāh, Muḥammad Saʻīd Aḥmad, “*Min taʼrīkh manṭaqā Dunqulā*”, mimeograph, Khartoum, 1978.

ʻAbd al-Raḥmān, Kamāl Bābīkr, “*al-Ṭariqa al-Sammāniyya fī'l-Sūdān*”, BA Honours dissertation, University of Khartoum, 1976.

ʻAbd al-Sīd, Antūnī Sūriyāl, “*Juhūd Miṣr al-thaqāfiyya fī'l-Sūdān, 1820-1879*”, MA thesis, Department of History, Centre of African Studies, University of Cairo, 1972.

Abū Salīm, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm, “*al-Murshīd ilā wathāʼiq al-Mahdī*”, mimeograph, Khartoum: NRO, 1969.

--- “*Dawr al-ʻulāmā' fī nashr al-Islām fī'l-Sūdān*”, Conference paper, Khartoum, 27-30 November 1982.

--- “*Mafhūm al-khilāfa wa'l-imāma fī'l-Mahdiyya*”, Khartoum, n.d.

Badri, Yusuf, “A Survey of Islamic Learning in the Funj State, 1505-1820 AD.”, B. Litt. thesis, Oxford University, 1970.

al-Fātih, Soʻad, “The Teachings of Muḥammad Ahmad, the Sudanese Mahdi”, MA thesis, University of London, 1961.

al-Ḥājj, al-Muṭaṣim Aḥmad, “*al-Khalāwī fī'l-Sūdān, nuẓumuḥā wa-rusūmuḥā ḥattā nihāyat al-qarn al-tāsi‘ ‘ashar*”, MA thesis, Omdurman Islamic University, 1982.

El-Hassan, Idrīs Sālim, “On Ideology. The Case of Religion in Northern Sudan”, Ph.D. thesis, University of Connecticut, 1980.

Holt, P.M., “Traditional historical writing of the Nilotc Sudan”, Paper presented to the seminar, “Islamic influences on the literary cultures of Africa”, School of Oriental and African Studies, London, January 1969.

Ibrahim, Mahmoud Abdalla, “The history of the Ismā‘iliyya Ṭarīqa in the Sudan: 1792-1914”, Ph.D. thesis, University of London, 1980.

Ibrāhīm Yaḥyā Muḥammad, “*al-Ta‘alīm al-dīnī fī'l-Sūdān*”, MA thesis, University of Cairo, Khartoum Branch, 1978.

al-Idrīsī, Ibn Idrīs al-Ḥasan, “*al-Haraka al-Sanūsiyya wa-atharuhā al-thaqāfi fī shamāl Ifrīqiyya*”, MA thesis, University of Cairo, 1976.

Karrār, ‘Alī Ṣāliḥ, “*Athar al-ta‘alīm al-Idrīsiyya fī'l-ṭuruq al-ṣūfiyya fī'l-Sūdān*”, MA thesis, Institute of African and Asian Studies, University of Khartoum, 1977.

*The Letters of Aḥmad ibn Idrīs*, ed. Einar Thomassen and Bernd Radtke (forthcoming).

Lobban, R.A., “Social Networks in the Urban Sudan”, Ph.D. thesis, Northwestern University, 1973.

McHugh, N., “Holymen of the Blue Nile: Religious leadership and the genesis of an Arab Islamic society in the Nilotc Sudan, 1500-1850”, Ph.D. thesis, Northwestern University, 1986.

Moriah, G., “The Social Structure of the Sufi Associations in Egypt in the 18th Century”, Ph.D. thesis, University of London, 1963.

Mustafa, Awad al-Sid al-Saied, “The Majdhubiyya Ṭarīqa: its Doctrine, Organization and Politics”, M.Sc. thesis, University of Khartoum, 1977.

O’Fahey, R.S., “A colonial servant. Al-Salāwī and the Sudan”, *Der Islam* (forthcoming).

Osman, Abdullahi Mohamed, “The Mikashfiyya: a study of a Religious Ṭarīqa in the Sudan”, MA thesis, University of Khartoum, 1978.

Osman, Khadiga Karrar, “Aspects of Sufism in the Sudan”, MA thesis, University of Durham, 1975.

Qarīb Allāh, Ḥasan Muḥammad al-Fātiḥ, “*al-Taṣawwuf fī'l-Sūdān ilā nihāyat ‘aṣr al-Funj*”, MA thesis, University of Khartoum, 1965.

Al-Shahi, Ahmed, “An Anthropological Study of a Sudanese Shaigiyya Village”, Ph.D. thesis, Oxford University, 1971.

Spaulding, J.L., "Kings of Sun and Shadow: a History of the 'Abdallāb Provinces of the Northern Sinnār Sultanate, 1500-1800 AD.", Ph.D. thesis, Columbia University, 1971.

Ṭāhā, Muṣṭafā Ibrāhīm, "al-Adab al-sha'bi 'inda 'l-Shāyqiyya", MA thesis, University of Khartoum, 1967.

El Tom, Abdullahi Osman, "Religious men and literacy in Berti society", Ph.D. thesis, St. Andrews University, 1983.

Voll, J.O., "A History of the Khatmiyya Tariqah in the Sudan", Ph.D. thesis, Harvard University, 1969.

### B. 5. Arabic Printed Primary Sources

This section includes works of a primary or quasi-primary nature, and works of reference.

#### a) General

al-Ā'lām, al-Ziriklī, Khayr al-Dīn n.d. (c. 1979), *al-Ā'lām Qāmūs tarājim li-ashhar al-rijāl wa 'l-nisā' min al-ṣarab wa 'l-musta'ribīn wa 'l-mustashriqīn*, 12 vols., n.p. (Beirut?).

al-Ghazālī, Abū 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad (1967), *Tuhfat al-nuzzār fī gharā'ib al-amṣār wa-ṣajā'ib al-ASFĀR*, Cairo.

--- *Iḥyā' ṣu'lūm al-dīn* (n.d.); Cairo.

Ibn Baṭṭūṭa, Abū 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad (n.d.), *Tuhfat al-nuzzār fī gharā'ib al-amṣār wa-ṣajā'ib al-ASFĀR*, Cairo.

Ibn Khaldūn, 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad (1958), *al-ṣIbar wa-dīwān al-mubtadā' wa 'l-Khabar*, 7 vols., Beirut.

al-Jabartī, 'Abd al-Rahmān (n.d.), *Ta'rikh ṣajā'ib al-athār fī 'l-tarājim wa 'l-akhbār*, 3 vols., Beirut.

Kahhāla, 'Umar Riḍā (1957-61), *Mu'jam al-mu'allifīn, tarājim muṣannifī al-kutub al-ṣarabiyya*, 15 vols., Damascus.

al-Kalābādhī, Abū Bakr Muḥammad (1400/1980), *al-Ta'arruf li-madhab ahl al-taṣawwuf*, Cairo.

al-Nabhānī, Yūsuf b. Ismā'īl (n.d.), *Jāmi' karāmāt al-awliyā'*, 2 vols., Cairo.

al-Shādhilī, al-Ḥasan b. al-ḥājj Muḥammad (1347/1928-9), *K. Ṭabaqāt al-Shādhiliyya al-kubrā al-musannī Jāmi' al-karāmāt al-ṣalīyya fi ṭabaqāt al-sādāt al-Shādhiliyya*, Cairo.

b) Works relating to the ṭariqas or to the Sudan

‘Abd al-Karīm, ‘Aydarūs (n.d.), *Manāqib al-quṭb al-ḥājj ‘Abd Allāh al-Dufārī*, n.p.

‘Abd al-Mutā‘al, Shams al-Dīn (1358/1939), *Kanz al-sa‘ād wa’l-rashād*, pp. 9-10 contain a biography of Aḥmad b. Idrīs. Khartoum.

‘Abd al-Rahīm, Muḥammad (1953), *al-Nidā’ fī daf‘ al-iftirā’*, Cairo.

‘Abd al-Rahmān, Yūsuf al-Khalīfa (n.d.), *al-Jawwāb al-kāfi fī’l-ijāba ‘an asī’la fuhūm al-muslimīn ‘āmmatan wa-ahl al-ṭuruq al-ṣūfiyya khāṣṣatan*, Cairo.

Abū Salīm, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm, ed. (1969a), *Manshūrāt al-Mahdiyya*, Beirut.

--- ed. (1974), *Mudhakkirāt ‘Uthmān Dīqna*, Khartoum.

al-Aḥmadī, Kāmil Muḥammad Ḥasan (n.d.), *Dumū‘ al-wafā’ ‘alā imām al-aṣfiyā’ [al-sayyid Muḥammad al-Sharīf b. ‘Abd al-Mutā‘al al-Idrīsī]*, Khartoum.

Badr, Muḥammad b. Aḥmad al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd (1920), *K. sirāj al-sālikīn al-ma’khūdh min kalām al-Shaykh Muḥammad b. Aḥmad Badr al-mashhūr bi’l-‘Ubayd, wa-qad rattabahu tilmīdhuhu Aḥmad b. Ibrāhīm al-Jibayl*. Published together with Muḥammad b. al-ḥājj Nūr, *Kitāb miftāḥ al-baṣā’ir*. Cairo.

al-Bashīr, ‘Abd Allāh al-Shaykh, ed. (1976), *Dīwān al-shā‘ir al-ṣūfi, Wad Nafīsa*, Khartoum.

al-Bayyādī, ‘Umar ‘Abd al-Azīz (1979), *Nasab al-sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*. Al-Zayniyya/al-Uqṣur: published privately by the sons of al-sayyid Muṣṭafā b. ‘Abd al-‘Al al-Idrīsī.

al-Fahl, al-Fakī al-Ṭāhir (n.d.), *Ta’rīkh wa-uṣūl al-‘Arab bi’l-Sūdān*, Khartoum.

al-Hajrasī, Muḥamma Khalīl (1314/1915-6), *al-Qaṣr al-muṣhīd fi’l-tawḥīd wa-fī ṭarīqa sayyidi Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd*, Cairo.

Ibn al-Bashīr, Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib (1955), *al-Hikam al-musammā bi’l-Nafas al-rahmānī fī’l-ṭawr al-insānī*. Cairo: M. al-Miṣrī.

Ibn Ḍayf Allāh, Muḥammad al-Nūr (1974), *K. al-ṭabaqāt fī khuṣūṣ al-awliyā’ wa’l-ṣāliḥīn wa’l-‘ulamā’ wa’l-shu‘arā’ fī’l-Sūdān*, ed. Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan, 2nd edn, Khartoum.

Ibn Idrīs, Aḥmad (1372/1953), *al-‘Iqd al-nafīs fī naẓm jawāhir al-tadrīs ... al-sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, Cairo. A compilation by an Indian scholar, Ismā‘īl al-Nawwāb, based on Ibn Idrīs’ lectures as recounted

by one of his Sudanese students, *Abū'l-Ma'ālī 'Abd Allāh al-Mawārī*. *al-īqd* contains a brief biography (pp. 3-6).

--- (1359/1940), *Majmū'at awrād aḥzāb wa-rasā'il*, Cairo.

Ibrāhīm, Aḥmad ʻUthmān (1965), *Min ash-ār al-Shāyqiyya*, Khartoum.

al-Kabbāshī, Ibrāhīm (1971), *Inshiqāq al-qamar li'l-rasūl sayyid al-bashar*, ed. al-Mikāshfī Ṭāhā al-Shaykh Muḥammad ʻAlī, Khartoum.

al-Lībī, ʻAbd al-Malik b. ʻAbd al-Qādir b. ʻAlī (1966), *al-Fawā'id al-jaliyya fī ta'rīkh al-ā'ilā al-Sanūsiyya al-ḥākima fī Libīyā*. Damascus, Dār al-jazā'ir al-ʻArabiyya.

al-Madanī, Ṣāliḥ b. al-ḥājj Muḥammad b. Ṣāliḥ al-Ja'farī (1380/1960), *al-Muntaqā al-nafīs fī manāqib quṭb dā'ira al-taqdīs sayyidinā wa-mawlānā al-Sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, Cairo.

*Majmū'at al-nafāḥāt al-rabbāniyya al-mushtamila ʻalā sab'a rasā'il Mīrghaniyya* (1370/1950), Cairo.

*Makhtūṭa Kātib al-Shūna fī ta'rīkh al-salṭana al-Sinnāriyya wa'l-idāra al-Miṣriyya* n.d. (1963), ed. al-Shāṭir Buṣaylī ʻAbd al-Jalīl, Cairo.

*Manāqib al-sayyid ʻAlī al-Mīrghānī*, Khartoum, 1390/1970.

al-Mīrghānī, Ja'far al-Ṣādiq b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān (1936), *Dīwān Riyāḍ madiḥ wa-jalā' kull dhī wudd ṣahīḥ wa-shifā' kull qalb jarīḥ fī madh al-nabī al-malīḥ*, Cairo.

al-Mīrghānī, Muḥammad ʻUthmān, *al-Faṭḥ al-mabrūk fī kathīr min ādāb al-sulūk*, in *al-Rasā'il al-Mīrghaniyya*, 37-46.

--- *al-Hibāt al-muqtabasa li-iżhār al-masā'il al-khamṣa*, in *al-Rasā'il al-Mīrghaniyya*, 19-36.

--- (1358/1939), *Majmū' al-awrād al-kabīr*, Cairo.

--- (1367/1948), *Majmū' fath al-rasūl*, Cairo

--- (1391/1971), *Manāqib ... al-Sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, Wad Madanī.

--- (1350/1931), *Mawlid al-nabī al-musammā al-asrār al-rabbāniyya*, Cairo.

--- *Minwāl al-ṭāriqa al-ṭāhira al-nūrāniyya*, in *al-Rasā'il al-Mīrghaniyya*, 93-96.

--- *al-Nūr al-barrāq fī madh al-nabī al-miṣdāq*, several editions.

--- (1375/1955-6), *Tāj al-tafāsīr li-kalām al-malik al-kabīr*, also called *Khitān al-tafāsīr*, ed. al-ḥājj ʻAbd al-Salām b. Muḥammad b. Shaqrūn, 2 vols., Cairo.

--- *al-Zuhūr al-fā'iqa fī ḥuqūq al-ṭāriqa al-ṣādiqa*, in *al-Rasā'il al-Mīrghaniyya*, 47-54.

al-Mīrghānī, Muḥammad ʻUthmān b. ʻAlī, Interview in, *Majallat al-faṭḥ*, Ramadān 1402/June-July 1982, no. 1. Journal published by

*Jamā'at fatḥ al-rasūl* of the mosque of al-sayyid Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, Khartoum North.

Nūr al-Dā'im, Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī (1954), *Azāhīr al-riyād fī manāqib al-ṣāḥib bi-llāh al-shaykh Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib*, Khartoum.

--- (1955), *al-‘Urf al-fā’ih wa’l-ṣiyā’ al-lā’ih fī manāqib al-quṭb al-rājiḥ wa’l-ghawth al-wādiḥ sayyidī al-ustādh al-shaykh Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib b. al-Bashīr*, Omdurman.

*al-Rasā’il al-Mīrghāniyya* (1399/1979), *al-Rasā’il al-Mīrghāniyya ... fī ādāb al-ṭariqa al-Khatmiyya*, Cairo.

al-Rashīd, Ibrāhīm (1394/1974), *Aṣṭār azhār aghsān hazīrat al-taqdīs fī karāmāt ... al-sayyid Aḥmad b. Idrīs*, Cairo.

al-Raṭbī, Aḥmad b. Ḥasan al-Rahmān, *Minḥat al-ashāb li-man arāda sulūk ṭariq al-aspīyā’ wa’l-ahbāb*, in *al-Rasā’il al-Mīrghāniyya*, 61-86.

al-Sanūsī, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan (1968), *al-Manhal al-rā’iq fī asānid al-‘ulūm wa-uṣūl al-ṭarā’iq*, n.p.

al-Sarrāj, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan (1374/1955), *al-Manāhij al-‘āliyya fī tarājim al-sāda al-Mīrghāniyya*, Khartoum.

Shuqayr, Naṣūm (1903), *Ta’rīkh al-Sūdān al-qadīm wa’l-hadīth wa-jughrāfiyatuhu*, 3 vols., Cairo.

*Ta’rīkh mulūk al-Sūdān*, ed. Makkī Shībāyka. Khartoum 1947.

*Tarjamat al-‘allāma al-sayyid Aḥmad ibn Idrīs* (1315/1897-8), n.p.

al-Tijānī, Muḥammad al-Sayyid (n.d.), *Ghāyat al-amānī fī manāqib wa-karāmāt ashāb al-shaykh sayyidī Aḥmad al-Tijānī*, Cairo.

al-Waṭānī, Zaghlūl Muḥammad (1953), *Abṭāl al-Khatmiyya*, vol. i (all published), Cairo.

## B. 6. European Primary Sources

Budge, E.A.W. (1907), *The Egyptian Sudan*, 2 vols, London.

Burckhardt, J.L. (1822), *Travels in Nubia*, London.

English, G.B. (1822), *A Narrative of the Expedition to Dongola and Senaar*, London.

Hoskins, G.A. (1835), *Travels in Ethiopia*, London.

Krump, T. (1710), *Hoher und Fruchtbarer Palm-Baum des Heiligen Evangelij*, Augsburg, unpublished English translation by J.L. Spaulding; copy in the possession of R.S. O’Fahey.

Le Châtelier, A. (1887), *Les Confréries musulmanes du Hedjaz*, Paris.

Slatin, R.C. (1896), *Fire and Sword in the Sudan*, London.

Wingate, F.R. (1968), *Mahdiism and the Egyptian Sudan*, 2nd edn, London.  
 --- (1982), *Ten Years' Captivity in the Mahdi's Camp, 1882-1892, from the original manuscript of Father Joseph Ohrwalder*, London.

### B. 7. Secondary Literature

◦ Abd al-Jalīl, al-Shāṭir Buṣaylī (1955), *Maṣālim taṣrīkh Sūdān Wādī'l-Nīl*, Cairo.

◦ Abd al-Majīd, ◦ Abd al-◦ Azīz Amīn (1949), *al-Tarbiyya fī'l-Sūdān wa'l-usus al-nafsiyya wa'l-ijsimā'iyya allatī qāmat 'alayhā min awwal al-qarn al-sādis 'ashar ilā nihāyat al-qarn al-thāmin 'ashar*, 3 vols., Cairo.

◦ Abd al-Rahīm, ◦ Abd al-Rahīm ◦ Abd al-Rahmān (1979), *Min taṣrīkh shibh al-jazīra al-◦ Arabiyā fī'l-◦ aṣr al-ḥadīth*, vol. 1. *al-Dawla al-Sa'ūdiyya al-ūlā*, 1158-1233/1745-1818, Cairo.

◦ Abd al-Rahīm, Muḥammad (1952), *Al-Nidā' fī daf' al-iftirā'*, Cairo.

◦ Ābdin, ◦ Abd al-Majīd (1967), *Taṣrīkh al-thaqāfa al-◦ Arabiyā fī'l-Sūdān*, 2nd edn, Beirut.

Abū Salīm, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm (1968), "Makhtūṭ fī taṣrīkh mu'assis al-Khatmiyya", *MDS*, 36-43.  
 --- (1969b), "Ijāza Sammāniyya", *MDS*, 30-44.  
 --- (1970), *al-Haraka al-fikriyya fī'l-Mahdiyya*, Khartoum.  
 --- (1980), *al-Sāqiya*, Khartoum.

Abun-Nasr, J.M. (1965), *The Tijaniyya. A Sufi Order in the Modern World*, London.

Adams, W.Y. (1977), *Nubia. Corridor to Africa*, Princeton.

◦ Alī, al-◦ Tāhir M. (1970), *al-Ādāb al-ṣūfī fī'l-Sūdān*, Khartoum.

◦ Amār, ◦ Alī Sālim (1951), *Abū'l-Hasan al-Shādhilī*, Cairo.

al-Amawī, Muḥammad ◦ Uthmān (1963), "Dhikrā al-Sayyid al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī", *Şawt al-Sūdān*, 8 February 1963.

al-Amīn, ◦ Izz al-Dīn (1395/1975), *Qariyat Kutrānj wa-āthāruhā al-◦ ilmī fī'l-Sūdān*, Khartoum.

Arberry, A.J. transl. (1935), *The Doctrines of the Sūfis* (transl. of al-Kalābādhī, *K. al-Ta'arruf li-madhab ahl al-taṣawwuf*), Cambridge.  
 --- (1950), *Sufism*, London.

Arkell, A.J. (1932), "Fung origins", *SNR*, xv/2, 201-50.

Arnold, T.W. (1913), *The Preaching of Islam. A History of the propagation of the Muslim faith*, 2nd edn, London.

al-‘Awād, ‘Awād ‘Abd al-Hādī (1971), “al-Shāyqiyya: ta‘rīkhuhum wa-thaqāfatuhum ḥattā al-faṭḥ al-Turkī”, *MDS*, 5-36.

al-Bakrī, Muḥammad Tawfiq (1323/1905-6), *Bayt al-Ṣiddīq*, Cairo.

Barbour, K.N. (1961), *The Republic of the Sudan: A Regional Geography*, London.

Barclay, H.B. (1964), *Buuri al Lainaab*, Ithaca.

Bashīr, Bashīr Ibrāhīm (1979), “‘Aydhāb, ḥayātuhā al-dīniyya wa’l-adabiyya”, *MDS*, 54-84.

Beshir, Mohammed Omer (1969), *Educational Development in the Sudan, 1898-1956*, Oxford.

al-Bīlī, Ahmād (1974), *al-Ta‘līm fī'l-khalwa fī'l-Sūdān*, Khartoum.

Bjørkelo, A. (1989), *Prelude to the Mahdiyya. Peasants and Traders in the Shendi Region, 1821-1885*, Cambridge.

Brett, M. ed. (1973), *Northern Africa: Islam and Modernization*, London.

Brockelmann, C. “al-Bakrī, Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān”, *EP<sup>2</sup>*, i, 965.

Cornell, V.J. (1983), “The logic of analogy and the role of the Sufi Shaykh in post-Marinid Morocco”, *LIMES*, xv, 67-93.

Crawford, O.G.S. (1951), *The Fung Kingdom of Sennar*, Gloucester.

Crowfoot, J.W. (1922), “Wedding customs in the northern Sudan”, *SNR*, v, 1-28.

Douin, G. (1936), *Histoire du Règne du khédive Ismaïl*. Tome III (four parts): *L’Empire Africain*, Cairo.

--- (1944), *Histoire du Soudan Egyptien*, vol. i (all published), Cairo.

Dwyer, K. (1982), *Moroccan Dialogues. Anthropology in Question*, London.

Eickelman, D. (1978), “The art of memory: Islamic education and its social reproduction”, *Comparative Studies in Society and History*, xx/4, 485-516.

--- (1981), *The Middle East. An Anthropological Approach*, New York.

Eustache, D. “Idris I”, *EP<sup>2</sup>*, iii, 1031.

--- “Idrisids”, *EP<sup>2</sup>*, iii, 1035-7.

Evans-Pritchard, E.E. (1949), *The Sanusi of Cyrenaica*, Oxford.

Farah, C.E. (1972), “Social implications of a Sufi disciple’s etiquette”, in *Proceedings, VIth Congress of Arabic and Islamic Studies*, ed. F. Rundgren, Uppsala/Leiden, pp. 45-57.

Fleming, G.J. (1922), “Kasala”, *SNR*, v, 65-77.

Gardet, L. “Dhikr”, *EP<sup>2</sup>*, ii, 223-7.

Geertz, C. (1971), *Islam Observed. Religious Developments in Morocco and Indonesia*, Chicago.

Gellner, E. (1969), *Saints of the Atlas*, London.

--- (1981), *Muslim Society*, Cambridge.

Gibb, H.A.R. “‘Aydhbāb”, *EP*, i, 782.

Gilsenan, M. (1973), *Saints and Sufi in Modern Egypt. An Essay in the Sociology of Religion*, Oxford.

Gleichen, A.E.W., Count, ed. (1905), *The Anglo-Egyptian Sudan*, 2 vols, London.

Hamilton, J.A. de C., ed. (1935), *The Anglo-Egyptian Sudan from Within*, London.

Hasan, Qurashī Muḥammad (1972), *Ma‘a shu‘arā’ al-madā’ih*, 2nd edn, Khartoum.

Hasan, Yūsuf Faḍl (1967), *The Arabs and the Sudan*, Edinburgh.

--- ed. (1971), *Sudan in Africa*, Khartoum.

--- (1971a), “External Islamic influences and the progress of Islamization in the Eastern Sudan between the fifteenth and the nineteenth centuries”, in Hasan, ed., *Sudan in Africa*, 73-86.

--- (1971b), *Muqaddima fī ta‘rīkh al-mamālik al-Islāmiyya fī'l-Sūdān al-sharqī*, 1450-1821, Cairo.

--- (1975), *Dirāsāt fī ta‘rīkh al-Sūdān*, vol. i, Khartoum.

Hill, R. (1959), *Egypt in the Sudan*, London.

--- (1967), *A Biographical Dictionary of the Sudan*, 2nd edn, London.

--- (1970), *On the Frontiers of Islam*, Oxford.

--- ed. (1984), *The Sudan Memoirs of Carl Christian Giegler Pasha, 1873-83*, London.

Hillelson, S. (1918), “The people of Abu Jarid”, *SNR*, i, 175-93.

--- (1923), “Tabaqat Wad Dayf Allah: studies in the lives of the scholars and saints”, *SNR*, vi/2, 191-230.

--- (1935), *Sudan Arabic Texts*, Cambridge.

Hiskett, M. (1973), “The Development of Islam in Hausaland”, in M. Brett, ed., *Northern Africa*, London, 57-64.

Holt, P.M. “Dja‘aliyyūn”, *EP*, ii, 351-2.

--- “Fundj”, *EP*, ii, 943-5.

--- (1963), *A Modern History of the Sudan*, 2nd edn, London.

--- (1970), *The Mahdist State in the Sudan, 1881-1898*, 2nd. ed., Oxford.

--- (1973a), “Islamization of the Sudan”, in M. Brett, ed., *Northern Africa*, London, 13-22.

--- (1973b), *Studies in the History of the Near East*, London.

--- and Daly, M. (1979), *The History of the Sudan. From the coming of Islam to the present day*, London.

Hourani, A. (1967), *Arabic Thought in the Liberal Age, 1798-1939*, London.

Hughes, T.P. (1885), *A Dictionary of Islam*, London.

Hunwick, J.O. (1984), "Şāliḥ al-Fullānī (1752/3-1803): the career and teachings of a West African 'ālim in Medina", in *In Quest of an Islamic Humanism*, ed. A.H. Green, 139-5, American University, Cairo.

Ibn Ḥajar, Aḥmad (1395/1975-6), *Muḥammad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhāb*, Mecca

Ibrāhīm, Aḥmad ʿUthmān (1965), *Min ash-ṣār al-Shāyqiyya*, Khartoum.

Ibrāhīm, Ḥasan Aḥmad (n.d.), *Muḥammad ʿAlī fī l-Sūdān*, Khartoum.

Ibrahim, Hayder (1979), *The Shaiqiya. The cultural and social change of a Northern Sudanese riverain people*, Wiesbaden.

ʿInayatulah, Sh., "Shaykh Aḥmad Sirhindī", *EP<sup>2</sup>*, i, 297-8.

Jackson, H.C. (1919), "The Mahas of 'Eilafun'", *SNR*, ii, 285-92.

Jenkins, R.G. (1979), "The evolution of religious brotherhoods in North and Northwest Africa, 1523-1900", in J.R. Willis (ed.), *Studies in West African Islamic History*, i, 40-77.

Jong, F. de (1972), review of *The Sufi Orders in Islam*, by J. S. Trimingham, Oxford 1971, in *Journal of Semitic Studies*, vol. 17/2, 279-85.

--- (1978), *Turuq and Turuq-linked Institutions in Nineteenth Century Egypt*, Leiden.

--- "Khalwatiyya", *EP<sup>2</sup>*, iv 991-3.

--- "al-Duwayḥī, Ibrāhīm", *EP<sup>2</sup>* supplement, 278-9.

Keddie, N.R., ed. (1972), *Scholars, Saints and Sufis. Muslim Religious Institutions in the Middle East Since 1500*, Berkeley.

Landolt, H. "Khalwa", *EP<sup>2</sup>*, iv, 990-1.

Laooust, H., "Ibn ʿAbd al-Wahhāb", *EP<sup>2</sup>*, iii, 677-9.

Lewis, B. (1960), *The Arabs in History*, London.

Lewis, I.M. (1955), "Sufism in Somaliland", *BSOAS*, xvii, 581-602.

Lings, M. (1961), *A Moslem Saint of the Twentieth Century. Shaikh Ahmad Al-ʿAlawi*, London.

MacMichael, H.A. (1912), *The Tribes of Northern and Central Kordofan*, Cambridge.

--- (1922), *A History of the Arabs in the Sudan*, 2 vols., Cambridge.

al-Maghribī, Muḥammad al-Fātih Maḥmūd (1982), “Ta’rīkh al-ṭuruq al-Ṣūfiyya fī’l-Sūdān. Al-ṭariqa al-Qādiriyya”, in *Majallat al-taṣawwuf al-Islāmī*, 56-7, Cairo.

Maḥmūd, ʻAbd al-Qādir (1971), *al-Tawā’if al-ṣūfiyya fī’l-Sūdān. Ansābuhum wa-uṣūl turāthihim wa-falsafatihim*, Khartoum.

Martin, B.G. (1972), “A Short History of the Khalwati Order of Dervishes”, in Keddie, ed., *Scholars, Saints and Sufis*, 275-305.

--- (1976), *Muslim Brotherhoods in Nineteenth Century Africa*, Cambridge.

Montet, E. (1967), “Religious orders (Muslim)”, *ERE*, x, 719-26.

al-Muftī, Ḥusayn Sīd Aḥmad (1378/1959), *Tatāwwur nizām al-qadā’ fī’l-Sūdān*, vol. i (all published), Khartoum.

Mus̄ad, Muṣṭafā (1959), “The Downfall of the Christian Nubian Kingdoms”, *SNR*, xl, 124-7.

Mus̄ad, Muḥammad Muṣṭafā (1972), *al-Maktaba al-‘Arabiyya al-Sūdāniyya*, Cairo.

*al-Muṣṣawar* (Cairo), no. 1277, 1 April 1949; no. 2988, 15 January 1982.

Nicholls, W. (1913), *The Shaikia*, Dublin.

O’Brien, D. Cruise (1971), *The Mourids of Senegal*, Oxford.

O’Fahey, R.S. (1980), *State and Society in Dār Fūr*, London.

--- (1982/3), “A history of the Awlād Hindī”, *Bulletin of Information, Fontes Historiae Africanae*, 7/8, Evanston, 43-50.

--- (1990), *Enigmatic Saint. Aḥmad ibn Idrīs and the Idrīsī Tradition*, London.

--- and Spaulding, J.L. (1972), “Hāshim and the Musabba‘āt”, *BSOAS*, xxxv/2, 316-333.

--- and Spaulding, J.L. (1974), *Kingdoms of the Sudan*, London.

Padwick, C. (1969), *Muslim Devotions. A Study of Prayer-Manuals in Common Use*, London.

Paul, A. (1955), “Aidhab: A Medieval Red Sea Port”, *SNR*, xxxvi/1, 64-70.

Rajab, Mansūr ʻAlī (1946), *al-Azhar bayn al-mādī wa’l-hādir*, Cairo.

Reid, J. (1935), *Tribes and Prominent Families in the Blue Nile Province*, Khartoum.

Samatar, Said (1982), *Oral Poetry and Somali Nationalism*, Cambridge.

Sāmī, Aḥmad ʻAbd Allāh (1968), *al-Shā’ir al-Sūdānī, Muḥammad Sa‘id al-‘Abbāsī*, Khartoum.

al-Shahi, Ahmed (1981), "A Noah's Ark: the Continuity of the Khatmiyya Order in Northern Sudan", *Bulletin, British Society for Middle Eastern Studies*, viii/1, 13-29.

al-Shahi, Ahmed (1986), *Themes From Northern Sudan*, London.

Shalabi, Ahmad (1954), *History of Muslim Education*, Beirut.

al-Shayyāl, Jamāl al-Dīn (1965), *A'lām al-Iskandariyya fī'l-ṣaṣr al-Islāmī*, Cairo.

Shinnie, P.L. (1971), "The culture of medieval Nubia and its impact on Africa", in Hasan (ed.), *Sudan in Africa*, Khartoum, 42-50.

al-Shūsh, Muḥammad Ibrāhīm (1962), *al-Shi'r al-hadīth fī'l-Sūdān*, vol. i (all published), Cairo.

Spaulding, J.L. (1982), "Slavery, land tenure and social class in the northern Turkish Sudan", *IJAHS*, xv/1, 1-20.

--- (1985), *The Heroic Age in Sinnār*, East Lansing.

Suban, J.A. (1970), *Sufism: its Saints and Shrines. An Introduction to the Study of Sufism with special reference to India*, New York.

Sudanow, 7/3, March 1982 (report on Kadabās).

al-Ṭawīl, Tawfiq (1946), *al-Taṣawwuf fī Miṣr ibbān al-ṣaṣr al-ṣUthmānī*, Cairo.

al-Tayyib, Abdalla (1964), "The changing customs of the riverain Sudan, III", *SNR*, xlv, 13-28.

al-Ṭayyib, al-Ṭayyib Muḥammad (1977), *Farah wad Taktūk*, Khartoum.

Trimingham, J.S. (1949), *Islam in the Sudan*, London.

--- (1952), *Islam in Ethiopia*, London.

--- (1971), *The Sufi Orders in Islam*, Oxford.

ṣUthmān, Sirr al-Khatim (1975), *Awlād Jābir*, Khartoum.

Voll, J.O. (1975), "Muhammad Ḥayyā al-Sindī and Muhammad ibn ḤAbd al-Wahhāb: an analysis of an intellectual group in eighteenth-century Madīna", *BSOAS*, xxxviii, 32-39.

Wahba, Hāfiẓ (1946), *Jazīrat al-ṣArab fī'l-qarn al-ṣishrīn*, Cairo.

Warburg, G. (1971), "Religious policy in the northern Sudan: ḥulamā' and Ṣūfism, 1899-1918", *Asian and African Studies* (Jerusalem), vii, 89-119.

Wensinck, A.J., "al-Khadīr", *EP*, iv, 902-5.

Willis, C.A. (1921), "Religious confraternities of the Sudan", *SNR*, iv/4, 175-94.

Willis, J.R., ed. (1979), *Studies in West African Islamic History*, i. The Cultivators of Islam, London.

Winter, M. (1982), *Society and Religion in Early Ottoman Egypt. Studies in the Writings of 'Abd al-Wahhāb al-Shā'rānī*, London.

Ziadeh, N.A. (1958), *Sanūsiyah. A Study of a Revivalist Movement in Islam*, Leiden.

# INDEX OF PERSONS

al-<sup>c</sup>Abbās (the Prophet's uncle), 5  
 al-<sup>c</sup>Abbās Madanī (Khatmiyya), 83  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl b. Aḥmad b. Idrīs, 54-5, 91, 105, 116-19  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Āl b. <sup>c</sup>Armān (ancestor of the <sup>c</sup>Umarāb, Majādhīb and Judalāb), 38  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh b. Abī Bakr Muḥammad al-Mut<sup>c</sup>ārid, 79  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh w. al-<sup>c</sup>Ajūz, 31  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh b. Daf<sup>c</sup> Allāh al-<sup>c</sup>Arakī, 19, 22-4, 25, 36, 40, 148, 154  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Ḥalanqī, *al-ḥājj*, 30  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Ḥammāl (ancestor of the Awlād al-Turābī), 22  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Bey Ḥamza (merchant in al-Khandaq), 101-2  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Jammāc (eponym of the <sup>c</sup>Abdallāb), 36  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Maghribī, 41  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Mahjūb b. Ibrāhīm al-Mīrghānī, 44, 56, 69, 75  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Mahjūb b. Muḥammad Sirr al-Khatim al-Mīrghānī, 88, 149  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Mawārī, Abū'l-Ma<sup>c</sup>ālī (Sudanese student of Ibn Idrīs), 52, 55, 165  
<sup>c</sup>Abdallāhi b. Muḥammad (the Sudanese *khalīfa*), 35  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh Mūsā Agha Rāsim (Rashīdiyya/Idrīsiyya; Egypt), 107  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh b. Sa<sup>c</sup>d b. Abī Sarḥ (Governor, Upper Egypt), 13  
<sup>c</sup>Abd Allāh al-Sharīf, 39  
<sup>c</sup>Abdullāhi b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Ḥafīẓ al-Dufārī, 91, 97, 108, 110-14  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-<sup>c</sup>Azīz (ancestor of the Maḥās people), 144  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Bāqī al-Nayyal, 31, 44  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Ḥalīm al-Naqīb, 127  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Āḥmar (<sup>c</sup>Irāqāb), 9  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Ḥamīd Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-<sup>c</sup>Irāqī (<sup>c</sup>Irāqāb; Nūrī), 146-7, 150  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Jabbār al-Shāyqī, 46  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Kāfī, 26  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Karīm b. <sup>c</sup>Abd al-Ḥafīẓ al-Dufārī (Mahdist *amīr*), 113, 115  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Majīd al-Aghbāsh, 41  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir Abū Kisāwī (Qādiriyya), 161  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir b. Idrīs w. al-Arbāb, 40  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir al-Jazā'irī, 3  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Qādir al-Jilānī, 21, 26  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahīm, *al-ḥājj* (notable of al-Zayniyya), 118  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahīm b. Aḥmad al-Bīlī, 106  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahīm al-Bur<sup>c</sup>ī, 160  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahīm b. Jābir (Awlād Jābir), 17, 24  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān al-Aghbāsh, 29  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān al-<sup>c</sup>Aydarūs, 45  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥājj al-Duwayhī, 9, 30, 104, 115  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥamadtū, Abū Shawārib, 8, 17, 18-19, 28, 29  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Ibrāhīm, 37  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī, 33  
<sup>c</sup>Abd al-Rahmān b. Isayd (Hamadtūiyāb), 29

‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Jābir (Awlād Jābir), 17, 29

‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Khurāsānī, 35

‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Madanī, known as Abū Nīrān (Hamadtūiyāb), 139

‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad Karrār b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Nāṭiq (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 83

‘Abd al-Rahmān Muḥammad Ṣalīḥ al-‘Irāqī (‘Irāqāb; Nūrī), 147

‘Abd al-Rahmān w. al-Nujūmī (Mahdist *amīr*), 33

‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Nuwayrī, 24

‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Sulyaymān al-Ahdal (Zabīdī scholar), 52, 53

‘Abd al-Wahhāb al-Tāzī (Moroccan Sufi), 50

Abū’l-‘Abbās b. Muḥammad Aḥmad al-Dandarāwī (Dandarāwiyya), 116

Abū ‘Abd Allāh Muḥammad b. Sulaymān al-Jazūlī, 36

Abū’l-‘Āliya: see Muḥammad b. al-Mukhtār b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Shinqītī

Abū Bakr Muḥammad al-Mut‘ārid b. Abī’l-Ma‘ālī b. Ḥamad w. Umm Maryūm, known as Wad al-Mut‘ārid (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 79

Abū Bakr al-Ṣiddīq (Caliph), 8, 110

Abū’l-Ḥasan al-Shādhilī, 35-7, 41, 135

Abū Idrīs b. Muḥammad al-‘Arakī, 32

Abū Jarīd Ādām ‘Abd Allāh, 39

Abū Khamsīn (Ja‘aliyyūn ancestor), 5

Abū’l-Khayr Muḥammad b. Muslim al-Dabbās, 21

Abū’l-Qāsim, *al-ḥajj* (‘Irāqāb), 8

Abū’l-Qāsim Aḥmad Hāshim (Tijāniyya), 122

Abū’l-Qāsim al-Wazīr (Moroccan Sufi), 50

Abū Sa‘d Mubārak al-Mukharrimī, 21

Abū Salīm, M.I., 119

Abū Yazīd al-Bistāmī, 2, 126

Abun-Nasr, J., 120

‘Adlān b. Ūnsā (Funj ruler), 26

Aḥmad ‘Abd al-Karīm al-Azbaķī (Naqshabandī shaykh), 56 n. 53

Aḥmad Pasha Abū Wīdān (Governor-general), 11, 76-7

Aḥmad al-Azharī b. Ismā‘īl al-Walī, 94

Aḥmad Bamba, 3, 110

Aḥmad al-Baqlī al-Shāfi‘ī, 11

Aḥmad al-Baṣīr, 47, 48-9

Aḥmad al-Bīlī (Rashīdiyya), 105-6

Aḥmad al-Fazārī al-Fardī, 44

Aḥmad al-Ḥuday al-Sawarābī (Tijāniyya; Mahdist *amīr*), 79, 96, 122-4

Aḥmad b. Ibrāhīm b. al-Ṭayyib al-Maṭarāwī (copyist), 138

Aḥmad b. Idrīs, 1, 43, 49-58, 64-7, 69, 74, 76, 81, 84-5, 87, 91, 103-4, 107, 111, 142, 155, 157, 165

Aḥmad w. ‘Isā al-Anṣārī, 45, 62, 69, 165

Aḥmad al-Ja‘alī, 32, 34-5

Aḥmad al-Karsanī, 70 and n. 99

Aḥmad b. Khōjalī b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān, 38

Aḥmad Ma‘rūf (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 85

Aḥmad al-Mikāshfī, 31

Aḥmad b. Muḥammad Bannā al-Makki (Naqshbandī shaykh), 56 n. 53.

Aḥmad b. Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, 78, 86, 89

Aḥmad b. Muḥammad al-Naṣayḥ, known as Aḥmad “b. Idrīs” al-Rubāṭābī (Khatmiyya khalīfa), 77-8, 92

Aḥmad b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān II al-Mīrghānī, 91, 99

Aḥmad Nūr al-Khatim b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, 61

Aḥmad Qamar al-Dīn b. Ḥamad al-Majdhūb, 39

Aḥmad al-Salāwī, 11, 46

Aḥmad b. Ṣalīḥ b. Faḍl al-Rikābī, 111

Aḥmad al-Shahi, 96

Aḥmad b. al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad al-Duwayḥī (Ṣalīhiyya), 109

Aḥmad b. al-Shaykh al-ʻUbayd w. Badr, 129

Aḥmad Sirhindī, 43

Aḥmad Sulaymān (*amīn bayt al-māl*), 114

Aḥmad Taqī al-Dīn b. Taymiyya, 42

Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Bashīr (Sammāniyya), 9, 44-7, 69, 80-1, 87, 107, 111, 127, 160

Aḥmad al-Tijānī, 43, 120-1, 135

Aḥmad al-Timbuktāwī al-Fallātī, 38

Aḥmad al-Ṭirayfī (Khatmiyya adherent), 62

Aḥmadī Maḥmūd Bādī (secretary to the Mahdi), 94

ʻĀ’isha bt. *al-faqīra* bt. Qaddāl, 37

ʻĀ’isha bt. Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd al-Duwayḥīyya, 109

ʻAjīb al-Mānjilūk (ʻAbdallāb ruler), 16, 22, 26, 36

ʻAlī ʻAbd al-Ḥaqq al-Qūṣī (Egyptian student of Ibn Idrīs), 117

ʻAlī al-Bilī, 106

ʻAlī al-Darāwī, 39

ʻAlī Dīnār (Sultan of Dār Fūr), 121

ʻAlī w. al-Fadnī, 31

ʻAlī Ḥamad Muḥammad Barakāt, 129

ʻAlī al-Juzūlī (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 62

ʻAlī Muḥammad al-Ajhūrī (Mālikī jurist), 138

ʻAlī Muḥammad w. al-Tīkal (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 84

ʻAlī b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān II b. Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī, 79, 93, 99

ʻAlī al-Ṭirayfī (Khatmiyya adherent), 62

ʻAmāra, *al-ḥājj* (holy man of the Ṣawārdā), 145-6

ʻAmāra Dunqas (Funj ruler), 15

ʻAmāra b. Nāyil, Abū Sikaykīn (Funj ruler), 16, 26

Āmina bt. Shaykh al-Nūr (wife of Muḥammad ʻUthmān II al-Mīrghānī), 91-2

ʻArabī al-Khaṭīb al-Hawwārī (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 60

Arbāb b. ʻAlī, 37, 78

al-Arbāb Dafʻ Allāh w. Aḥmad (*wazīr* in Sinnār), 61, 71

Arbāb w. Kāmil w. al-fakī ʻAlī, 78

ʻArmān (Jaʻaliyyūn ancestor), 5

al-Asar b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū (Ḥamadtūiyāb), 18, 41

Badawī w. Abū Ṣafīyya, 45, 60, 165

Bādī I (Funj ruler), 28  
 Bādī b. Rubāt (Funj ruler), 27  
 Bahrām al-Damīrī (Mālikī jurist), 44  
 Bakrī [formally, Muḥammad Abū Bakr] b. Ja‘far b. Muḥammad  
 ‘Uthmān al-Mīrghānī, 88, 98-100  
 Bān al-Naqā al-Darīr, 22, 26  
 Barsbay (Mamluk ruler), 37  
 al-Barzanī, Ja‘far b. Ḥasan, 158-9  
 Bashīr b. Mālik b. Muḥammad  
 Surūr (father of Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib),  
 44  
 al-Bīlī (Bīliyābī), see:  
 ‘Abd al-Rahīm b. Aḥmad;  
 ‘Alī;  
 Ismā‘īl  
 Bjørkelo, A., 90  
 Burckhardt, J.L., 7  
 al-Busīrī, Muḥammad b. Sa‘īd, 160  
 Crawford, O.G.S., 4  
 Daf‘ Allāh b. Muḥammad al-‘Arakī,  
 30, 148  
 Daf‘ Allāh b. Muqbil, 22  
 Dā‘ūd b. ‘Abd al-Jalīl (merchant),  
 21, 148  
 Ǧawwa bt. Khōjalī (mother of  
 Khōjalī b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān), 37  
 Dushayn, qādī, 19  
 al-Duwayhī, see:  
 ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad;  
 ‘Ā‘isha;  
 Aḥmad b. al-Shaykh;  
 Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd;  
 Ibrāhīm b. al-Shaykh;  
 Muḥammad b. Ṣāliḥ;  
 al-Rashīd b. al-Shaykh;  
 al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad  
 al-Faḍl al-Nabrī (Tijāniyya), 124  
 Fāṭima (daughter of the Prophet), 97  
 Fāṭima bt. ‘Āliya (mother of  
 Muḥammad b. al-Mukhtār b. ‘Abd  
 al-Rahmān al-Shinqītī), 121  
 Fāṭima bt. Idrīs b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān  
 (Awlād Jābir), 18, 27  
 Fāṭima bt. Muḥammad al-Amīn b.  
 Ṭāhā, known al-‘Ajab (wife of  
 Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī),  
 78  
 Fāṭima bt. Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-  
 Mīrghānī, 86, 88  
 Fāṭima Nūr al-Jalāl bt. Muḥammad  
 ‘Uthmān II al-Mīrghānī, known as  
 Sitt Nūr, 91, 99  
 Fawzī Maḥmūd Bādī (keeper of the  
 Mahdi’s seal), 94  
 Geertz, C., 133  
 Gellner, E., 133  
 al-Ghazālī, 108  
 Ghulām Allāh b. ‘Ā‘id, 9, 15, 16  
 Gordon, C.G., 95-6  
 Ḥabīb Allāh al-‘Ajamī, 24, 129  
 Ḥabīb Allāh b. al-‘Ubayd  
 Muḥammad Ṣāliḥ al-Nāṣirābī, 33  
 al-Ḥabīb Ya‘qūb (Khatmiyya  
 adherent), 62  
 Hadiyya bt. ‘Āṭif (mother of ‘Abd  
 Allāh al-‘Arakī), 22  
 al-Ḥājj al-Māhī (Rashīdiyya; poet),  
 106, 115  
 Ḥājj Nūr (Khatmiyya adherent), 92  
 Ḥamad b. ‘Abd al-‘Āl, 38  
 Ḥamad Abū Dunāna, 15, 36  
 Ḥamad w. ‘Asalā, *malik*, 6  
 Ḥamad *al-ḍibaylān*, 96  
 Ḥamad b. Idrīs w. al-Arbāb, 139  
 Ḥamad b. Muḥammad al-Majdhūb,  
 38, 40, 46

Hamad w. Muḥammad Nūrayn  
 ʻAmīr, known as al-Šuwayliḥ  
 (Khatmiyya adherent), 61

Hamad al-Naḥlān b. Muḥammad al-Bidayrī, known as Wad al-Turābī, 22, 164

Hamad al-Zarrūq, 26

Hamadtū al-Khaṭīb (ancestor of the Hamadtūiyāb), 8

Hamadtū b. Muḥammad Madanī al-Nāṭiq (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 84

Hammād al-Baytī (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 60

al-Ḥasan b. ʻAlī (grandson of the Prophet), 97

Ḥasan Badawī Ḥāshī (Mahdist agent), 99

Ḥasan w. Bilayl (grandfather of Șāliḥ b. Faḍl al-Rikābī), 111

Ḥasan w. Ḥassūna, 27, 44, 140

Ḥasan Muḥammad Balōl al-Sunnī (Sudanese student of Ibn Idrīs) 52, 55, 112, 138

Ḥasib b. Imām al-Maghribī (Sammānī shaykh), 81

Hassān b. Thābit (poet to the Prophet), 113

Hidirbī (holy man of the Șawārda), 145

Hunwick, J.O., 3

al-Ḥusayn b. ʻAlī (grandson of the Prophet), 50, 97, 159

Ḥusayn Bey Khalīfa (Governor of Berber), 90, 105, 114

al-Ḥūsayn w. al-Zahrā (Mahdist *amīr*), 99, 112

Ibn Khaldūn, 14

Ibrāhīm (grandfather of Khōjali b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān), 37

Ibrahim, Hayder, 5

Ibrāhīm w. Aḥmad, known as Abū Nafīsa (poet), 80, 160

Ibrāhīm al-Amīn b. ʻAlī al-Kabbāshī, 30-3, 34, 80, 155-6

Ibrāhīm w. Baqādī, 61

Ibrāhīm al-Barqāwī (Khatmiyya follower), 60

Ibrāhīm al-Būlād, 16-17, 37, 84

Ibrāhīm al-Disūqī b. Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Bashīr, 47-8

Ibrāhīm al-Duwayhī, 46

Ibrāhīm Jaʻal (eponym of the Jaʻaliyyūn), 5

Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad ʻAbd al-Salām al-Makkī al-Shāfiʻī (Khalwatī Shaykh), 45

Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad ʻAlī (Egyptian commander), 53

Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Naḍīf (Naḍīfāb; Abū Rannāt), 146

Ibrāhīm al-Naḍīf (eponym of the Naḍīfāb of Abū Rannāt), 146

Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd, 9, 46, 52, 54, 55, 59, 81, 84-5, 91, 97, 103-9, 110, 119, 142-3

Ibrāhīm w. Saḥnūn, *al-sharīf* (Khatmiyya adherent), 61

Ibrāhīm b. Șāliḥ Suwār al-Dhahab (Mahdist *amīr*), 94

Ibrāhīm b. al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad al-Duwayhī (Şālihiyya), 109

Ibrāhīm Tāj al-Dīn b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, 61

Idrīs, *al-faqīh* (great-grandfather of ʻAbdullāhi al-Dufārī), 110

Idrīs b. ʻAbd Allāh (Idrīsī *imām*; Morocco), 49-50

Idrīs b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān b. Jābir (Awlād Jābir), 17

Idrīs b. al-Arbāb, 36, 80, 127, 129, 139

Idrīs w. Jallāb, *al-hājj* (maternal uncle of Muḥammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī), 74

Idrīs b. Muḥammad (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 59

Idrīs b. Muḥammad ʻAlī al-Darwīsh (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 84, 96

Idrīs b. Muḥammad al-Arbāb, 25-6, 27, 28

Idrīs b. Muḥammad, Mirayf, 27

al-ʻIrāqī (ancestor of the ʻIrāqāb), 8

al-ʻIrāqī, see:

- ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Muḥammad Ṣalīḥ;
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad Ṣalīḥ;
- Muḥammad Khayr b. Muḥammad Ṣalīḥ;
- Muḥammad ʻUthmān Muḥammad Khayr;
- al-Ṣādiq ʻAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Āḥmar;
- al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad Ṣalīḥ

ʻIsā b. Qindīl, *al-hājj*, 38

Ismāʻīl (Khedive), 91

Ismāʻīl b. ʻAbd al-Qādir al-Kurdūfānī, 94

Ismāʻīl al-Bīliyābī, known as Wad Maḥārī (Rashīdiyya), 106

Ismāʻīl b. Jābir (Awlād Jābir), 17, 18

Ismāʻīl al-Walī (founder of the Ismāʻīliyya), 55, 60, 64, 71, 81, 87, 103, 106, 128, 157, 165

Jaʻfar Pasha Mažhar (Governor-general), 82

Jaʻfar b. Muḥammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, 81-2, 163

al-Jazūlī, Abū ʻAbd Allāh Muḥammad, 39

al-Jazūlī b. Idrīs (Sudanese student of Ibn Idrīs), 52, 55

Jiqaydī (eponym of the Awlād Jiqaydī of Abū Rannāt), 146

Jong, F. de, 1

Kanbāl Ḥamad al-Kawārtī (merchant), 85-6, 96

Khalīl b. Ishāq (Mālikī jurist), 138

Khāliṣa bt. al-Makk al-Nāfaʻābī (mother of Ibrāhīm al-Rashīd), 104

Khōjali b. ʻAbd al-Raḥmān b. Ibrāhīm, 26, 37-8, 44, 78-9, 135

Khūrshīd Pasha (Governor-general), 10, 63

MacMichael, H.A., 5

Madanī, *malik*, 6

Madanī b. ʻAbd al-Raḥmān (Ḥamadūtiyāb), 18

Madanī b. Madanī w. Umm Jidayn, 29

Madanī b. Muḥammad al-Nātiq (Ḥamadūtiyāb), 139

Madanī al-Nātiq b. ʻAbd al-Raḥmān (Ḥamadūtiyāb), 18, 39

Mahmoud Abdalla Ibrahim, 71, 125

Maḥmūd al-ʻArakī, 16

Maḥmūd Bādī (Khatmiyya adherent), 60

Maḥmūd al-Ḥājj (relative of the Mahdi), 124

Maḥmūd b. Ḥāmid al-Muftī (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 85

Maḥmūd al-Kurdī al-Khalwatī (Khalwatiyya; Egyptian), 121

al-Majdhūb, see:

- Ahmad Qamar al-Dīn b. Ḥamad;
- Ḥamad b. Muḥammad;

Muhammad b. ʻAlī;  
 Muhammad al-Majdhūb b. Aḥmad  
 Qamar al-Dīn;  
 al-Tāhir

Makkī b. ʻAbd al-ʻAzīz (Sudanese student of Ibn Idrīs), 52, 55

Mālik b. ʻAbd al-Rāḥmān (Hamadtūiyāb), 18, 35

Mālik b. ʻAbd al-Rāḥmān b. Jinayd (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 60, 67, 85

Maryam bt. Hāshim al-Mīrghānī, 100

al-Mīrghānī, see:

- Abd Allāh al-Mahjūb;
- Abd Allāh al-Mahjūb b. Muhammad Sirr al-Khatim;
- Ahmad b. Muhammad al-Ḥasan;
- Aḥmad b. Muhammad ʻUthmān II;
- Aḥmad Nūr al-Khatim;
- ʻAli b. Muhammad ʻUthmān II;
- Bakrī b. Jaʻfar;
- Fāṭima bt. Muhammad al-Ḥasan;
- Fāṭima Nūr al-Jalāl;
- Ibrāhīm Tāj al-Dīn;
- Jaʻfar b. Muhammad ʻUthmān;
- Maryam bt. Hāshim;
- Muhammad b. Abī Bakr;
- Muhammad al-Ḥasan;
- Muhammad Sirr al-Khatim;
- Muhammad Sirr al-Khatim II;
- Muhammad ʻUthmān;
- Muhammad ʻUthmān II;
- Muhammad Yāsīn;
- Nafīsa bt. Muhammad al-Ḥāsan;
- Umm Kulthūm;
- ʻUthmān Tāj al-Sirr;

Mīrghānī b. Muhammad b. ʻAbd al-ʻĀl al-Idrīsī, 120

al-Mubashshar (Khatmiyya adherent), 62

Muddathir Ibrāhīm al-Hajjāz (Tijāniyya; secretary to the Mahdi and the Khalifa), 122

Muhammad b. ʻAbd al-ʻĀl b. Aḥmad al-Idrīsī, 116-20

Muhammad b. ʻAbd Allāh (Moroccan ruler), 50

Muhammad ʻAbd Allāh Ḥasan (Ṣālihiyya; Somalia), 3, 110

Muhammad b. ʻAbd al-Ḥalīm, known as *al-naqīb* (Khatmiyya adherent), 60, 67

Muhammad b. ʻAbd al-Karīm al-Sammān, 43, 45, 47, 120

Muhammad b. ʻAbd al-Rāḥmān (Hamadtūiyāb), 18

Muhammad b. ʻAbd al-Rāḥmān b. Madanī al-Nāṭiq (Hamadtūiyāb), 96

Muhammad b. ʻAbd al-Wahhāb, 42

Muhammad b. Abī Bakr al-Mīrghānī, 55

Muhammad b. Abī Bakr Muhammad al-Mutʻārid, 79

Muhammad Abū'l-Qāsim al-Hijāzī (Idrīsiyya; Egypt), 104

Muhammad b. ʻAdlān al-Shāyqī al-Hawashābī, 41, 139

Muhammad Aḥmad (the Sudanese Mahdi) 4, 93-102, 112-4, 165-6

Muhammad Aḥmad al-Dandarāwī, 91, 97, 103, 108, 114-16, 143

Muhammad Aḥmad b. Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī, 33

Muhammad b. Aḥmad b. Idrīs, known as *al-quṭb*, 54-5, 104, 108, 116-19

Muhammad Aḥmad al-Karūrī, 34  
 Muhammad Aḥmad b. Muhammad  
 ‘Alī al-Darwīsh (*Khatmiyya khalīfa*),  
 84  
 Muhammad ‘Alī Pasha (ruler of  
 Egypt), 11, 53, 87  
 Muhammad ‘Alī, known as al-  
 Darwīsh (*Khatmiyya khalīfa*), 68  
 Muhammad b. ‘Alī, *al-Majdhūb al-  
 kabīr*, 38  
 Muhammad ‘Alī al-Masallamī w.  
 Abī Winaysa, 32  
 Muhammad b. ‘Alī Qaram al-Miṣrī,  
 18-9, 25  
 Muhammad b. ‘Alī al-Sanūsī  
 (founder of the *Sanūsiyya*), 53-4, 66,  
 103-4, 109, 117-8  
 Muhammad al-Amīn al-Hindī, 105,  
 113  
 Muhammad al-Amīn w. al-Tuwaym  
 (Rashīdiyya; poet), 104, 113, 115  
 Muhammad al-Amīr (Egyptian  
 Mālikī jurist), 46  
 Muhammad b. ‘Amīr al-Dalhamūnī,  
 139  
 Muhammad b. al-Arbāb  
 Muhammad al-Asyūtī al-Ḥanafī, 11  
 Muhammad al-Azraq b. al-Zayn, 29  
 Muhammad al-Banūfārī (Egyptian  
 jurist), 17, 28  
 Muhammad Bashīr Agha  
 (Rashīdiyya), 107  
 Muhammad b. Daf‘ Allāh al-‘Arakī,  
 known as Abū Idrīs, 154  
 Muhammad b. Ḍayf Allāh, 17  
 Muhammad Dīn (shaykh of the  
 Hadanduwa), 76-7  
 Muhammad b. Ḥāmid al-Muftī  
 (*Khatmiyya khalīfa*), 85  
 Muhammad al-Hamīm, 22, 40

Muhammad Ḥammād, known as  
 Shaykh Jiqaydī (*Khatmiyya khalīfa*),  
 59, 67, 146  
 Muhammad al-Ḥasan b. Abī Bakr  
 Muhammad al-Mut‘ārid, 79  
 Muhammad al-Ḥasan b. Muhammad  
 ‘Uthmān al-Mīrghānī, 32, 34, 59,  
 63, 66, 68-72, 73-88, 90, 100, 106,  
 111, 128, 136, 138, 143, 147, 150,  
 163  
 Muhammad al-Ḥasan al-Tuhāmī  
 (‘Irāqāb; Tanqāsī), 150  
 Muhammad Ḥasan Zāfir al-Madanī  
 al-Darqāwī (Meccan Sufi), 52, 55  
 Muhammad Ḥayyā al-Sindī, 43  
 Muhammad al-Ḥusayn (Sultan of  
 Dār Fūr), 122  
 Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī,  
 33  
 Muhammad w. Ibrāhīm Khudr Mattī  
 al-Bidayrī al-Dahmashī (*Khatmiyya  
 khalīfa*), 67  
 Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Naṣīf  
 (Naṣīfāb; Abū Rannāt), 146  
 Muhammad Ibrāhīm al-Tatārī  
 (Mālikī jurist), 138  
 Muhammad Idrīs b. ‘Alī b.  
 Muhammad al-Idrīsī, 118  
 Muhammad b. ‘Isā b. Ṣalīḥ, Suwār  
 al-Dhahab, 25  
 Muhammad Karrār b. ‘Abd al-  
 Raḥmān Muhammad Madanī, known  
 as al-Nāṭiq (*Khatmiyya khalīfa*), 83  
 Muhammad al-Khayr ‘Abd Allāh  
 Khōjālī (Mahdist *amīr*), 95-6, 114,  
 122  
 Muhammad Khayr b. Muhammad  
 Ṣalīḥ al-‘Irāqī (*Khatmiyya khalīfa*),  
 59, 67  
 Muhammad Khayr al-Naṣīf  
 (*Khatmiyya khalīfa*), 59, 67

Muhammad Khayr al-Nađīf (Nađīfāb; Abū Rannāt), 146

Muhammad Bey Khusraw, the *daftardār*, 78

Muhammad b. Madanī w. Umm Jidayn, 29

Muhammad al-Mahdī al-Sanūsī (son of Muhammad b. ʻAlī al-Sanūsī), 118

Muhammad al-Majdhūb b. Aḥmad Qamar al-Dīn, *al-Majdhūb al-ṣaghīr*, 46, 52, 55, 62, 63, 71

Muhammad al-Majīdī al-Shinqītī (Shinqītī Sufī), 50

Muhammad al-Makkī b. Ismāʻīl al-Walī (shaykh of the Ismāʻiliyya), 81, 94, 130-1

Muhammad w. Mālik (Khatmiyya adherent), 60, 67

Muhammad Maʻrūf (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 85

Muhammad b. Muhammad Șālih al-Nađīf (Nađīfāb; Khatmiyya; Abū Rannāt), 150

Muhammad b. al-Mukhtār b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān al-Shinqītī, known as Abū'l-ʻĀliya (Tijāniyya), 121-2

Muhammad Mūsā Ghānim (Rashīdiyya), 105

Muhammad al-Naṣayḥ (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 62

Muhammad (or Aḥmad) b. al-Nāṣir, 39

Muhammad al-Nāṣirī al-Shādhilī, 38

Muhammad al-Qināwī, 19

Muhammad Qūlid al-Rashīdī (Rashīdiyya; Somalia), 109

Muhammad al-Şāfi (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 63

Muhammad al-Şaghīr b. ʻAlī (Tijāniyya), 121

Muhammad Saʻīd Pasha (ruler of Egypt), 122

Muhammad b. Șālih al-Duwayhī, known as Wad al-Şughayr, 109

Muhammad Șālih al-Nađīf (Nađīfāb; Abū Rannāt), 146-7, 149-50

Muhammad Șālih Shadūl (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*; merchant), 59, 68, 101, 165

Muhammad b. Șālih Suwār al-Ḏhabab (Khatmiyya adherent), 94

Muhammad w. Sāttī ʻAlī (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 62

Muhammad al-Sharīf b. Nūr al-Dā'im b. Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib, 48-9

Muhammad Shaykh al-Dalā'il (teacher of Muhammad al-Ḥasan al-Mīrghānī), 75

Muhammad Sirāj al-Dīn b. ʻAlī al-Ḥājj Bilāl (copyist; al-Ghurayba), 138

Muhammad b. Sirhān al-ʻUdī, known as Șughayrūn, 17, 18, 27

Muhammad Sirr al-Khatim b. Muhammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, 66, 73, 88, 129

Muhammad Sirr al-Khatim al-Şāfi (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 85

Muhammad Sirr al-Khatim II b. Muhammad Muhammad Sirr al-Khatim al-Mīrghānī, 88, 99, 101-2, 118, 129

Muhammad al-Taqalāwī (Rashīdiyya), 105

Muhammad al-Tāwudī b. Sūda (Moroccan scholar), 50

Muhammad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Baṣīr (Sammānī shaykh), 166

Muhammad Tōm Bānnaqā, 46

Muhammad ʻUthmān al-Mīrghānī, 2, 44, 52, 54-72, 73-5, 83, 85, 87, 95, 97, 101, 103-4, 126-7, 131, 134-5, 141, 153 n. 5, 154-8, 162-3

Muhammad ʻUthmān b. Mubashshar (Sudanese student of Ibn Idrīs), 52, 55, 62

Muhammad ʻUthmān b. Muhammad Khayr al-ʻIrāqī (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 92, 150

Muhammad ʻUthmān al-Şāfi (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 85

Muhammad ʻUthmān II b. Muhammad al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī, known as *al-ṣughayr* or *al-aqrab*, 78, 88-100, 119, 150

Muhammad Yāsīn b. ʻAbd Allāh al-Mahjūb al-Mīrghānī, 56

Muhammad b. Yūsuf al-Sanūsī al-Tilimsānī (jurist), 41

Mukhtār Maḥmūd Bādī (director of the Mahdist press), 94

Munawwar b. ʻAbd al-Ḥafīz al-Dufārī, 113

Munawwar b. Idrīs, 27

Mūsā al-Barqāwī, *al-hājj* (Khatmiyya adherent), 60

Mūsā Pasha Ḥamdī (Governor), 32

Musallam, *maqdūm* (Governor in Kordofan), 60, 71

Muṣṭafā b. Aḥmad b. Idrīs, 54, 108

Muṣṭafā Kamāl al-Dīn al-Bakrī, 43-5

Muṣṭafā Pasha Yāwar (Governor of Dongola), 79, 86, 96, 101, 118, 123

Nāfiʻ b. al-Amīn (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 84-5, 106

Nafīsa bt. Muhammad al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī, 86, 88

Nāṣir al-Kubaybī (scholar in ʻAsir), 53-4

Nāṣir b. Muhammad Abī Likaylik (Hamaj regent), 45

Nimr, *makk* (ruler in Shendi), 71

Nūmān w. Qamar (chief of the Manāṣir people), 123

Nūr al-Dā'im b. Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Bashīr, 48-9

Qindīl b. ʻAbd al-ʻĀl, 38

al-Qurashī w. al-Zayn (Sammānī shaykh), 47-8, 81, 111-12

Rābiʻa bt. al-Badrī (mother of Abū Bakr Muhammad al-Mutcārid), 79

al-Rashīd b. al-Shaykh b.

Muhammad al-Duwayhī (Şālihiyya), 109

al-Rayyāḥ (holy man of al-Matamma), 61-2

Ruqayya bt. Jallāb (mother of Muhammad al-Hasan al-Mīrghānī), 60, 63, 74 n. 4, 94, 111

Ruqayya bt. Rahma b. Muhammad Surūr (mother of Aḥmad al-Ṭayyib w. al-Bashīr), 44

Sād al-Karsanī, 30

al-Şādiq ʻAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Āḥmar al-ʻIrāqī (ʻIrāqāb, Nūrī), 147

Sādīd, *al-hājj* (grandson of Dāūd b. ʻAbd al-Jalīl), 148

Sādīd al-ʻAmūdī al-Makkī (Naqshbandī shaykh), 56, n. 53

Şālih b. ʻAbd al-Rahmān b. Muhammad b. Hājj al-Duwayhī (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 59, 67, 104

Şālih b. Aḥmad Balqāsim (Tijāniyya), 121

Şālih b. Bān al-Naqā al-Ḍarīr, 38

Şālih b. Faḍl al-Rikābī (student of ʻAbdullāhi al-Dufārī), 111

Şālih b. Muḥammad al-Fullānī, 43  
 Şālih Suwār al-Dhahab (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 59, 94  
 Salmān al-Ṭawwālī, known as al-Zaghrāt (Qādiriyya), 161  
 Şārid (eponym of the Şawārda clan), 144  
 Shā‘ al-Dīn b. ‘Armān (ancestor of the Shā‘ al-Dīnāb), 38  
 al-Shāfi‘ Rahma al-Shāyqī (Mahdist commissioner), 97  
 Shāwīsh, *malik*, 6, 10  
 Shaykh w. Ibrāhīm (Khatmiyya), 83  
 al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad b. Şālih al-Duwayhī (founder of the Şālihiyya), 109-10, 143  
 al-Shaykh b. Muḥammad Şālih al-‘Irāqī (‘Irāqāb; Khatmiyya; Nūrī), 150  
 al-Shaykh al-‘Ubayd w. Badr, 32, 34, 80, 126-7, 129, 142, 161  
 Shāyq (eponym of the Shāyqiyya people), 6  
 Shuqayr, Na‘ūm, 106  
 Sīd Aḥmad al-Naqīb (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 85  
 Sirhān b. Muḥammad b. Sirhān, al-‘Udī, 18  
 So‘ād al-Fātiḥ, 98  
 Spaulding, Jay 148-9  
 Şubayr, *malik*, 6  
 Sulaymān b. Yazīd (Moroccan ruler), 50  
 Ṭāhā al-Abyad al-Baṭhānī, 31  
 Ṭāhā b. Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī, 34  
 Ṭāhā w. Muḥārī (village head; Abū Rannāt), 147  
 Ṭāhir al-Ḥaymādī (Sudanese student of Ibn Idrīs), 52 and n. 41

al-Ṭāhir al-Majdhūb, 95, 98  
 Ṭāj al-Dīn al-Bahārī, 16, 21, 24, 25, 38, 40, 148, 154  
 Ṭāj al-Dīn Bahrām al-Damīrī (Mālikī jurist), 138  
 Tamām Agha (notable in al-Khandaq), 101  
 al-Ṭayyib al-Sawarābī (Mahdist agent), 96, 123  
 al-Tilimsānī al-Maghribī, 25  
 Trimingham, J.S., 1, 162  
 Tusūn b. Muḥammad ‘Alī (Egyptian commander), 53  
 al-Tuwaym, Shaykh (eponym of the Tuwaymāb), 113  
 al-‘Ubayd Muḥammad Şālih al-Nāṣirābī, 33, 160  
 ‘Umar b. Ḥāmid al-Muftī (Khatmiyya *khalīfa*), 85  
 ‘Umar Janbo (Tijāniyya), 121  
 ‘Umar Tall, *al-ḥājj*, 3  
 Umm al-Ḥusayn bt. Muḥammad ‘Alī b. Maḥmūd (mother of Ibrāhīm al-Kabbāshī), 31  
 Umm Jiddayn (wife of ‘Abd al-Rahmān w. Ḥamadtū), 18  
 Umm Kulthūm bt. Muḥammad ‘Uthmān al-Mīrghānī, 62, 143  
 ‘Uthmān b. Abī Bakr Muḥammad al-Mut‘ārid, 79  
 ‘Uthmān Dīqna (Mahdist *amīr*), 95, 98, 101, 169  
 ‘Uthmān b. Fūdī (Usuman dan Fodio), 3  
 ‘Uthmān w. Ḥamad (Shāyqiyya leader), 18  
 ‘Uthmān Ḥamad al-Rikābī, 106  
 ‘Uthmān Ḥammād (Quran teacher), 111

‘Uthmān Tāj al-Sirr b. Muḥammad  
Sirr al-Khatim al-Mīrghānī, 100-1  
Voll, J.O., 75, 78, 80  
Wad Ḥamza (Mahdist agent), 115  
Walad Anas al-‘Awaḍābī, 44  
Warāq (ancestor of the Warāraq), 9  
Wingate, Sir Reginald, 97  
Yūsuf Faḍl Ḥasan, 136  
Yūsuf b. Muḥammad al-Amīn al-

Hindī (founder of the Hindiyya  
order), 105  
Zayn al-‘Ābdīn al-Maghribī  
(Tijāniyya), 122  
al-Zayn b. Muḥammad b. Sirhān al-  
‘Udī, 28-9, 37  
al-Zayn w. Ṣughayrūn: see al-Zayn  
b. Muḥammad b. Sirhān al-‘Udī  
Zaynab bt. ‘Abd al-Karīm (mother of  
‘Abdullāhi al-Dufārī), 111

## GENERAL INDEX

Some of the most frequently recurring names, such as the Sudan and Shāyqiyya, have not been indexed

Āb Ahmayda (Manāṣir section), 106  
‘Abdallāb (ruling family), 10, 15, 18, 78, 91  
Abū Dilayq, 27  
Abū Diqin, 18  
Abū Dom (Marawī district), 46, 145, 148-9  
Abū Ḥamad (town), 62  
Abū Ḥarāz, 22, 24, 30  
Abū Rannāt (island), 67, 81-2, 84, 123, 144-50  
Abyaq Dīrī, 23-4  
Adārisa (i.e. family of Ahmad b. Idrīs), 116-20  
‘Adlanāb, 6  
*ahl al-hadīth* (movement), 42  
Alexandria, 51  
Algeria, 3, 51, 120  
‘Alwa (Alodia), 12  
al-‘Arā’ish (Morocco), 49  
al-Arāk (Karīma district), 5, 67  
‘Arakiyyūn (religious family), 22-4, 44, 46, 129  
Arbajī, 22  
al-Arkī, 8  
Arqū, 10, 27, 118  
Artolī (island; Berber district), 91  
Asia Minor, 4  
‘Asīr (Arabia), 53-4  
Aswan, 13  
Asyūṭ (Egypt), 57  
Atbara (river), 15, 62  
‘Awādāb (Jummū‘iyya clan), 48

Awlād al-Darwīsh (holy family; al-Zūma), 96  
Awlād Jābir (religious family), 16, 18, 28-9  
‘Awniyya (Shāyqiyya section), 97, 106  
al-‘Aylafūn, 25, 80  
Ayyūbid (dynasty), 14  
al-Azhar, 3, 11, 18, 51, 99, 138  
Baghdad, 21  
Bakriyya (lineage; Upper Egypt and the Sudan), 8, 110  
Balghā (district; Ethiopia/Eritrea), 57  
Banī ‘Āmir (people), 86, 165  
Bānkīyū (village), 147  
Banū’l-Kanz (ruling family), 13  
Baqādī (village; Gezira), 61  
*Baqṭ* treaty, 13  
Bāra (Kordofan), 59, 73-4, 81, 94  
Bartū Island, 4  
al-Bāsā (village), 123  
Bayūd (village; near Arqū), 118  
Bayūda desert, 7  
Beja, 13  
Benghāzī, 51  
Berber, 18-19, 25, 29, 62, 75, 77, 89-91, 95-6, 114, 122-3  
Bidayriyya (people), 25, 69, 94, 106, 110  
Bīlī (Bīliyāb; holy family), 105-6  
Bilnārtī (island), 27  
Borno, 122  
British, 3

Bukhāra (Central Asia), 55

Cairo, 18, 28, 43, 46, 99, 101, 117, 121-2, 138

Christianity, 13, 140

al-Dabba (Dongola district), 5, 59, 67, 70, 79, 83, 104, 124, 139, 146

Dabbat al-Fuqarā' (religious settlement), 140

al-Dahasīra, 115

al-Dāmar, 19, 62, 168-9

Damascus, 43

Danāqla (sing. Dunqulāwī; people), 105

Dandara (Egypt), 114-15

Dār al-Abwāb, 28, 30

Dār Fūr (Sultanate), 9, 60, 121-2, 142

al-Dibayba (village), 123

Dongola (town and district), 10, 12, 15, 25-7, 30, 59-60, 62, 74, 79, 89-91, 95-6, 101, 116-20, 123, 143

Dongola al-<sup>c</sup>Urdī, 5

al-Dufār, 17, 110

Duwayḥiyya (holy family), 9, 70, 103-4

Duwaym Wad Ḥājj (village; Duwayḥiyya centre), 104, 115, 142

al-Duyyūm al-Qadīma (Khartoum), 119

Egypt, 1, 14, 46, 48, 50, 54, 57-8, 74, 105, 118, 121-2

Ethiopia, 57-8

al-Fāshir (Dār Fūr), 121

Fātimid (dynasty), 13

Fez, 49, 121

al-Fijayja, 19, 25, 29

Fourth Cataract, 4

French, 3

Funj, 7, 10, 14-15, 18, 76, 78

Gezira, 16, 22, 28, 30, 46, 48, 61, 81, 111, 128, 142

al-Gharīb Island, 9

al-Ghurayba, 5, 85, 137-9

Hadanduwa (people), 76

Ḩaḑramawt, 66

Ḩalawīyyīn (people), 46, 48, 81, 112

Ḩalfāyat al-Mulūk, 16, 26, 78

Ḩamadtūiyāb (holy family), 8, 18, 29, 82-4, 96, 111, 139, 141, 149, 165

Ḩannikāb, 6

Ḩassāniyya (people), 123

Ḩawwāra (people), 68, 123, 165

Ḩijāz, 14, 18, 24, 42, 44, 46, 52, 55, 57, 65, 67, 69, 74-6, 84, 88, 104, 111, 114, 117, 121

Ḩinikāb (Shāyqiyā section), 97

Ḩusaynartū (Kūrtī district), 106, 110-11

Ḩuzayma (Quranic school), 85

Idrīsiyya School or Tradition, 50-5

Inqirriyāb (holy family), 91

Iraq, 1

<sup>c</sup>Iraqāb (holy family), 8, 70, 83, 141, 146, 149, 165

Islānj Island, 30, 44

Isnā (Egypt), 53

Italians, 3

Ja<sup>c</sup>afariyya (palace; Mecca), 52

Ja<sup>c</sup>aliyyūn (people), 5, 15, 48, 168

Jabal:

- Abū Qubays (Mecca), 107
- al-Dayqa, 4-6
- Ibn <sup>c</sup>Awf, 5
- Qadīr (Kordofan), 12-13
- Taqorba (Bani <sup>c</sup>Āmir district), 86

Jabarta (people; Ethiopia/Eritrea), 57  
 Jaylī (district; Khartoum), 113  
 Jacobite Christianity, 13  
 Jaghbūb (Sanūsiyya centre; Libya), 117  
 Jerusalem, 43, 105  
 Jidda (port), 66  
 Jilas, 8  
 Jimīcāb (people), 48  
 al-Jinaydī (village), 62  
 al-Jirayf (village; Nūrī district), 92, 96, 123  
 al-Jiwayr (Shendi district), 111  
 Juhayna (Arabs), 5, 14, 103  
 Jummūciyya (people), 48  
 Juwārī (village; Kūrtī district), 92  
 al-Kabbāshī (village), 25, 30-4, 80  
 Kadabās (Berber district), 138  
 Kajabī (Shāiqī kingdom), 6, 17  
*Kanz al-dawla*, 13  
 Karabah, 27  
 al-Karad (north of al-Dabba), 79, 124  
 al-Karāfāb (near al-Qurayr), 84-5, 106, 124  
 Karīma, 17, 67, 84-5, 103, 106, 115  
 Karkōj, 26  
 Kasala, 30, 76, 82, 85-6, 92, 98-101, 143  
 al-Kāsinger (Karīma district), 106, 115  
 al-Kawa (White Nile), 110-12  
 Kawārīr (religious family), 9, 141  
 Kawārta (merchant family), 165  
 al-Khandaq (Dongola district), 62, 101-2  
 Khartoum, 16, 25, 77, 80, 88, 97, 123  
 al-Khatmiyya; later name for al-Saniyya, *q.v.*  
 Khōjalāb (holy family), 78-9  
 Kordofan, 9, 22, 59-60, 67-8, 71-2, 73, 77, 81, 96, 106, 121, 123  
 Kufunja (sub-section of the Sawarāb), 122  
 Kunūz (district), 59  
 al-Kuray, 111, 113, 148  
 Kūrtī, 5, 7, 17, 68-9, 85-6, 92, 106, 110, 124, 13  
 al-Kurū (Karīma district: Duwayhiyya centre), 84-5, 103, 105, 109, 115, 123, 142, 145  
 Kush, 4  
 Kutrānj (religious centre), 142  
 Libya, 50, 54, 105, 110, 117, 141  
 Luxor (Egypt), 104  
 Maħas (people; district), 9, 59, 88, 144, 149  
 Mamluks, 14  
 Manāṣir (people; district), 18, 104, 123  
 Manfalūṭ (Egypt), 57  
 Manşūrkutī (Dongola district), 60, 105-6, 111, 115  
*Maqām Imām Mālik* (Mecca), 24  
 Maqāshī, 111  
 Maqurra, 4, 12, 14  
 Marawī, 46, 90, 104, 107, 145, 150  
 Marīs, 12  
 al-Matamma, 61, 70, 168  
 Mauritania, 121  
 Maysūr (Morocco), 49  
 Mecca, 21, 24, 44, 51-4, 63-4, 65-6, 74, 75, 80, 84, 104, 107, 109, 114, 121, 143, 151, 168  
 Medina, 43, 44, 66, 75, 121

Mikāshfiyya (holy family; Qādiriyya), 128, 161

Misāwī (island; Kūrtī district), 79, 92

Misaykāb (holy family; Tanqāsī al-Ruways), 150

Monophysitism, 13

Mōrā, 111

Morocco, 3, 14, 43, 49-50, 120, 133

Muqrāt (district), 18

Muṣṣawa<sup>c</sup> (port), 62-3, 68, 74

Naḍīfāb (holy family; Abū Rannāt Island), 84, 144-50

Najd, 52

Nigeria, 3

Nobatia, 12

Nuba (people and region), 76, 164

Nubia, 6, 12-13

al-Nūq (village; Dufār district), 110

Nūrī, 8, 9, 18, 30, 82-3, 92, 96, 111, 123, 139, 141, 143, 146, 149

Omdurman, 44, 80, 115-16, 119

Ottoman Sultan, 11

*qādī cumūm bilād al-Sūdān*, 12

qal<sup>c</sup>at al-sayyid al-Hasan (at al-Zūma), 84

Portuguese, 3

al-Qa<sup>c</sup>b (village; Dongola district), 119

Qanatī, 67, 111

Qarawiyyīn (mosque/school), 50

Qarī, 78, 112, 138

Qinā (Egypt), 53, 107

al-Qitayna (White Nile), 110

al-Qōz, 19

Qōz al-Muṭraq, 28

Qōz Rajab, 62

Qubāb (Red Sea Hills; Majdhūbiyya centre), 95

Qubbat Khōjalī (Khartoum North), 78, 89, 91, 105, 138

al-Qurayr (Marawī district), 84, 107, 123

Qūṣ (Egypt), 107

Rabī<sup>c</sup>a Arabs, 13

al-Rahad (Kordofan), 113, 123

Red Sea, 43

Rikābiyya (holy family; al-Karāfāb), 84, 106

al-Šabābī, 16, 26

al-Sabalūqa (gorge), 15, 122

Şabyā (Asīr), 53-4, 66, 104, 117

Şādqāb (holy family), 46

Salafiyya (movement), 42, 51, 166

al-Salāma (near al-Ṭā'if), 56

Salawa (Shendi district), 105, 113, 115

Salmān (Manāṣir section), 106

al-Saniyya (Khatmiyya settlement), 62-3, 68, 71, 76, 77, 79, 82, 86

Sawākin (port), 63, 75-6, 99-100, 105, 122, 168

Sawarāb (Shāyqiyya section), 97, 122-3

Şawārda (clan), 9, 70, 144-5

Senegal, 2, 43, 110

Shādhilī (village; Gezira), 61

Shendi, 10, 19, 28, 55, 62, 70, 73, 77, 91, 99, 105, 111, 113, 115, 122, 124, 143

Shī<sup>c</sup>a, 127

Shukriyya (people), 165

Sinnār, 45, 59, 61, 71

Soba, 12

Somalia, 3, 109-10, 115

Sukkūt (district), 59, 88

Surōrāb (Jummū‘iyya clan), 48

Suwār al-Dhahab (holy family), 25, 59

Syria, 1

al-Ṭā‘if (the Hijāz), 56, 66, 75

al-Tāka, 30, 62, 75, 141

Tanqāsī (island), 105, 120, 139, 144

Tanqāsī al-Ruways, 144, 150

Taqalī, 22

Tariqas:

- Aḥmadiyya (Badawiyya), 11;
- Aḥmadiyya Muḥammadiyya, 111;
- Bayūmiyya, 11;
- Dandarāwiyya, 114-5;
- Hindiyya, 105;
- Idrīsiyya, 1, 54, 91, 116-20, 136, 158;
- Ismā‘iliyya, 71, 94, 130-1;
- Jazūliyya Shādhiliyya, 2;
- Junaydiyya, 56;
- Khaḍiriyya, 50;
- Khalwatiyya, 45, 121;
- Khatmiyya, 1, 8, 25, 42, 45, 55-72, 73-102, 118-19, 123, 130-6, 139, 141, 145, 150, 151-64, 165;
- Kunta-Qādiriyya, 2;
- Madaniyya, 55;
- Majdhūbiyya, 95, 98;
- Mīrghaniyya, 57;
- Muḥammadiyya Shādhiliyya
- Majdhūbiyya, 169;
- Murīdiyya, 2;
- Naqshbandiyya, 11, 43, 45, 56, 157;
- Nāṣiriyya, 2, 50;
- Qādiriyya (or Jīlāniyya) 1, 3, 20-41, 44, 45, 56, 68, 83, 125-9, 132-5, 141-2, 151-64;
- Rashīdiyya, 55, 109-10, 119;
- Rifā‘iyya, 11;
- Şālihiyya, 109-10;
- Sammāniyya, 1, 43-9, 81, 107, 111, 132, 160, 166;
- Sanūsiyya, 2, 55, 118, 141;
- Shādhiliyya, 1, 20-41, 45, 56, 71, 78, 125, 135, 157, 169;
- Tijāniyya, 1, 2, 91, 120-4, 135
- Tashīt (Mauritania), 121
- Timbuktu, 121
- Ṭirayfiyya (clan), 9, 68
- Tōkar (Red Sea Hills), 100
- Tulbunāb (island; Tanqāsī), 150
- Tunisia, 27, 50
- Turunj (island), 17
- Tūtī (island), 105, 110
- al-Tuwaymāb (clan; al-Kuray), 113
- al-‘Ubayyīd (Kordofan), 60-1, 70, 81, 94-5, 121
- ‘Umarāb, 6
- Umm Bakōl, 18
- Umm Ḳubbān (religious centre), 80, 142
- Umm Ḥarāhīr (island; Shendi district), 122
- Umm Marriḥ, 44, 80, 107, 111
- Umm Ṭalḥa (Gezira), 44
- Upper Egypt, 13
- Uslī (village; near Misāwī Island), 122-3
- Wad Ḥāmid (Shendi district), 124
- Wad Ḥassūna (village), 27
- Wadai (Chad), 28, 122
- Wādī Bishāra (near al-Sabalūqa), 122

Wādī Ḥalfa, 119  
Wādī Sha‘ir, 22  
Wahhābiyya (movement), 42, 52-3  
al-Warāiq (religious family), 9  
White Nile, 16  
Ya‘qūbāb (holy family), 46, 160  
the Yemen, 14-5, 52-4, 62, 66, 69, 104, 116-7  
Zabīd (the Yemen), 52-3  
al-Zawara (Manāṣir district), 18, 104  
al-Zayniyya (Luxor), 53, 58, 107, 118, 120  
al-Zūma (Karīma district), 6, 68, 84, 96, 123, 148









*continued from front flap]*

invaluable tool for students of Sufism and scholars of Islamic, Middle Eastern and African history and religion. *The Sufi Brotherhoods in the Sudan* will now stand as the standard history of Sufism in that country in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

ALI SALIH KARRAR is assistant director of the National Records Office in Khartoum, Sudan. R. S. O'FAHEY is professor of Middle Eastern history at the University of Bergen, Norway. He is the author of *The Enigmatic Saint: Ahmad Ibn Idris and the Idrisi Tradition* (see back cover).

“*The Sufi Brotherhoods in the Sudan* presents significant information based on previously inaccessible materials. The author has found and uses archival and personal materials from the family archives of a number of important families in the Sudan. These documents are used along with extensive interviews. Previous researchers on similar topics have found it virtually impossible to gain access to these types of materials, so this work represents a really significant breakthrough. . . . For the history and development of Sufi brotherhoods in the Sudan in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, this work replaces and supersedes the old standard, Trimingham’s *Islam in the Sudan*. ” (John Voll, University of New Hampshire)

\* \* \*

### *Of related interest*

#### **Enigmatic Saint**

#### *Ahmad Ibn Idris and the Idrisi Tradition*

**R. S. O’FAHEY**

“. . . a profound reconstruction of the biography of a man, and the history of the spiritual legacy bequeathed by his personal charisma . . . the first biography of this notable Moroccan mystic in a Western language, . . . unique in revealing the extraordinary generosity of spirit and breadth of learning of one of the foremost defenders of theosophical Sufism of the Ibn ‘Arabi-ian tradition in the history of 19th century Islam. [. . .] O’Fahey is to be applauded for taking the only viable approach a conscientious scholar should adopt to Sufi theosophical theory and hagiography: that is, dealing with its precepts *in its own terms* rather than through the spectacles . . . of the most current fashionable anthropological or sociological theories.” (Leonard Lewisohn, *African Affairs*)

“The study will be of great help to researchers and students of Islamic history, especially the chapter on sources and the bibliography which provides the fullest information to date about location, publication and study of Ibn Idris’ writing.” (Hasan Makki, *Muslim World Book Review*)

“Une sérieuse révision des clichés usuels semble donc nécessaire. L’ouvrage du Prof. O’Fahey en fait brillamment la démonstration.” (Michel Chodkiewicz, *Studia Islamica*)

*xviii, 261 pages, 2 maps. 1990*

**NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY PRESS**  
**SERIES IN ISLAM AND SOCIETY IN AFRICA**